HANDBOUND
AT THE

UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/newfrenchgrammar00pelluoft

W. H. Fraser.

470 I

75

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Crown 8vo.

FRENCH ACCIDENCE, WITH EXERCISES

RIVINGTONS: LONDON

FRENCH GRAMMAR

SYNTAX

-3917n

A NEW FRENCH GRAMMAR

SYNTAX

BY

EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, M.A., B.Sc., LL.B.
(UNIV. GALLIC.)
ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE
AND LECTURER AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, BRISTOL

PRESENTATION COPY
FROM THE PUBLISHERS
Price
3/6

51064
7/9/01

RIVINGTONS
WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON
MDCCCLXXXVII

PREFACE

FRENCH GRAMMARS for the use of English students are already so numerous that I cannot but apologise for adding my humble contribution to the imposing list. I entertain some hope, however, that there may be found in this new *Syntax*, the outcome of over thirteen years' experience in teaching French, some grounds to justify its appearance.

I have endeavoured to explain several difficulties left untouched, as far as I know, by my predecessors in the same field, and think I may venture to say that there are few important subjects in the following pages concerning which some new rules or observations have not been introduced. Without entering into details, I would call special attention to the treatment of the Moods and Tenses, and of the Adverbs, notably the negative **ne**, and to the many idioms given in different parts of the book.

At the same time, the classification of the various subjects, the numerous headings, the frequent subdivisions in the body of the same paragraph, have all been designed with a view to add to the clearness of the work; whilst the way in which the Exceptions have been arranged, in a separate column opposite the Rules, will, it is hoped, prove a useful innovation.

A companion volume of *Exercises* will appear very shortly, to be had separately, or bound together with the *Syntax*.

E. P.

CLIFTON, 1887.

CONTENTS

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

	PAGE
A.—General Observations, . .	1-7
I. Agreement of the Article, .	1
II. Place of the Article, . .	2
III. Repetition of the Article, .	2-3
IV. Omission of the Article, .	4-7
B.—The Definite Article, . .	7-11
General Rule, ...	7
Special Rules :	
I. The Definite Article used without any equivalent in English,	8-9
II. The Definite Article used to translate the English Indefinite, ...	10
III. The Definite Article used to translate an English Possessive Adjective, . . .	10-11
IV. The Definite Article used to translate **what, that, every, on,**	11
C.—The Indefinite Article, .	12
D.—The Partitive Article, .	12-13

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

A.—Agreement of the Noun, .	14
B.—Place of the Noun, . .	15-20
I. Place of the Noun in its relations to another Noun, .	15
II. Place of the Noun in its relations to the Verb:	
The Noun-Subject, .	15-19
The Noun-Object, .	19-20
C.—Government of the Noun by a Noun, ...	20-22
I. Preliminary Remarks, . .	20-21
II. The Noun with **à**, . . .	21
III. The Noun with **de**, . .	22
D.—Independent Use of the Noun,	23

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

	PAGE
A.—Agreement of the Adjective,	24-30
I. Simple Adjectives, . .	24-29
II. Compound Adjectives, . .	29-30
B.—Place of the Adjective, .	30-35
C.—Complement of Adjectives, .	35-37
I. Preliminary Remarks, . .	35-36
II. Adjectives requiring **à**, . .	36
III. Adjectives requiring **de**, .	37
IV. Adjectives requiring **en**, .	37
V. Adjectives requiring **envers**,	37
D.—Comparison of Adjectives, .	38-40
I. Preliminary Remarks, . .	38
II. Comparative of Equality, .	38
III. Comparatives of Superiority and Inferiority, . . .	39
IV. The Superlative, . . .	40
E.—Adjectives of Dimension, .	40-41
F.—Numeral Adjectives, . .	42-43
G.—Possessive Adjectives, . .	43-44
H.—Indefinite Adjectives, . .	44-55

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

A.—Personal Pronouns, . .	56-70
I. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns,	56-66
(*a*) Their Place as Subjects, .	56-57
(*b*) Their Place as Objects, .	58-59
(*c*) Their Repetition as Subjects,	59-60
(*d*) Their Repetition as Objects,	60
(*e*) Special Rules, . . .	60-66
Pronouns of the first and second persons, ...	60-61
Pronouns of the third person, .	61-66
(1) **Il, elle, ils, elles,** . .	61
(2) **Le, la, les,**	61-62
(3) **Lui, leur,**	63
(4) **En, y,**	63-65
(5) **Se,**	66

PAGE

II. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, ... 66-70
B.—Possessive Pronouns, . . 70-71
C.—Demonstrative Pronouns, . 71-76
D.—Relative Pronouns, . . 76-80
E.—Interrogative Pronouns, . 80-81
F.—Indefinite Pronouns, . . 82-87

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

A.—Agreement of the Verb with the Subject, . . . 88-94
I. Agreement with one Subject, 88-90
II. Agreement with several Subjects, ... 90-92
III. Agreement of the Verb **être** after the Pronoun **ce**, . . 93-94

B.—Government of Verbs with Nouns, ... 95-103
I. Preliminary Remarks, . . 95-97
II. Verbs governing a Noun without a Preposition, . . 97-98
III. Verbs governing an Indirect Object with **à**, . . . 98-99
IV. Verbs governing an Indirect Object with **de**, . . 100-103

C.—Moods and Tenses, . . 103-160
The Indicative, . . . 103-110
(*a*) Present, . . . 104-105
(*b*) Imperfect, . . . 105-107
(*c*) Preterite or Past Definite, . 107
(*d*) Past Indefinite, . . 107-108
(*e*) Pluperfect, ... 109
(*f* Past Anterior, . . . 109
(*g*) Future, ... 110
The Conditional, . . . 111-114
The Imperative, . . . 114-115
The Subjunctive, . . . 115-131
(*a*) General Rule, . . . 115
(*b*) Cases in which the Subjunctive or Indicative may be used, according to the meaning, . . . 116-123
I. Substantival Clauses, 116-119
II. Adjectival Clauses, . 120-121
III. Adverbial Clauses, . 122-123
(*c*) Cases in which the Subjunctive alone is used, . 123-127
I. Substantival Clauses, 123-125
II. Adjectival Clauses, . . 126
III. Adverbial Clauses, . 126-127

PAGE

(*d*) Independent use of the Subjunctive, . . . 128-129
(*e*) Tenses of the Subjunctive, 129-131
The Infinitive, . . . 131-147
(*a*) Functions of the Infinitive, 131-133
(*b*) The Infinitive used in French, but not in English, . 133-136
(*c*) The Active Infinitive used in French to translate an English Passive Verb, 136-138
(*d*) The Infinitive used in English, but not in French, . 138-139
(*e*) The Infinitive without any Preposition, . . 140-141
(*f*) The Infinitive preceded by a Preposition, . . 141-147
I. Preliminary Remarks, 141-142
II. The Infinitive preceded by **à**, . . . 143-144
III. The Infinitive preceded by **de**, . . 145-146
IV. The Infinitive preceded by **pour**, . . 146-147
The Participle, . . . 147-160
(*a*) Preliminary Remarks, . 147-148
(*b*) The Present Participle, 149-153
I. Differences between the Present Participle and the Verbal Adjective, 149-151
II. The Gerund, . . . 152
III. Cases in which the Present Participle should not be used, . . 152-153
(*c*) The Past Participle, . 154-160
I. Preliminary Observation, 154
II. The Past Participle without any Auxiliary, . 154
III. The Past Participle conjugated with **être**, . 155
IV. The Past Participle conjugated with **avoir**, 155-159
A. Past Participle followed by an Infinitive, . . 156-157
B. Past Participle followed by a Subordinate Clause, . 157
C. Past Participle preceded by the Pronoun **l'**, . . 157
D. Past Participle preceded by the Pronoun **en**, . . 158
E. Past Participle preceded by a Collective Noun, . 158-159
V. The Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs, . 159-160

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

PAGE

A.—Preliminary Remarks, . 161-163
B.—Place of the Adverb, . 163-165
C.—Repetition of the Adverb, 166
D.—Adverbs of Manner, . 166-169
E.—Adverbs of Time, . . 169-173
F.—Adverbs of Place, . . 173-175
G.—Adverbs of Quantity, . 176-181
H.—Adverbs of Affirmation, 181
I.—Adverbs of Negation, . 182-198
I. Preliminary Remarks, . 182
II. **Aucunement, guère, jamais, plus,** . . 182-184
III. **Pas** and **point**, . . 185-186
IV. **Ne**, ... 186-195
(*a*) **Ne** with a Negative Meaning, ... 186-191
Cases in which the omission of **pas** and **point** is optional, . . . 186-187
Cases in which the omission of **pas** and **point** is usual, . . . 187-188
Cases in which the omission of **pas** and **point** is necessary, , . 188-191
(*b*) **Ne** used without a Negative Meaning, . . . 191-195
V. **Non**, ... 196-198

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

I. Preliminary Remarks, . 199-200
II. Various Functions of the Principal Prepositions, . 200-217
À, ... 200-203
Après, d'après, . . . 203
À travers, au travers de, 203
Avant, devant, . . . 204
Avec, ... 204
Chez, ... 204-205
Contre, ... 205
Dans, en, ... 205-207
De, ... 207-209
Durant, pendant, . . 209
Entre, parmi, . . 209-210
Par, ... 210-211
Pour, ... 211-212

PAGE
Près de, auprès de, proche de, ... 212-213
Sous, au-dessous de, par-dessous, . . . 213-214
Sur, au-dessus de, par-dessus, . . . 214-216
Vers, envers, ... 216
Voici, voilà, . . . 216-217

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A.—Co-ordinate Conjunctions, 218-221
I. **Et**, ... 218
II. **Ni**, ... 218-220
III. **Mais; partant, pourtant; toutefois, toutes les fois**, . . . 220-221
B.—Subordinate Conjunctions, 221-226
I. **Depuis que, puisque**, . 221
II. **Jusqu'à ce que**, . . 222
III. **Lorsque, quand**, . 222-223
IV. **Parce que, par ce que; pendant que, tandis que; quoique, quoi que**, 224
V. **Que**, ... 224-226

APPENDIX.

I. List of Verbal Phrases without the Article, . . 227-229
II. List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition **à**, . 229-230
III. List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition **de**, . 230-231
IV. List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition **en**, . . 231
V. List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition **envers**, . 231
VI. List of Adjectives with different Meanings according to their place before or after the Noun, . . . 232-234
VII. List of Verbs requiring no Preposition before an Infinitive, ... 234-235
VIII. List of Verbs requiring the Preposition **à** before an Infinitive, ... 235-237
IX. List of Verbs requiring the Preposition **de** before an Infinitive, . . . 238-239

ERRATA

§ 31, exc. 2, third and fourth examples: for "Vouz" read "Vous."

§ 120: for "any" read "either."

§ 130 (1), third example: for "*done* **it**" read "*done it.*"

§ 185, exc.: for "after **et, on**" read "after **et, ou.**"

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

A.—*GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.*

I.—Agreement of the Article.

§ **1.** The article agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates :

Le soleil, **la** lune et **les** étoiles.	*The sun, the moon, and the stars.*
Un homme et **une** femme.	*A man and a woman.*
Du sable, **de la** terre et **des** pierres.	*Sand, earth and stones.*

Obs. In a few elliptic locutions, the article is found in the plural before a singular noun, in the masculine before a feminine noun, or *vice versâ*, but this anomaly is no real exception, the agreement taking place with a word understood :

Vers **les** (*environs d'*) une heure.	*At about one o'clock.*
Un (*cheval*) isabelle.	*A bay horse.*
La (*fête de*) Saint-Michel.	*Michaelmas.*
Cela est fait **à la** (*manière du*) diable.	*That is wretchedly done.*

Exceptions. — The article is sometimes used in the plural—

(1) Emphatically, before a proper name in the singular :

Les victoires **des** Turenne et **des** Condé.	*The victories of Turenne and Condé.*

(2) In a few locutions, before the first of two or more singular nouns referring to persons or things of the same class :

Les lundi, mardi et mercredi.	*On Mondays, Tuesdays, and Wednesdays.*
Les père et mère.	*The father and mother.*

It is, however, preferable to use the article in the singular and to repeat it :

Le père et **la** mère.

Obs. The article **le** is invariable before **plus, moins, mieux,** followed by a feminine or plural adjective, when the superlative is absolute (see § 59) :

Nous sommes **le** plus heureux quand nous sommes ensemble.	*We are happiest when we are together.*

II.—Place of the Article.

§ 2. The article is placed before the noun, and, if the noun is preceded by an adjective, before the adjective :

Le premier homme.	*The first man.*
Une demi-heure.	*Half an hour.*
Un tel affront.	*Such an affront.*
Un trop long discours.	*Too long a speech.*

Obs. When **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, monseigneur,** are followed by a noun denoting title or profession, the article is placed before that noun :

Monsieur **le** président.	*The president.*
Madame **la** comtesse.	*The countess.*

EXCEPTIONS. — The article is placed—

(1) After the noun in surnames :

Alexandre **le** Grand.	*Alexander the Great.*

(2) After the adjective **tout**

Tous **les** hommes.	*All men.*
Toute **la** terre.	*The whole earth.*

(3) Sometimes after the adjective **feu**, which in that case remains unchanged :

Feu la reine.	*The late queen.*
But **La feue** reine.	

III.—Repetition of the Article.

§ 3. The article being required before a noun taken in a determinate sense and not preceded by another determinative word, it follows that, when several nouns are placed in succession, it must be repeated before each :

Le père, **la** mère, et **les** enfants.	*The father, mother, and children.*
Un père et **une** mère.	*A father and a mother.*
Du papier, **de** l'encre, et **des** plumes.	*Paper, ink, and pens.*

Obs. When two or more nouns, referring to the same person or thing, are preceded by an adjective, the adjective must be repeated as well as the article :

C'était un grand acteur et **un grand** écrivain.	*He was a great actor and writer.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The article is not repeated—

(1) In a few locutions in which the nouns, referring to persons or things of the same class, form, so to speak, one indivisible whole [see § 1, EXC. (2)] :—

Les parents **et amis.**	*The relatives and friends.*
Les officiers, **sous-officiers et soldats.**	*The officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers.*
Les arts **et métiers.**	*Arts and trades.*
L'école des ponts **et chaussées.**	*The school of civil engineers.*

(2) After the conjunction **ou** followed by a second noun which explains the first :

Le nitre **ou salpêtre.**	*Nitre or saltpetre.*

§ **4.** When two or more adjectives, qualifying the same noun, refer to the same object or objects, the article is not repeated :

L'illustre **et vaillant** général.	*The illustrious and valiant general.*
Les illustres **et vaillants** généraux.	*The illustrious and valiant generals.*

Exceptions.—The article must be repeated—

(1) When the adjectives precede the noun and are not connected by any conjunction :

L'illustre, **le vaillant** général.	*The illustrious and valiant general.*

(2) When the adjectives are in the relative superlative, whether they precede or follow the noun, and whether they are connected by a conjunction or not :

Le plus illustre et **le plus** vaillant général. Le général le plus illustre, **le plus** vaillant.	*The most illustrious and valiant general.*

§ **5.** If the adjectives, though apparently qualifying the same noun, express ideas which cannot refer to the same object or objects, the article is generally repeated, because each adjective qualifies in reality a different noun :

Les bons et **les** mauvais écrivains.	*Good and bad writers.*
La langue anglaise et **la** française.	*The English and French languages.*

Obs. 1. Examples are found, even in the best writers, of the omission of the article, especially with plural nouns, but it is safer to keep to the rule.

Obs. 2. All determinative words must be repeated in the same way as the article.

Exceptions.—(1) When the adjectives are connected by the conjunction **ou**, the article need not be repeated, though even then its repetition is preferable :

La bonne **ou** (la) **mauvaise** fortune.	*Good or evil fortune.*

(2) Sometimes the article and the noun are both put in the plural, whilst the adjectives remain in the singular :—

Les langues anglaise et française.	*The English and French languages.*
Les dix-septième et dix-huitième **siècles.**	*The seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.*

But it is better to say :—

Le dix-septième et **le** dix-huitième siècle.
La langue anglaise et **la** française, *or*,
La langue anglaise et **la langue** française.

IV.—Omission of the Article.

§ **6.** The article, being used to give to a noun a determinate sense, is omitted whenever the sense is indeterminate, its use or omission often changing the meaning entirely :

WITH THE ARTICLE.		WITHOUT THE ARTICLE.	
Toute **la** ville.	*The whole town.*	Toute ville.	*Any town.*
Le pot **au** lait.	*A jug actually used for milk.*	Un pot à lait.	*A milk-jug (perhaps used for other purposes).*
L'eau **de la** mer.	*The water of the sea.*	De l'eau de mer.	*Sea-water.*
L'âge **de l'**homme.	*The age of man.*	L'âge d'homme.	*Manhood.*
L'armée **de la** Bulgarie.	*The Bulgarian army.*	L'armée de Bulgarie.	*Any army in Bulgaria.*
Un homme **de la** cour.	*A gentleman of the court.*	Un homme de cour.	*A courtier, an intriguer.*
Un ouvrage **de l'**esprit.	*An intellectual work.*	Un ouvrage d'esprit.	*A literary work of merit.*
Je lui en ai demandé **la** raison.	*I asked him the reason of it.*	Je lui en ai demandé raison.	*I asked him for satisfaction.*
Il entend **la** raillerie.	*He knows how to joke.*	Il entend raillerie.	*He knows how to take a joke.*
Avoir **une** raison.	*To have a motive.*	Avoir raison.	*To be right.*
Rendre **une** visite.	*To return a visit.*	Rendre visite.	*To pay a visit.*
Il a fait **une** faute.	*He has made a mistake.*	Il nous a fait faute.	*We have missed him.*

§ **7.** Accordingly the article is omitted before a noun used (indeterminately)—

(1) After a verb with which it is so intimately connected as to express but one idea :[1]

Ajouter foi à . .	*To believe in.*
Faire voile.	*To set sail.*
Prêter serment.	*To take an oath.*

(2) Generally after the preposition **en** :

En été, en hiver.	*In summer, in winter.*
Vivre **en homme** de bien.	*To live as a virtuous man.*
Elle fut métamorphosée **en fleur.**	*She was changed into a flower.*
Diviser **en parties** égales.	*To divide into equal parts.*

[1] For a list of such expressions, see the Appendix.

(3) After the preposition **de** preceded by the words **espèce, genre, sorte** or any expression of quantity (see § 17):

Quelle **espèce d'**homme est-ce?	*What sort of a man is he?*
Il y a plusieurs **sortes de** courage.	*There are several kinds of courage.*
Donnez-moi un **verre d'**eau.	*Give me a glass of water.*
Vous avez **trop d'**amis.	*You have too many friends.*

(4) After the same preposition **de** preceded by a verb, to denote *material, cause, manner:*

Une maison bâtie **de briques.**	*A house built of bricks.*
Il tremblait **de froid.**	*He was trembling with cold.*

(5) After any preposition with which it forms an adjectival phrase:

Une arme **à feu.**	*A fire-arm.*
Du papier **à lettres.**	*Writing-paper.*
Un trait **de courage.**	*An act of courage.*
Un salon **pour noces.**	*A saloon for wedding-parties.*
Des discours **sans fin.**	*Endless speeches.*

(6) After any preposition with which it forms an adverbial phrase:

A dessein.	*Purposely.*
Avec plaisir.	*Willingly.*
De parti pris.	*Deliberately.*
Sans crainte.	*Fearlessly.*

(7) After **ni**, when this conjunction is not repeated, and often even when it is:

Honneurs **ni fortune** ne nous rendent heureux.	*Neither honours nor wealth make us happy.*
Ils n'ont **ni feu ni lieu.**	*They have neither house nor home.*
Ni promesses, ni menaces ne l'ébranlèrent.	*Neither promises nor threats shook him.*

(8) In titles of books and chapters not beginning with a preposition:

Influence de la langue française.	*The influence of the French language.*
Histoire d'Angleterre.	*A history of England.*
Maximes et **Réflexions.**	*Maxims and Reflections.*

(9) In notices, advertisements, and addresses, when no preposition is used :

Défense d'entrer.	*No admittance.*
Bon bois de chauffage.	*Good firewood.*
Maison à vendre.	*House to be sold.*
Rue La Fayette.	*La Fayette Street.*

(10) In most exclamations and interjections, when no preposition is used :

Gloire soit à Dieu !	*Glory be to God !*
Malheur aux vaincus !	*Woe to the vanquished !*
Courage ! Paix ! Silence !	*Courage ! Peace ! Silence !*

(11) In many idiomatic locutions :

A bon chat, **bon** rat.	*Tit for tat.*
Aller **contre vent et marée.**	*To go against wind and tide.*
De part et **d'autre.**	*On both sides.*
De ville en ville.	*From town to town.*
Par manière d'acquit.	*For form's sake.*
Par monts et **par vaux.**	*Over hills and dales.*
Œil pour œil, dent pour dent.	*An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.*
Mettre sou sur sou.	*To hoard up.*

8. The article, especially the indefinite, is further omitted, as a rule, before nouns standing—

(1) In apposition :

George Monk, **second** fils de Sir Thomas Monk, **gentilhomme** du comté de Devon, naquit au manoir de Potheridge, **héritage** de sa famille.	*George Monk, the second son of Sir Thomas Monk, gentleman of the county of Devon, was born at the manor of Potheridge, the inheritance of his family.*
Tours, **chef-lieu** du département.	*Tours, the chief town of the Department.*
Durand, **père et fils, négociants.**	*Durand, father and son, merchants.*
Un fripon **d'enfant.**	*A rogue of a child.*
Ces brigands **de cochers.**	*Those villanous cabmen.*

EXCEPTIONS.—This rule is not always strictly observed, the article, especially the definite, being often used, particularly—

(1) For the sake of emphasis :

Corneille, l'auteur du Cid.	*Corneille, the author of the Cid.*
Charlemagne, **le** héros de tant de légendes.	*Charlemagne, the hero of so many legends.*

(2) To distinguish one individual from another :

Musset, **le** poète.	*Musset, the poet.*
Vienne, **la** ville du Dauphiné, non pas **la** capitale de l'Autriche.	*Vienne, the town in Dauphiné, not Vienna, the capital of Austria.*

(2) After the verbs **être, devenir, paraître, sembler, rester, créer, faire, nommer,** etc., when the second noun denotes nationality, profession, title, and generally is used adjectively:

Il **est Anglais.**	*He is an Englishman.*
Vous **êtes orfèvre,** Monsieur Josse.	*You are a goldsmith, Mr. Josse.*
Son frère **devint chef** de l'opposition.	*His brother became the leader of the opposition.*
Charles premier d'Espagne fut **élu empereur.**	*Charles I. of Spain was elected emperor.*

(3) Generally when the noun preceded by the verbs **être, devenir, paraître,** etc., is qualified by an adjective or an adjectival phrase:

Son frère devint **le** chef redouté de l'opposition.	*His brother became the dreaded leader of the opposition.*
Ces messieurs sont **des** artistes distingués.	*Those gentlemen are distinguished artists.*

(4) When **être** is preceded by **ce**:

C'est **un** Anglais.	*He is an Englishman.*
Ce sont **des** orfèvres.	*They are goldsmiths.*

Obs. 1. As the last example shows, the definite article is not used before a numeral preceded by the name of a sovereign. It is likewise omitted when the numeral (cardinal or ordinal) follows the words **livre, chapitre, page,** etc.:

Livre premier, chapitre trois. *Book I., chapter III.*

Obs. 2. For other special cases of omission, see §§ 14 and 17.

B.—*THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.*

§ **9.** General Rule.—The definite article is used in French not only in a particular sense, to distinguish one individual from another, as:

L'homme à **l'habit** vert,	*The man with the green coat,*

but also in a general sense, implying a whole class or species:

La raison est le privilége de **l'homme.**	*Reason is the privilege of man.*

Exceptions.—The definite article is sometimes omitted for the sake of brevity—

(1) In proverbs:

Plus fait **douceur** que **violence.**	*Gentleness is better than force.*

(2) In enumerations:

Hommes, femmes, enfants, tous périrent.	*Men, women, children, all perished.*

SPECIAL RULES.—

I.—The Definite Article used without any equivalent in English.

§ **10.** According to the above rule, the definite article is used in French without any equivalent in English—

(1) Before abstract nouns and class-names (names of arts, sciences, languages, virtues, vices, seasons, metals, and other substances, etc.):

La patience est le courage de **la** vertu.	*Patience is the courage of virtue.*
La physique et **la** chimie.	*Physics and chemistry.*
Le français est plus difficile que l'anglais.	*French is harder than English.*
Le fer et **le** cuivre sont fort communs dans ce pays.	*Iron and copper are very common in this country.*

(2) Before proper names preceded by a word denoting title, dignity, profession, or qualified by an adjective:

Le roi Arthur.	*King Arthur.*
Le docteur Smith.	*Dr. Smith.*
La petite Claire.	*Little Clare.*
Le vieux Paris.	*Old Paris.*

Obs. The article is used before a few proper names translated from Italian:

l'Arioste ; **le** Tasse ; **le** Titien.	*Ariosto ; Tasso ; Titian.*

It forms also a part of a few names of persons and towns, as:

La Bruyère, **La** Fontaine, **Le** Tellier, **Le** Havre, **La** Haye, **La** Mecque, **La** Rochelle, etc.

(3) Generally before names of countries, provinces, important islands, mountain peaks:

La Normandie est une des plus belles provinces de **la** France.	*Normandy is one of the finest provinces of France.*
La Corse et **la** Sardaigne.	*Corsica and Sardinia.*
Le Vésuve.	*Mount Vesuvius.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The article is not used—

(1) Before countries having the same name as their capitals:[1]—

Bade est un charmant pays.	*Baden is a charming country.*

(2) Before countries preceded by the preposition **en**:

Nous irons **en** France, **en** Suisse et **en** Italie.	*We will go to France, Switzerland and Italy.*

[1] Notice, however, **le Hanovre, le Luxembourg.**

Obs. 1. The article is always employed before most masculine names of countries, and all feminine ones used in the plural or qualified by an adjective or a complement :

Nous venons **du** Canada, **du** Chili, **du** Sénégal, **des** Indes.	*We come from Canada, from Chili, from Senegal, from India.*
La reine de **la** Grande-Bretagne.	*The Queen of Great Britain.*
Le coton de l'Amérique du Nord.	*The cotton from North America.*

Obs. 2. **Inde**, often used in the plural, always takes the article :

Ils arrivent de l'Inde.	*They arrive from India.*

Obs. Instead of *en*, the preposition **à** is used *with the article* before most *masculine* names of countries :

Il est né **au** Mexique.	*He was born in Mexico.*
Nous allons **au** Pérou.	*We are going to Peru.*

(3) Before *feminine* names of countries used with **de** after a verb of motion, or adjectively to express extraction or qualification [see, however, Obs. 1 and 2 opposite] :

Il vient **d'**Espagne.	*He comes from Spain.*
La toile **d'**Irlande.	*Irish linen.*
Le roi **de** Prusse.	*The King of Prussia.*
Le duché **de** Bourgogne.	*The duchy of Burgundy.*

(4) Before the name of a holy day, the words *fête de* being understood :

La (fête de) St. Michel.	*Michaelmas.*

(5) Before a noun used as subject, object, or part of predicate in a relative sentence introduced by **dont, duquel**, etc. :

L'homme, dont **la** vie est si courte.	*Man, whose life is so short.*
L'écrivain dont vous lisez **la** biographie.	*The writer whose biography you are reading.*
Le prince, sur **la** bonne foi duquel il comptait.	*The prince, on whose good faith he relied.*

(6) In a few exclamations, with the preposition **à** : —

Au feu ! **au** meurtre !	*Fire ! Murder !*
Au secours ! **au** voleur !	*Help ! Stop thief !*

(7) Sometimes familiarly, before a noun in the vocative :

Eh ! **l'**ami !	*I say, friend !*
Où courez-vous, **la** belle ?	*Where are you running, my pretty maid ?*

II.—The Definite Article used to translate the English Indefinite.

§ **11.** The definite article is used in French instead of the indefinite—

(1) Before nouns of measure, weight, quantity, to denote the value of things :

Six francs **le** mètre.	*Six francs* **a** *metre.*
Cinquante centimes **la** livre.	*Fivepence* **a** *pound.*
Dix schellings **la** douzaine.	*Ten shillings* **a** *dozen.*

Obs. The indefinite article must be translated by **par** without any article, when used distributively, instead of *each* or *per* :—

Trois fois **par** jour.	*Three times* **a** *day.*
Cinq francs **par** tête.	*Five francs* **a** *head.*

(2) Before nouns denoting parts of the body, physical pain, mental or bodily faculties, when used as objects :

Le cardinal avait **le** front sévère.	*The cardinal had* **a** *stern countenance.*
J'ai **la** vue basse.	*I have* **a** *short sight.*
Ne faites pas **la** sourde oreille.	*Do not turn* **a** *deaf ear.*
Il a **la** migraine.	*He has* **a** *headache.*
Vous avez **la** mémoire fidèle.	*You have* **a** *faithful memory.*

EXCEPTION.—The indefinite article is generally used in French, as well as in English, when the meaning of the noun is limited by a phrase :

Le nouveau ministre avait **une** mémoire qui ne le trompait jamais.	*The new minister had a memory which never failed him.*

III.—The Definite Article used to translate an English Possessive Adjective.

§ **12.** The definite article is used instead of a possessive adjective—

(1) Alone, when there cannot be any doubt as to who the possessor is (in speaking of a part of the body, or a bodily or mental faculty) :

Tournez **la** tête.	*Turn* **your** *head.*
N'avez-vous pas froid **aux** mains?	*Are not* **your** *hands cold?*
Il perdit **la** vue, **la** raison, **la** vie.	*He lost* **his** *sight,* **his** *reason,* **his** *life.*

EXCEPTIONS.—A possessive adjective is used in French, as in English—

(1) To express *habitual* pain :

Il souffre encore de **ses** dents.	*He is still suffering from his teeth.*
J'ai **ma** migraine.	*I have my headache.*

(2) For the sake of emphasis, chiefly after a preposition :

Je l'ai entendu de **mes** propres oreilles.	*I heard it with my own ears.*

(2) Together with a conjunctive personal pronoun, when the article alone might give rise to ambiguity :

Le cœur **lui** manqua.	**His** *courage failed.*
Une idée étrange **me** traversa **l'**esprit.	*A strange idea crossed* **my** *mind.*
Les yeux **me** cuisaient.	**My** *eyes were smarting.*
Il **lui** a cassé **le** bras et **s'**est cassé **le sien.**	*He broke* **her** *arm and* **his own.**

(3) Together with the pronoun *en*, in speaking of inanimate things (see § 71).

(3) With a noun used as subject of **être** or a *passive* verb :

Vos yeux sont mouillés de larmes.	*Your eyes are wet with tears.*
Ses pieds étaient attachés aux étriers.	*His feet were tied to the stirrups.*

(4) Often with a noun used as subject of a neuter verb, especially when there is no object :

Mes cheveux ont blanchi.	*My hair has grown grey.*

(5) With a noun-object qualified by an adjective, or a phrase :

Elle tourna vers lui **ses** yeux mutins.	*She turned towards him her roguish eyes.*
Sa douleur déchirait mon cœur paternel.	*Her grief tore my paternal heart.*

(6) In many idioms and familiar expressions, chiefly after a preposition :

Le voleur prit **ses** jambes à **son** cou.	*The thief took to his heels.*
Il a encore toute **sa** tête.	*He still retains all his faculties.*
Il le pressa sur **son** sein.	*He pressed him to his bosom.*
Cette image est gravée dans **mon** cœur.	*This image is engraved in my heart.*

IV.—The Definite Article used to translate WHAT, THAT, EVERY, ON.

§ **13.** The definite article is further used in the sense of—

(1) *What, What a,* in exclamations :

La bonne idée !	**What a** *good idea !*
Les beaux nuages !	**What** *beautiful clouds !*

(2) *This, that,* in the expression **de la sorte :**

Ne parlez pas **de la sorte.**	*Do not speak* **in that way.**

(3) *Every, on,* before days of the week, in speaking of a habitual thing :

Je vais chez lui **le** dimanche.	*I go to him* **on** *Sundays.*

C.—*THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.*

§ **14.** It has been seen already that the indefinite article is often omitted in French (§§ 7 and 8), or replaced by the definite (§ 11). Besides the cases already mentioned, its omission takes place—

(1) After **quel** :

Quel homme !	**What a** *man !*
Quelle belle journée !	**What a** *beautiful day !*

(2) Often after **jamais** placed at the beginning of a sentence ;

Jamais père fut-il plus outragé ?	*Was* **ever a** *father more outraged ?*

§ **15.** *Vice versâ*, the indefinite article is often used in French, without any equivalent in English, before an abstract noun qualified by an adjective—

(1) Either with a preposition :

Il jouit d'**une** parfaite santé.	*He enjoys perfect health.*
Avec **une** joie infinie.	*With infinite joy.*

(2) Or even, but less frequently, without any preposition :

Ils montrèrent **un** grand courage.	*They showed great courage.*
Nous avons eu **un** temps splendide.	*We have had splendid weather.*

D.—*THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.*

§ **16.** The partitive article is, as a rule, used in French before every noun taken in a partitive sense, whether singular or plural :

Donnez-moi **du** papier et **de** l'encre.	*Give me paper and ink.*
Il y a **des** gens qui ne veulent pas le croire.	*There are people who will not believe it.*

EXCEPTIONS.—For cases in which the partitive article must be replaced by the préposition **de**, see next section.

§ **17.** The partitive article, however, must generally be replaced by the preposition **de**, when the noun is preceded by—

(1) An adjective :

Donnez-moi **de** bon papier et **de** bonne encre.	*Give me good paper and ink.*
Il y a **de** sottes gens qui ne veulent pas le croire.	*There are foolish people who will not believe it.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The partitive article is used—

(1) Before an adjective—

[*a*] When it is in the superlative relative, and is not preceded by a possessive :

Donnez-moi **du** meilleur papier.	*Give me some of the best paper.*

(2) An expression of quantity (see § 7) :

Beaucoup **d'**esprit et peu **de** cœur.	*Much wit and little heart.*
Un verre **d'**eau.	*A glass of water.*
Une centaine **de** personnes.	*About a hundred people.*
Trois mètres **de** drap.	*Three yards of cloth.*
Une armée **de** barbares.	*An army of barbarians.*

(3) A negative :

Ne lisez-vous jamais **de** romans?	*Do you never read novels?*
N'a-t-il pas **d'**argent?	*Has he no money?*
Ils n'avaient point **d'**enfants.	*They had no children.*
Sans vous faire **de** compliments.	*Without paying you any compliments.*

[*b*] When it is joined to the following noun by a hyphen, or forms with it a sort of compound, though no hyphen joins them :

Des beaux-frères.	*Brothers-in-law.*
Des beaux esprits.	*Wits.*
Des bons mots.	*Jokes, witticisms.*
Des petits pois.	*Green peas.*

[*c*] Often, when it is considered as much more important than the noun :

C'est **du** bon vin qu'il nous faut.	*We want* good *wine.*

(2) After the adverb **bien** used in the sense of **beaucoup** :

Il s'est donné **bien de la** peine.	*He has taken a good deal of trouble.*

Obs. **La plupart** is followed by the definite article :—

La plupart **des** hommes.	*Most men.*

(3) After a negative—

[*a*] In an interrogative sentence, when the sense is really affirmative :

Ne lisez-vous jamais **des** romans?	*Surely you read novels sometimes, do you not?*
N'a-t-il pas **de l'**argent?	*Doubtless he has some money.*

[*b*] When the noun is used predicatively :

Ce ne sont pas **des** enfants.	*They are no children.*

[*c*] When there is an idea of opposition or contrast :

Je ne vous lirai pas **des** vers, mais de la prose.	*I will not read to you verses, but prose.*

§ **18**. *Note.*—It must be borne in mind that the noun naturally requires the article, when, being particularised by some following adjunct, it is used determinately :

Donnez-moi **du** bon papier que vous venez d'acheter.	*Give me some of the good paper you have just bought.*
Nous n'avons pas **des** livres pour les brûler.	*We have not got books to burn them.*

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

A.—*AGREEMENT OF THE NOUN.*

§ **19.** A noun qualifying another noun, either in apposition or after such verbs as **être, devenir, paraître, faire, nommer, croire,** etc., must as far as possible agree with it in gender and number :

Christine, **reine** de Suède.	*Christina, Queen of Sweden.*
Son fils était **acteur,** ses filles furent **musiciennes.**	*His son was an actor, his daughters became musicians.*
Les deux amis furent faits **capitaines.**	*The two friends were made captains.*

Obs. It is evident that the agreement is often impossible when the noun has only one form and one gender :

Cette femme est **un écrivain distingué,**	*This woman is a distinguished writer,*

and that it can never take place when the meaning requires a different number :

Les richesses sont **sa seule préoccupation.**	*Wealth is his only anxiety.*

Exceptions.—(1) **Témoin** always remains in the singular at the beginning of a sentence and in the adverbial locution **à témoin** :

Témoin ses dernières paroles.	*Witness his last words.*
Je vous prends tous **à témoin.**	*I call you all to witness.*

(2) Nouns used adjectively to express colours are, as a rule, invariable :

Des rubans **paille.**	*Straw-coloured ribbons.*
Des chapeaux **noisette.**	*Nut-brown hats.*
Des étoffes **ponceau.**	*Flame-coloured stuffs.*

Obs. 1. **Amarante, écarlate, pourpre,** used with a plural noun, take the mark of the plural :

Des rideaux **écarlates.**	*Scarlet curtains.*

Obs. 2. **Cramoisi, mordoré,** and **rose,** being real adjectives, always agree with the noun :

Des velours **cramoisis** ou **roses.**	*Crimson or pink velvets.*
Des souliers **mordorés.**	*Reddish-brown shoes*

B.—*PLACE OF THE NOUN.*[1]

I.—Place of the Noun in its relations to another Noun.

§ **20.** A noun follows not only the preposition, adjective, or adverb by which it is governed, but also the noun it qualifies, either with a preposition, to express origin, species, material, use, etc., or without preposition, as an epithet :

De la toile **d'Irlande.**	*Irish linen.*
Une montre **d'argent.**	*A silver watch.*
La cuiller **à thé.**	*The tea-spoon.*
La déesse **aux cheveux blonds.**	*The fair-haired goddess.*
Les oiseaux **voyageurs.**	*Migratory birds.*

EXCEPTIONS. — The qualifying noun precedes the noun qualified in a few compounds and idiomatic expressions :

Un **chef-lieu.**	*A chief-town.*
Un **maître-maçon.**	*A master-mason.*
Une **maîtresse femme.**	*A superior woman.*

Obs. The preposition **durant** may sometimes follow its noun :

Sa vie **durant.**	*During his life.*

Place of the Noun in its relations to the Verb.

(*a*) THE NOUN-SUBJECT.

§ **21.** AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCES. —The noun-subject is, as a rule, placed before the verb as in English :

L'honneur parle, j'obéis.	*Honour speaks, I obey.*

Obs. A redundant personal pronoun follows the verb—

(1) In conditional clauses introduced by the subject (unless the

EXCEPTIONS. — The subject is placed after the verb—

(1) When alone, or together with the words which qualify it, it is longer than the verb—

[*a*] Sometimes, in administrative style :

Est nulle **toute assurance** qui n'est pas rédigée par écrit.	*Every insurance which is not drawn up in writing is null and void.*

[1] For the place of the noun in its relations to an adjective, see §§ 36-41 and 43.

verb is in the conditional, followed by **que**) :

Un esclave était-**il** accusé, sa mort était certaine.	*If a slave was accused, his death was certain.*
But Son père me le dirait que je ne le croirais pas.	*Even if his father said it to me, I could not believe it.*

(2) Generally in sentences introduced by **à peine, à plus forte raison, au moins, du moins, aussi** (=so, hence), **encore** (=yet, even then), **en vain, peut-être, toujours** (=still):

A peine la nouvelle fut-**elle** arrivée, que nous partîmes.	*Hardly had the news arrived, when we started.*
En vain l'orateur essaya-t-**il** de calmer la foule.	*In vain did the orator try to quiet the crowd.*
Peut-être mon frère viendra-t-**il** aussi.	*Perhaps my brother will come also.*

[*b*] Generally in relative clauses :

Voilà les résultats qu'a produits **cette fatale entreprise.**	*Such are the results which this fatal enterprise has produced.*
La bonté avec laquelle m'a reçu **votre famille.**	*The kindness with which your family has received me.*

[*c*] Generally in sentences beginning with **ainsi, comment,** an adverb of time or place, or an adverbial phrase, and sometimes after a subordinate conjunction, especially when it is followed by a relative clause :

Ainsi fut détruite **l'œuvre** de tant d'années.	*Thus was destroyed the work of so many years.*
J'ignore comment finit **l'histoire.**	*I do not know how the story ends.*
Ici naquit **Virgile.**	*Here Virgil was born.*
Bientôt viendra **la réaction.**	*The reaction will soon come.*
Dans cette obscure retraite mourut **le grand philosophe.**	*In this obscure retreat died the great philosopher.*
Pourvu qu'arrive **la réponse.**	*Provided the answer arrives.*
J'en suis sûr, quoiqu'en doutent **tous les gens** à qui j'en ai parlé.	*I am sure of it, although all the people to whom I mentioned it, doubt it.*

(2) For the sake of emphasis or vivacity—

[*a*] In conditional or suppositive clauses, when the subjunctive is used without a conjunction :

Survienne **la moindre difficulté,** il se décourage.	*Should the slightest difficulty occur, he gets disheartened.*

Obs.—If the indicative is used, the subject may be placed either

before or after the verb, with a redundant personal pronoun :

Le moindre accident survient-il. . . .	*If the slightest accident occurs. . . .*
Survient-**il** le moindre accident. . . .	

[*b*] In optative sentences :

Périsse **la mémoire** du tyran !	*May the tyrant's memory perish !*
Fasse **le ciel** qu'il réussisse !	*Heaven grant he may succeed !*

[*c*] When the verb is used impersonally :

Il est déjà arrivé **beaucoup d'étrangers.**	*Many strangers have already come.*
Il se mêlait à ma joie **une idée douloureuse.**	*A painful idea was mixed with my joy.*

[*d*] When the sentence begins with an adjective, or with **ce** followed by the verb **être** and **que** :

Terrible était **sa colère.**	*Terrible was his wrath.*
Longues nous parurent **les heures.**	*The hours seemed very long to us.*
C'est une chose sacrée que **la liberté.**	*Liberty is a sacred thing.*

(3) In parenthetical clauses introduced in the middle of a quotation, or directly following it—

"Mes enfants," dit **le père,** "écoutez."	*"My children," said the father, "listen."*
"Que je te plains !" disait un jour **le lierre** au thym.	*"How I pity you !" said one day the ivy to the thyme.*

Obs. 1. No inversion takes place, as a rule, when the verb has a direct object, unless it be a reflexive or relative pronoun.

Obs. 2. There is no inversion either in a relative or adverbial clause, when the verb is followed by an indirect object or an adverbial phrase longer than the subject.

§ **22.** INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES. —The noun-subject is placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses :

La moisson commencera-t-elle bientôt ?	*Will the harvest soon begin ?*
La moisson a-t-elle déjà commencé ?	*Has the harvest begun already ?*

Obs. This rule applies to any part of speech used as subject, except personal pronouns, and **ce** and **on**, which must follow the verb.

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) The noun-subject *may* come after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses, in questions introduced by any interrogative word or phrase (except **est-ce que, pourquoi,** and **qui** used as direct object), when the verb is not followed by any object or complement :

Quand, quel jour, à quelle heure, avec qui viendra **votre frère** *or* **votre frère** viendra-t-il ?	*When, what day, at what o'clock, with whom will your brother come ?*

(2) The noun-subject *must* come after the verb in questions introduced by the interrogative pronouns *que* and *quel* :

Que fera **la reine ?**	*What will the queen do ?*
Quel est **cet homme-là ?**	*Who is that man ?*

§ **23.** A redundant personal pronoun must be placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses, in order to mark the interrogation, when the noun-subject precedes the verb, *i.e.*—

(1) In simple questions (see § 22).

(2) In questions introduced by **pourquoi, or qui,** used as direct object :—

Pourquoi le concert n'a-t-il pas lieu ?	*Why does not the concert take place ?*
Qui votre frère a-t-il vu ?	*Whom did your brother see ?*

EXCEPTIONS. — No redundant pronoun is used in questions introduced by—

(1) **Est-ce que,** preceded or not by an interrogative pronoun or adverb :

Est-ce que la moisson **commencera** bientôt ?	*Will the harvest soon begin ?*
Pourquoi **est-ce que** le concert n'a pas lieu ?	*Why does not the concert take place ?*

(3) In questions introduced by any other interrogative word or phrase, when an object, or complement follows the verb (or even when the verb is not followed by any object or complement, if the subject is placed first [see § 22, Exc. 1]):

Comment, de quelle manière, le public a-t-**il** reçu la nouvelle?	*How, in what way, has the public received the news?*
Quand, quel jour, à quelle heure, avec qui votre frère viendra-t-**il** chez nous?	*When, what day, at what o'clock, with whom, will your brother come to our house?*

(2) **Quel** followed by the noun-subject:

Quel poète **a** écrit Cinna?	*What poet has written Cinna?*
Quelle mouche vous **pique**?	*What ails you?*

Obs. It is evident that no redundant pronoun should be used in the cases mentioned in § 22, Exc. 2, the noun-subject being placed after the verb.

(*b*) THE NOUN-OBJECT.

§ **24.** As a rule, the noun-object follows the verb, and when the verb has no nouns for objects, the *direct* object comes before the *indirect*:

La fortune favorise **les braves.**	*Fortune favours the brave.*
La nature avait prodigué **ses dons** au jeune prince.	*Nature had lavished her gifts on the young prince.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) The noun-object is placed before the verb—

[*a*] When it is preceded by **quel, combien,** or **que,** in the sense of *combien*:

Quel âge avez-vous?	*How old are you?*
Combien d'habitants cette ville a-t-elle?	*How many inhabitants has this town?*
Que de joie il éprouva!	*What joy he felt!*

[*b*] In enumerations, the various objects being recapitulated by an indefinite pronoun:

Ses paroles, ses gestes, son regard, je n'ai **rien** oublié.	*His words, his gestures, his look, I have forgotten nothing.*

[*c*] For the sake of emphasis or elegance, in which case the direct

object is repeated in the form of a personal pronoun:

Cette doctrine, l'opinion publique **la** condamne.	*This doctrine public opinion condemns.*

(2) The indirect object or complement precedes the direct—

[*a*] Generally for the sake of euphony, when it is shorter than the latter:

La nature avait prodigué **au jeune prince** ses dons les plus précieux.	*Nature had lavished on the young prince her most precious gifts.*

[*b*] For the sake of emphasis, when it precedes the verb:

A ces menaces il ne répondit pas un mot.	*To those threats he did not answer one word.*

C.—*GOVERNMENT OF THE NOUN BY A NOUN.*[1]

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **25.** It is not always easy to determine the number of a noun standing as complement of another noun. The singular is used, as a rule, when the sense is *general*, and the plural when it is *particular*:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Des bonnes d'**enfant.**	*Nurse-maids.*	Des écoles d'**enfants.**	*Children's schools.*
Des habits d'**homme.**	*Men's clothes.*	Des assemblées d'**hommes.**	*Men's meetings.*
Des manches à **balai.**	*Broomsticks.*	Des boucles d'**oreilles.**	*Ear-rings.*
Des peaux de **tigre.**	*Tigers' skins.*	Un pot à **fleurs.**	*A flower-pot.*

Obs. In some cases either number may be used:

Des oiseaux de **toute sorte** *or* de **toutes sortes.**	*Birds of all description.*
De la gelée de **pomme** *or* de **pommes.**	*Apple jelly.*

[1] For the government of the noun by adjectives and verbs, see §§ 44-50, and 208-215.

§ **26.** If two nouns require the same preposition, they may have the same complement :

Son attachement et sa fidélité **à notre cause.**	*His attachment and faithfulness to our cause.*

But if they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter :

Son attachement **à** notre cause et son zèle **pour elle.**	*His attachment to, and zeal for, our cause.*

§ **27.** Some nouns require the same preposition as the verbs from which they are derived :

L'inclination, le penchant **au** travail.	*The inclination to work.*

II.—The Noun after *à.*

§ **28.** The preposition **à** is generally used before a noun depending on another noun to express—

(1) *Tendency, inclination, application* :

La tendance **à** l'exagération.	*The tendency to exaggeration.*
La disposition **au** bien.	*The disposition to virtue.*
L'assiduité **à** l'étude.	*The assiduity to study.*
L'attention **aux** règles.	*The attention to rules.*

(2) *Fitness, destination, purpose, use* :

Son aptitude **aux** affaires.	*His aptitude for business.*
De la poudre **à** canon.	*Gunpowder.*
Un verre **à** vin.	*A wine-glass.*
Du papier **à** lettres.	*Letter-paper.*
Une boîte **à** ouvrage.	*A work-box.*
Une table **à** jeu.	*A card-table.*

(3) *Manner of being, special class, characteristic feature* :

Un homme **à** projets.	*A scheming man.*
Un enfant **aux** cheveux blonds.	*A fair-haired child.*
Des arbres **à** fruit.	*Fruit-trees.*
Un portrait **à** l'huile.	*An oil-painting.*
Des bateaux **à** voiles.	*Sailing boats.*
Des instruments **à** vent.	*Wind instruments.*

III.—The Noun after *de.*

§ **29.** The preposition **de** is generally used before a noun depending on another noun to express—

(1) *Origin, quality, condition, material, possession* :

Du vin **de** Bourgogne.	*Burgundy wine.*
Un homme **de** génie.	*A man of genius.*
Une leçon **d'**histoire.	*A lesson of history.*
Les gens **de** lettres.	*Men of letters.*
Un chapeau **de** paille.	*A straw-hat.*
La maison **du** jardinier.	*The gardener's house.*

(2) *Want, scarcity, deprivation* :

L'absence **de** toute prétention.	*The absence of all pretension.*
Le besoin **d'**argent.	*The want of money.*
Son manque **de** courage.	*His lack of courage.*

(3) *Quantity, connection of the part with the whole, contents, measure, dimension, value* :

Une foule **d'**hommes.	*A crowd of men.*
La moitié **d'**une pomme.	*Half an apple.*
Le tronc **d'**un arbre.	*The trunk of a tree.*
Un verre **de** vin.	*A glass of wine.*
Un ruban **de** trois mètres.	*A ribbon three yards long.*
Un mur **de** cinq pieds **d'**épaisseur.	*A wall five feet thick.*
Une pièce **de** vingt francs.	*A twenty-franc piece.*

(4) *Cause, motive, instrument* :

Des larmes **de** joie.	*Tears of joy.*
Un mouvement **d'**impatience.	*A movement of impatience.*
Un trait **de** plume.	*A stroke of the pen.*
Un coup **de** pied.	*A kick.*

Obs. Notice also the idiomatic use of **de** in such expressions as :

La ville **de** Paris.	*The town of Paris.*
Le fleuve **de** la Loire.	*The river Loire.*
La tragédie **de** Cinna.	*The tragedy of Cinna.*
Quel chien **de** temps !	*What unpleasant weather !*
Un fripon **d'**enfant.	*A rogue of a child.*
Un coquin **d'**aubergiste	*A rascal of an innkeeper.*

D.—*INDEPENDENT USE OF THE NOUN.*

§ **30.** A noun may be used independently of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, chiefly—

(1) In apostrophes :

O nature, ô ma mère !	*O nature, my mother !*

(2) In interjections and exclamations :

Paix ! Silence ! Au feu ! Au voleur !	*Peace ! Silence ! Fire ! Stop thief !*
Mort aux tyrans ! Honneur aux braves !	*Death to tyrants ! Honour to the brave !*
A la grâce de Dieu !	*To the mercy of God !*

(3) In titles and notices :

Histoire de France.	*A History of France.*
De l'ambition.	*On ambition.*
Avis au lecteur.	*To the reader.*
Défense d'entrer.	*No admittance.*

(4) In proverbs and maxims :

A bon chat, bon rat.	*A Roland for an Oliver.*
Œil pour œil, dent pour dent.	*An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.*

(5) In elliptic interrogations :

Votre nom ?	*Your name ?*
Et mon livre ?	*And what about my book ?*

(6) In constructions corresponding to the Latin ablative absolute :

Sa résolution prise, il nous quitta.	*Having made up his mind, he left us.*

(7) In a great many phrases denoting time, price, quantity, place, manner, etc. :

La semaine prochaine.	*Next week.*
Trois francs le mètre.	*Three francs a yard.*
Au bord de la mer.	*By the sea-shore.*
A votre aise ; à bras ouverts.	*As you like ; with open arms.*
De bonne heure ; d'habitude.	*Early ; usually.*
En bonne justice ; en temps de paix.	*In strict justice ; in time of peace.*
Par hasard ; par terre.	*By chance ; on the ground.*
Sous main ; sous ce rapport.	*Secretly ; in that respect.*
Sur la droite ; sur terre et sur mer.	*To the right ; by land and sea, etc.*

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

A.—*AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.*

I.—Simple Adjectives.

§ **31.** Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns or pronouns to which they relate :

Le **bon** livre.	*The good book.*
Les **bons** livres.	*The good books.*
Une **jolie** fleur.	*A pretty flower.*
De **jolies** fleurs.	*Pretty flowers.*

Obs. 1. It has been already mentioned in the Accidence that—

[*a*] A few adjectives, like **rococo, sterling,** are invariable :

Dix livres **sterling.**	*Ten pounds sterling.*

[*b*] Others, like **dispos, grognon, leur, plusieurs,** have no distinctive form for the feminine :

Elle n'était pas fort **dispos.**	*She was not very alert.*
Quelle humeur **grognon!**	*What grumbling temper!*

[*c*] Others, again, like **aquilin, bot, fat,** are only used with masculine nouns :

Un nez **aquilin.**	*An aquiline nose.*
Un pied **bot.**	*A club-foot.* / *A club-footed man.*
Cet homme est bien **fat.**	*This man is very foppish, conceited.*

EXCEPTIONS.—No agreement takes place in the case of—

(1) Adjectives used adverbially, like **bon, droit, dru, ferme, haut, bas, juste,** etc. :

Comme cette fleur sent **bon!**	*How sweet this flower smells!*
Les balles pleuvaient **dru** comme mouches.	*The bullets fell as thick as hail.*
Elle marche **droit.**	*She walks straight.*
But Elle marche **droite.**	*She walks upright.*

Obs. **Frais,** however, is variable for the sake of euphony :

Des fleurs **fraîches** épanouies.	*Freshly blown flowers.*

Notice also :

La porte est **toute grande** ouverte.	*The door is quite wide open.*

(For **tout** variable when used adverbially, see § 105).

Obs. 2. Owing to an ellipsis, it happens sometimes that—

[*a*] A masculine adjective is used with a feminine noun, or *vice versâ* :

Fin **courant** (*i.e.* fin du mois courant).	*At the end of the present month.*

[*b*] A feminine adjective is used without any noun expressed in the sentence :

L'avoir **belle** (*i.e.* une belle occasion).	*To have a fair opportunity.*
Il m'en a dit de **belles** (*i.e.* de belles histoires).	*He has told me a heap of fine stories.*
Vous me la donnez **belle** (*i.e.* une belle histoire).	*Pretty story, that.*
Il en a fait de **belles** (*i.e.* de belles choses).	*He has done fine things, indeed!*
Il se mit à rire de plus **belle** (manière).	*He began to laugh louder than ever.*
Vous en verrez bien d'**autres** (choses).	*You will see stranger things than that.*
Il en sait bien d'**autres** (choses).	*He knows more tricks than one.*
A la **romaine** (*i.e.* à la mode romaine), etc.	*According to the Roman fashion, etc.*

Obs. 3. When an adjective is preceded by two nouns, one of which is the complement of the other, it agrees sometimes with the former, sometimes with the latter, according to the sense :

Une table de **marbre blanc.**	*A white marble table.*
Une **table** de marbre **ronde.**	*A round marble table.*

(For the agreement of the adjective after collective nouns, see Agreement of the Verb, § 199.)

(2) **Demi** and **franc** in **franc de port** (=*prepaid, carriage paid*), when they precede the noun :

Une **demi-**heure.	*Half an hour.*
But Une heure et **demie.**	*An hour and a half.*
Vouz recevrez **franc** de port les paquets que je vous envoie.	*You will receive, carriage paid, the parcels I send you.*
But Vouz recevrez les paquets **francs** de port.	*You will receive the parcels, carriage paid.*

Obs. 1. **Demi** remains also invariable before adjectives and participles, and is joined to the following word by a hyphen :

Des peuples **demi-**barbares.	*Half-barbarous peoples.*

It never agrees in the expression **à demi**, after which no hyphen is used :

Elle était **à demi** morte.	*She was half dead.*

Obs. 2. As a noun, **demi** is variable, and masculine in arithmetic, but feminine in speaking of the hours :

Trois **demis.**	*Three halves.*
Cette pendule sonne les **demies.**	*This clock strikes the half-hours.*

Obs. 3. **Franc** is sometimes found invariable in **franc de port,** even when it follows the noun.

(3) **Nu,** when it precedes the noun without article, in which case it is joined to it by a hyphen, like **demi** :

Il était **nu-**pieds.	*He was barefooted.*
But Il était pieds **nus,**	
or Il avait les pieds **nus.**	

Notice—

La **nue** propriété.	*The reversionary interest.*

Obs. 4. Adjectives relating to the pronouns **nous, vous,** used to denote one person only, remain in the singular, agreeing with the noun expressed or understood :

Vous, mon frère, vous êtes toujours **moqueur.**	*You, my brother, are always mocking.*

(4) **Feu** (=*late, deceased*), when it precedes a proper name, a determinative word, or *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle* :

Feu Marie.	*The late Mary.*
Feu ma sœur.	*My late sister.*
Feu Madame X.	*The late Madam X.*
But La **feue** reine.	*The late queen.*

Obs. Notice that (*a*) **Feu** is only used in speaking of our contemporaries ; (*b*) **Feu la reine** implies that there is no other queen living, whilst **la feue reine** shows the deceased queen has been replaced.

(5) **Haut** in **haut la main** (=*with a high hand*), and **plein,** when it precedes a determinative word :

Il a triomphé **haut la main** de ses rivaux.	*He has triumphed with a high hand over his rivals.*
Il a des livres **plein** sa maison.	*He has his house full of books.*

(6) **Grand** in some expressions, like **grand'chose, grand'faim, grand'soif, grand'garde, grand'mère, grand'messe, à grand'peine, grand'peur, grand'rue, grand'tante,**[1] etc. :

Ses deux **grand'mères.**	*His two grandmothers.*

(7) **Possible,** when it is placed after a noun preceded by **le plus de, le moins de,** or after a superlative in the plural preceded by the noun :

Le plus de troupes **possible** (*i.e.* that it is possible).	*As many troops as possible.*
Les descriptions les plus longues **possible.**	*The longest possible descriptions.*

[1] These expressions are remnants of old French, in which adjectives derived from Latin adjectives with two terminations only, had no distinct termination for the feminine. The apostrophe was added towards the end of the sixteenth century by grammarians, who imagined that an *e* had been left out.

Obs. According to some grammarians, **possible** is even invariable when the plural noun immediately follows the superlative :

Les plus longues descriptions **possible.**	*The longest possible descriptions.*

(8) **Tout** immediately followed by the name of a town :

Tout Venise l'a vu.	*All Venice saw it.*

Obs. This is often explained as an agreement by syllepsis, the word **peuple** being understood ; but **tout** generally remains invariable, even when it is impossible to suppose that **peuple** is understood, as :

Tout Venise était illuminé.	*All Venice was illuminated.*

Notice further that—

[*a*] After the expression **avoir l'air**, the adjective may agree indifferently with the subject or with **air**, whenever it may be looked upon as referring to either :

Ils ont l'air **triste** (*or* **tristes**).	*They look sad.*

But if the adjective distinctly refers to the subject, it must agree with it :

Ils ont l'air **tristes** de cette nouvelle.	*They appear saddened by this news.*

This is almost always the case in speaking of *things* :

Ces pommes ont l'air **gâtées.**	*These apples look spoilt.*

[*b*] **Royaux**, like **grand** instead of **grande** in **grand'mère**, etc., and for the same reason, is used instead of **royales** in the expressions **lettres royaux, ordonnances royaux**, referring to the old monarchy.

(See also § 5, Exc. 2.

§ **32.** Adjectives relating to two or more nouns or pronouns are put in the plural, and agree in gender; and if the nouns are of different genders, they generally take the masculine:

Un printemps et un été **charmants.**	*A charming spring and summer.*
Une après-midi et une soirée **charmantes.**	*A charming afternoon and evening.*
Une idylle et un sonnet **charmants.**	*A charming idyl and sonnet.*

Obs. 1. If the nouns are of different genders, and the adjective, having a distinct termination for the feminine, is not separated from them by a verb, the masculine noun should, as far as possible, be placed last.

Obs. 2. It stands to reason that—

[*a*] If the adjective placed after two nouns only refers to the latter, it agrees with it only, even though they should be joined by **et**:

On demande un homme ou une femme **âgée.**	*Wanted a man or an elderly woman.*
Sa démarche et son regard **vague** indiquaient l'irrésolution.	*His gait and his vague look showed irresolution.*

[*b*] On the other hand, if the adjective refers to both nouns, it must agree with both, even though they should be connected by the alternative conjunction **ou**:

On demande un homme ou une femme **âgés.**	*Wanted an elderly man or woman.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Although the idea expressed by an adjective refers to more than one noun, the adjective agrees only—

(1) With the first, when the nouns are connected by **ainsi que, aussi bien que, autant que, comme, de même que, plus que,** etc.:

Il a la démarche, ainsi que le regard, **pleine** d'assurance.	*His gait, as well as his look, is full of confidence.*

(2) With the last—

[*a*] When they stand in gradation without being connected by any conjunction:

Mais le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute **prête.**	*But the steel, the headband, the flame is all ready.*

[*b*] When they are synonymous, or nearly so, and not connected by any conjunction except **ou**:

Il fit preuve d'une énergie, d'une activité peu **commune.**	*He gave proof of uncommon energy and activity.*
Il a été rappelé par une affaire ou un devoir **urgent.**	*He was called back by urgent business or duty.*

Obs. The nouns are sometimes joined by **et**, but this exceptional construction should not be imitated.

[*c*] When they are of different genders, and the feminine noun comes last, if the adjective has a distinct termination for the feminine and is not separated from the nouns by a verb:

Un poème et une historiette **charmante.**	*A charming poem and tale.*
But Ce poème et cette historiette sont **charmants.**	*This poem and this tale are charming.*

Obs. It is preferable, whenever possible, to place the masculine noun last (see *Obs.* 1).

Notice that, if the nouns are taken together as a whole, denoting one object only, the adjective remains in the singular :

Comment trouvez-vous Bertrand et Raton ?[1] — Moins **amusant** que je ne pensais.	*How do you find "Bertrand et Raton"?—Less amusing than I thought.*

II.—Compound Adjectives.

§ **33.** In compound adjectives formed with two adjectives or an adjective and a participle, neither of which is used adverbially, the two components agree :

Des oranges **aigres-douces.**	*Sourish oranges.*
Des hommes **ivres-morts.**	*Dead-drunk men.*
Les enfants **premiers-nés.**	*The first-born children.*

Exceptions.—(1) **Mort** in compound adjectives remains invariable :

Une fille **mort**-née.	*A still-born daughter.*
Des enfants **mort**-nés.	*Still-born children.*

(2) Two adjectives used together to denote a colour remain invariable, the former being taken substantively :

Des cheveux **châtain clair.**	*Light brown hair.*
Des yeux **bleu foncé.**	*Dark blue eyes.*

§ **34.** If the first component is used adverbially (*i.e.* modifies the other), the second only agrees :

Des arbres **clair-semés.**	*Thinly scattered trees.*
Des enfants **nouveau-nés.**	*New-born children.*
Elle était **court-vêtue.**	*She was short-coated.*

Exception.—**Tout** in **tout-puissant** varies in the feminine for the sake of euphony :

Toute-puissante.
Toutes-puissantes. } *Almighty.*
But **Tout**-puissants.

[1] A comedy by Scribe.

§ **35.** Notice that—

(1) If the second adjective or participle is used substantively, both vary :

Les **nouveaux venus.** *The new comers.*

EXCEPTION.—**Nouveau** generally remains invariable in **nouveau-né,** even when *né* is used substantively :

Des **nouveau-nés.** *New-born children.*

(2) If the first component is an adverb or a preposition, the second only varies :

Des enfants bien-**aimés.**	*Beloved children.*
L'avant-**dernière** nuit.	*The last night but one.*

(3) **Brèche-dent, feuille-morte,** and **trotte-menu** are invariable, whilst **chèvre-pied,** which has no feminine, takes an *s* at the end of *pied* in the plural :

Ces enfants sont **brèche-dent.**	*These children are gap-toothed.*
Des robes **feuille-morte.**	*Filemot dresses.*
La gent **trotte-menu.**	*The small trotting race.*
Les dieux **chèvre-pieds.**	*The goat-footed gods.*

B.—*PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE.*

§ **36.** GENERAL RULE.—According to the principle that the qualifying word is placed in French after the word it qualifies, adjectives generally follow the nouns in ordinary style :

Une joie **imparfaite.**
Une règle **infaillible.**
Des amis **généreux.**
Des pensées **tristes.**
Un empereur **cruel.**
Le tableau **noir.**
Un homme **aveugle.**

GENERAL EXCEPTIONS. — Most adjectives may be placed before the nouns in poetic or elevated style, for the sake of euphony, emphasis, or rhetorical effect, or when taken in a figurative sense :

Une **imparfaite** joie.
Une **infaillible** règle.
De **généreux** amis.
De **tristes** pensées.
Un **cruel** empereur.
Le **noir** projet.
Une **aveugle** passion.

§ **37.** SPECIAL RULES.—Place after their nouns—

(1) Adjectives followed by a complement :

Un sort **digne** d'envie.	*An enviable fate.*
Un discours **long** jusqu'à demain.	*An endless speech.*

SPECIAL EXCEPTIONS.—Place before their nouns—

(1) Determinative adjectives (see, however, Rule 5) :

Un **autre** jour.	*Another day.*
Mainte fois.	*Many a time.*
Les **mêmes** motifs.	*The same motives.*
Tous les hommes.	*All men.*

(2) Adjectives derived from proper names:

La langue **française.**	*The French language.*
La population **parisienne.**	*The Parisian population.*
La méthode **socratique.**	*The Socratic method.*

(3) Adjectives used as technical terms:

L'acide **sulfureux.**	*Sulphurous acid.*
Le code **pénal.**	*The penal code.*

(4) Nouns used adjectively, and adjectives which may be used substantively:

La foudre **vengeresse.**	*The avenging thunderbolt.*
La vieillesse **ennemie.**	*Hostile old age.*
Une humeur **solitaire.**	*A solitary turn of mind.*

(5) Cardinal numbers used instead of the ordinal, ordinal numbers without the article in quotations, **même** meaning *self, very*, **quelconque**, and sometimes **tel** followed by **que** (see § 98):

Louis **onze.**	*Louis XI.*
Livre **troisième.**	*Book the third.*
La vertu **même.**	*Virtue itself.*
Un livre **quelconque.**	*Any book whatever.*
Un livre **tel** que je le voulais.	*Such a book as I wished.*

(6) Adjectives used in surnames:

Pline le **jeune.**	*Pliny the younger.*
Alexandre le **grand.**	*Alexander the Great.*

(2) Generally **beau, bon, cher** (denoting affection), **court, digne, grand, gros, haut, jeune, joli, long, mauvais, meilleur, moindre, petit, sot, vieux, vilain**, unless qualified by a long adverb [see § 38 (7)] or followed by a complement:[1]

Un **digne** homme.	*A worthy man.*
Un **joli** village.	*A pretty village.*
Un **beau** temps.	*Fine weather.*
Un si **beau** temps, *or*, Un temps si **beau.**	*Such fine weather.*
But Un temps extrêmement **beau.**	*Extremely fine weather.*

Obs. Many other adjectives of one or two syllables often precede the nouns for the sake of euphony:

La **Sainte** Alliance.	*The Holy Alliance.*
Une **vive** impression.	*A lively impression.*

(3) Adjectives qualifying a proper name (see, however, Rule 6):

Le **fameux** Law.	*The famous Law.*
Le **grand** Corneille.	*The great Corneille.*
L'**aimable** Virginie.	*The amiable Virginia.*

[1] These adjectives are also placed after their nouns when used with the definite article instead of the indefinite or a possessive adjective:

Il a le nez **petit**,—les yeux **grands.**

§ **38.**—(7) Adjectives modified by an adverb:

Un discours infiniment **long.**	*An extremely long speech.*

EXCEPTION.—If the adverb is short, adjectives generally placed before the nouns may still precede them:

Un fort **long** discours.	*A very long speech.*

(8) Adjectives expressing physical qualities, colour, shape, taste, etc.:

Des nuages **blancs.**	*White clouds.*
Une robe **bleue.**	*A blue dress.*
Un visage **ovale.**	*An oval face.*
Une sauce **piquante.**	*A hot sauce.*

EXCEPTIONS.—They are placed before when used figuratively, or for the sake of elegance (see also § 37, Exc. 2):

De **blancs** nuages.	*White clouds.*
Une **verte** vieillesse.	*A green old age.*
Une **tendre** affection.	*A tender affection.*
Une **piquante** épigramme.	*A piquant epigram.*

(9) Participles used adjectively:

Les vagues **écumantes.**	*The foaming waves.*
Des étoiles **filantes.**	*Shooting stars.*
Une épée **flamboyante.**	*A flaming sword.*
Des paroles **offensantes.**	*Offensive words.*
Une voix **perçante.**	*A shrill voice.*
Une réponse **glacée.**	*A chilling answer.*
Une porte **ouverte.**	*An open door.*
Un pays **perdu.**	*An out-of-the-way place.*
Le style **soutenu.**	*Elevated style.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) Many present participles used adjectively may be placed before for the sake of vividness and effect:

Une **charmante** journée.	*A charming day.*
D'**enivrantes** louanges.	*Intoxicating praise.*
Un **sanglant** affront.	*A deadly affront.*

(2) **Maudit** and **prétendu** generally, and a few other past participles only in certain expressions, precede the noun:

Quel **maudit** temps!	*What dreadful weather!*
Ce **prétendu** noble.	*That would-be nobleman.*
En bonne et **due** forme.	*In good and due form.*
Du **mort** bois.	*Wood that cannot be worked.*
But Du bois **mort.**	*Dead wood.*
La **morte** saison.	*The dull season.*
Le **sacré** collége.	*The sacred college.*

§ **39.**—(10) Generally long adjectives, especially those ending in **able, ible, aire, al, el, eur, eux, ique:**

Un crime **abominable.**	*An abominable crime.*
Une histoire **impossible.**	*An impossible story.*
Une souffrance **imaginaire.**	*An imaginary pain.*
Le règne **végétal.**	*The vegetable kingdom.*
Une gloire **immortelle.**	*An immortal glory.*
Les boulevards **extérieurs.**	*The outside boulevards.*
Un livre **ennuyeux.**	*A tiresome book.*
Une œuvre **philanthropique.**	*A philanthropic work.*

Exception.—This rule is not very strictly observed, such adjectives especially as qualify moral or intellectual qualities being often placed before their noun in elevated style:

Une **inébranlable** volonté.	*An immoveable will.*
Une **irrésistible** ardeur.	*An irresistible ardour.*
Un **éternel** honneur.	*An eternal honour.*
De **généreux** efforts.	*Generous efforts.*
D'**impétueux** désirs.	*Impetuous desires.*
De **pacifiques** dispositions.	*Pacific dispositions.*

(11) Generally adjectives qualifying two or more nouns:

Une volonté et une énergie **irrésistibles.**	*An irresistible will and energy.*
Un regard et des manières **étranges.**	*A strange look and strange manners.*
Un printemps et un été **charmants.**	*A charming spring and summer.*

Note.—Should the adjective be placed before the first noun, it must be repeated before each:

De **beaux** fruits et de **belles** fleurs.	*Beautiful fruits and flowers.*
Un **charmant** printemps et un **charmant** été.	*A charming spring and summer.*

§ **40.** When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they follow the general rule, subject to the above-mentioned exceptions:

Un esprit **fin et railleur.**	*A sharp and satirical wit.*
Des vers **nobles et harmonieux.**	*Noble and harmonious verses.*
but Une **belle** robe **bleue.**	*A beautiful blue dress.*
De **grands et nobles** sentiments.	*Great and noble feelings.*
Une **jolie petite** fille.	*A pretty little girl.*

Exception.—For the sake of emphasis, the article (or another determinative word) may be repeated before each adjective, in which case the adjectives precede the noun:

L'étonnante, l'extraordinaire nouvelle.	*The astonishing, extraordinary news.*
But La nouvelle étonnante, extraordinaire.	

§ **41.** When two adjectives accompany the same noun and cannot precede it, if one of them qualifies, not the noun only, but the noun and the other adjective taken together, it is placed last, the English order being inverted :

La philosophie **anglaise contemporaine.**	*Contemporary English philosophy.*

§ **42.** Adjectives, in their relations to other parts of speech than nouns, are generally placed in French as in English :

La nuit parut fort **longue** à tout le monde.	*The night seemed very long to everybody.*
Froid avec ses égaux, **hautain** avec ses inférieurs, il était **servile** auprès des grands.	*Cold with his equals, haughty with his inferiors, he was servile with the great.*
Telle est l'histoire qu'il nous raconta.	*Such is the story he related to us.*

Exceptions.—(1) Adjectives precede the verb in English, but generally follow it in French—

[*a*] In exclamatory sentences, after *combien*, *comme*, *que*, *tant* :

Combien il m'est **doux** de vous revoir !	*How* **pleasant** *it is to see you again !*
Comme (*or* que) vous êtes **bon** !	*How* **kind** *you are !*
Tant il est **vrai** que nous sommes tous faillibles !	*So* **true** *it is that we are all liable to err !*

[*b*] In correlative comparisons :

Plus l'entreprise est **difficile**, plus la gloire sera **grande.**	*The more* **difficult** *the enterprise is, the* **greater** *the glory will be.*

(2) Adjectives precede *enough* in English, but follow *assez* in French :

Est-il **assez raisonnable** pour le faire ?	*Is he* **sensible enough** *to do it ?*

(3) Notice the difference of construction in the following sentences :

Nous fûmes si **étonnés** que . . .	*So* **surprised** *were we that . . .*
Tout **habile** qu'il est, il ne le fera pas.	**Clever** *as he is, he will not do it.*
Quelque (*or* si) **habile** qu'il soit . . .	**Clever** *though he be . . .*

§ **43.** There are a few adjectives, the meaning of which changes according as they precede or follow the noun :

BEFORE THE NOUN.		AFTER THE NOUN.	
Un brave homme.	*An honest man.*	Un homme brave.	*A brave man.*
La dernière année.	*The last year (of a period).*	L'année dernière.	*Last year.*
Une fausse clef.	*A skeleton key.*	Une clef fausse.	*A wrong key.*
Une forte femme.	*A stout woman.*	Une femme forte.	*A strong woman.*
Un grand homme.	*A great man.*	Un homme grand.	*A tall man.*
Un pauvre écrivain.	*A second-rate writer.*	Un écrivain pauvre.	*A needy writer.*
Un petit homme.	*A short man.*	Un homme petit.	*A mean man.*
Un triste livre.	*A poor book.*	Un livre triste.	*A sad book.*

(For a list, see Appendix.)

C.—*COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.*

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **44.** The complement of an adjective is always connected with it by means of prepositions, the most important of which are **à, de, en,** and **envers.**

§ **45.** The same adjective may be followed by different prepositions, according to the sense :

Je suis fâché { **de** ce retard. / **contre** vous.	*I am* **sorry for** *that delay.* / *I am* **angry with** *you.*
Il est fort assidu { **à** ses devoirs. / **auprès de** lui.	*He is* **very devoted to** *his duties.* / *He is* **in constant attendance upon** *him.*
N'est-il pas coupable **de** bien des fautes **envers** vous ?	*Is he not guilty* **of** *many wrongs* **towards** *you ?*
Il était redevable **de** cette faveur **au** crédit de son ami.	*He was indebted* **for** *that favour* **to** *his friend's credit.*

Obs. After some adjectives, the same idea may be expressed by two or even more prepositions. It is especially the case with—

(1) Adjectives denoting disposition towards persons, several of which may be followed by **à, à l'égard de, avec, envers,** or **pour :**

Il est affable **à (à l'égard de, avec, envers, pour)** tout le monde.	*He is affable to all.*

(2) Adjectives requiring **en**, which must generally be followed by **dans** when the noun is preceded by a determinative word :

Un esprit fertile **en** ressources.	*A mind fertile in resources.*
Son génie était fertile **dans** ces traits sublimes qui n'appartiennent qu'à lui.	*His genius was fertile in those sublime bursts which are peculiarly his own.*

(See also § 47, Exc.)

§ **46.** If two adjectives require the same preposition, they may have the same complement :

Je suis heureux et fier **de** ce succès.	*I am happy and proud of this success.*

But if they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter :

Il était accessible **aux** plus pauvres et adoré **d'eux.**	*He was accessible to, and adored by, the poorest.*

II.—Adjectives requiring *a.*

§ **47.** The preposition **à** is used after most adjectives expressing—

(1) *Aptness, fitness* :

Cela n'est bon **à** rien.	*That is good for nothing.*
Qui est propre **à** tout n'est propre **à** rien.	*A Jack of all trades is master of none.*

(2) *Inclination, tendency, readiness, habit* :

Enclin **à** la paresse.	*Inclined to idleness.*
Prêt **à** l'action.	*Ready for action.*
Adonné **au** jeu.	*Addicted to gambling.*

(3) *Convenience, ease, utility, necessity* :

Ce qui est amer **à** la bouche est doux **au** cœur.	*What is bitter to the taste is pleasant to the heart.*
C'est facile **à** dire et non **à** faire.	*It is more easily said than done.*
Il est utile et même nécessaire **à** son parti.	*He is useful and even necessary to his party.*

(4) *Likeness, comparison, precedence* :

Ce passage est pareil **à** l'autre.	*This passage is like the other.*
Il n'est inférieur **à** personne.	*He is inferior to none.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The preposition **à** must be replaced—

(1) By **de**, after an adjective used impersonally :

Il est plus facile **de** le dire que de le faire.	*It is easier to say it than to do it.*
Il n'est pas possible **d'**en douter.	*It is not possible to doubt it.*

(2) By **pour**, after a few participles expressing *fitness* :

Il était peu fait **pour** une mission si délicate.	*He was little fit for so delicate a mission.*

Obs. Notice also :

On le déclara bon **pour** le service.	*He was declared fit for military service.*
Tout était prêt **pour** l'attaque.	*Everything was ready for the attack.*

III.—Adjectives requiring *de*.

§ **48.** The preposition **de** is used after most adjectives expressing—

(1) *Plenty, scarcity, want* (see, however, § 49) :

Des paroles pleines **d'**orgueil et vides **de** sens.	*Words full of pride and devoid of sense.*
Etre libre **de** soucis.	*To be free from cares.*

(2) *Separation, absence, distance, origin* :

Séparé **du** monde.	*Separated from the world.*
Absent **du** pays.	*Absent from the country.*
Eloigné **de** tout.	*Far from everything.*
Natif **de** Paris.	*Native of Paris.*

(3) *Desire, pleasure, displeasure, surprise*, etc. :

Avide **de** gloire.	*Eager for glory.*
Heureux **de** son sort.	*Happy in one's fate.*
Las **du** pouvoir.	*Weary of power.*
Etonné **de** tout.	*Astonished at everything.*

IV.—Adjectives requiring *en*.

§ **49.** The preposition **en** is used after a few adjectives expressing, for the most part, *abundance* or *skill* :

Fertile **en** expédients.	*Fertile in expedients.*
Fort **en** histoire.	*Clever in history.*
Riche **en** espérances.	*Rich in hopes.*
Savant **en** mathématiques.	*Learned in mathematics.*

V.—Adjectives requiring *envers*.

§ **50.** The preposition **envers** is generally used after adjectives expressing disposition or feeling towards some one (see, however, § 45, *Obs.*) :

Affable Bon Charitable Généreux Libéral	**envers** les pauvres.	*Affable* *Good* *Charitable* *Generous* *Liberal*	*to the poor.*

For lists of Adjectives requiring **à, de, en, envers,** see Appendix.

D.—*COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.*

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **51.** When several adjectives in the comparative or superlative qualify the same noun, the adverb of comparison must be repeated before each :

Il est aussi simple et **aussi** affable qu'autrefois.	*He is as simple and affable as he was formerly.*
La question la plus difficile et **la plus** embarrassante.	*The most difficult and embarrassing question.*
Un discours fort éloquent et **fort** habile.	*A very eloquent and clever speech.*

§ **52.** In the second term of a comparison, the pronoun **le** is generally placed before the finite verb depending on **que** (=*as, so, than*) :

Avez-vous trouvé la Suisse aussi belle que vous **le** pensiez ?	*Did you find Switzerland as beautiful as you thought ?*

II.—Comparative of Equality.

§ **53.** The comparative of equality of adjectives and adverbs is formed with **aussi** followed by **que** :

Il est **aussi** grand **que** moi.	*He is as tall as I.*

EXCEPTION.—**Si** is used instead of **aussi** in the expressions—

Si peu que vous voudrez.	*As little as you like.*
Si peu que rien.	*Very little.*

Obs. 1. **Aussi** is also used negatively to form a comparative of inequality, but in that case it may be replaced by **si** :

Il n'est pas **aussi** (*or* **si**) grand que moi.	*He is not so tall as I.*

Obs. 2. **Autant** and **tant** are used instead of **aussi** and **si** with nouns and verbs :

Je le méprise **autant** que je le hais.	*I despise him as much as I hate him.*
Il n'a pas **autant** (*or* **tant**) de persévérance que son frère.	*He has not so much perseverance as his brother.*

Obs. 3. **Si** with adjectives and adverbs, **tant** with nouns and verbs, are used instead of **aussi** and **autant** to express intensity :

C'est **si** étrange que j'en doute.	*It is so strange that I doubt it.*
Il fit **tant** qu'il réussit.	*He managed so well that he succeeded.*

III.—Comparatives of Superiority and Inferiority.

§ **54.** After a comparative of superiority or inferiority, *than* is translated by **que . . . ne** before a verb in the indicative or conditional, when the principal sentence is affirmative :

Il fait plus beau **que** vous **ne** le pensez.	*It is finer than you think.*

EXCEPTION.—**Ne** is naturally omitted when a conjunction comes between **que** and the verb :

Il fait plus beau que lorsque vous étiez ici.	*It is finer than when you were here.*

Obs. **Ne** is sometimes used even when the principal sentence is interrogative or negative (see § 360).

§ **55.** When the verb is in the infinitive, *than* is generally translated by **que de** :

Il aima mieux mourir **que de** le faire.	*He preferred to die rather than do it.*

EXCEPTION.—If the first infinitive is preceded by another preposition than **de**, that preposition must be used instead of **de** before the second :

Ils étaient plus disposés **à** dormir qu'**à** se battre.	*They were more inclined to sleep than to fight.*

§ **56.** In correlative comparisons, no article is used, and the adjective is separated from the adverb of comparison by the subject and the verb :

Plus les jours sont **longs, plus** les nuits sont **courtes.**	*The longer the days are, the shorter the nights.*

Obs. The same construction holds good when the adverb modifies a verb or a noun :

Plus j'y pense, **moins** je le comprends.	*The more I think of it, the less I understand it.*
Plus on est riche, **plus** on a de **soucis.**	*The richer one is, the more cares one has.*

§ **57.** Before a numeral *than* is generally translated by **de** :

Nous étions plus **de** quarante.	*We were more than forty.*
Il écrit plus **de** dix pages par jour.	*He writes more than ten pages a day.*

EXCEPTION.—When the numeral is used as subject of a verb understood, **de** must be replaced by **que** :

Il écrit plus **que** trois secrétaires.	*He writes more than three secretaries.*

IV.—The Superlative.

§ **58.** No article is used for the superlative relative, when the noun is preceded by a possessive adjective and follows the superlative, but if the superlative follows the noun, the article must be used :

Mon plus cher ami.	*My dearest friend.*
But Mon ami **le** plus cher.	

§ **59.** When the superlative is absolute, *i.e.* expresses the highest degree of quality of an object compared, not with other objects, but with itself, the article remains invariable, although the adjective agrees with the noun :

Elle était **le** plus heureuse quand elle était seule.	*She was happiest when she was alone.*
But Elle était **la** plus heureuse de nous toutes.	*She was the happiest of us all.*

Obs. It follows that sometimes the article may agree or remain invariable in the same sentence according to the meaning :

Elle était **le** plus élégamment parée.	*She was* **most** *elegantly attired.*
Elle était **la** plus élégamment parée.	*She was* **the most** *elegantly attired* **of all.**

§ **60.** After a comparative or superlative, *by* is rendered by **de** :

Son frère est plus grand que lui **de** deux pouces.	*His brother is taller than he* **by** *two inches.*
C'est **de** beaucoup son meilleur ouvrage.	*It is* **by** *far his best work.*

§ **61.** After a superlative relative, *in* is rendered by **de** :

Le plus beau château **des** environs.	*The finest castle* **in** *the neighbourhood.*

E.—*ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.*

§ **62.** Adjectives of dimension (**épais, haut, large, long, profond**) precede in French the expression of quantity, and are connected with it by the preposition **de** :

Un mur **épais de** trois pieds.	*A wall three feet thick.*
Un puits **profond de** dix mètres.	*A well ten metres deep.*

Obs. 1. They are often replaced by the corresponding nouns, in which case both the noun and the expression of quantity are preceded by **de** :

Un mur **de** trois pieds **d'**épaisseur *or* **d'**une épaisseur **de** trois pieds.	*A wall three feet thick.*
Un puits **de** dix mètres **de** profondeur *or* **d'**une profondeur **de** dix mètres.	*A well ten metres deep.*

Obs. 2. **Haut, large** and **long** may be used substantively instead of **hauteur, largeur** and **longueur** :

Une chambre de vingt pieds de **long** (*or* de longueur).	*A room twenty feet long.*

§ **63**. The verb *to be*, used with an adjective of dimension, may be rendered either by **être** with an *adjective* or by **avoir** with the corresponding *noun* :

Cette fenêtre { **est large d'**un mètre. / **a** un mètre **de largeur.** / **a** un mètre **de large.** / **a une largeur d'**un mètre. } *This window is one metre wide.*

Obs. 1. It stands to reason that after the verb **avoir**, which governs a direct object, the preposition **de** cannot be used before the expression of quantity.

Obs. 2. Notice that, in mentioning age, the word **an** is never understood, like *year* in English :

Il est âgé de vingt **ans.** / Il a vingt **ans.** } *He is twenty.*

The construction with **avoir** is generally preferred.

§ **64**. In comparing the dimensions of an object *by* is rendered by **sur** :

Une chambre de vingt pieds de long (*or* de longueur) **sur** quinze de large (*or* de largeur).	*A room twenty feet long* **by** *fifteen wide.*

F.—*NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.*

§ **65.** Cardinal adjectives are invariable, even when used substantively :

Les **trente** tyrans. Les **trente.**	*The thirty tyrants.*
Trois **sept** et deux **huit.**	*Three sevens and two eights.*

Exceptions.—(1) **Un** has a distinct form for the feminine = **une.**

(2) **Vingt** and **cent** take an **s** when multiplied by a number and not followed by another :

Quatre-**vingts** hommes.	*Eighty men.*
Cinq **cents** pages.	*Five hundred pages.*

Obs. 1. If, however, **vingt** and **cent** are used instead of **vingtième, centième,** they remain invariable :

Page cinq **cent.**	*Page five hundred.*

Obs. 2. **Cent,** used instead of **centaine,** is a noun and takes the mark of the plural :

Trois **cents** de pommes.	*Three hundred apples.*

§ **66.** **Mille,** which is always invariable according to the general rule, is written **mil** in dates of the Christian era :

L'an **mil** huit cent quatre-vingt-six.	*The year eighteen hundred and eighty-six.*

Exceptions.—**Mille,** when standing by itself or preceded by another number, preserves its ordinary form :

L'an **mille.**	*The year one thousand.*
L'an deux **mille** trois.	*The year two thousand and three.*

§ **67.** Ordinal adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate :

Les deux **premières** parties.	*The first two parts.*

Obs. 1. Notice that the cardinal number *precedes* the ordinal in French.

Obs. 2. **Premier** and **second** are only used by themselves. In compound numbers they are replaced by **unième** and **deuxième** :

Le trente et **unième,** le quarante-**deuxième.**	*The thirty-first, the forty-second.*

§ **68.** Cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal—

(1) For sovereigns :

Henri **quatre.** *Henry the Fourth.*

(2) For days of the month :

Le **onze** mai. *The eleventh of May.*

(3) Often in quotations of books, chapters, pages, etc. :

Chapitre **trois.** *Chapter the third.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) **Premier** is never replaced by **un** :

Henri **premier.** *Henry the First.*
Le **premier** mai. *The first of May.*
Chapitre **premier.** *Chapter the first.*

(2) The old ordinal form **quint** is used in speaking of Charles v. of Germany and Pope Sixtus v. :

Charles-**Quint**, Sixte-**Quint.**

G.—*POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.*

§ **69.** Possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the *object possessed*, not with the possessor as in English :

Son père. *His* or *her father.*
Sa mère. *His* or *her mother.*

EXCEPTION.—For the sake of euphony, the masculine forms **mon, ton, son,** are used instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute :

Mon intention. *My intention.*
Son habitude. *His habit.*

Obs. 1. To avoid ambiguity, a personal pronoun with the preposition **à** may be used after the noun :

C'est de son père **à lui,** et non de son père **à elle,** que je parle. *It is of his father, not of hers, that I am speaking.*

Obs. 2. The rules for the repetition of possessive and other determinative adjectives are the same as for the repetition of the article.

§ **70. Notre, votre, leur,** and the following noun are generally used in the singular, contrary to English custom, when each possessor can only possess one of the objects mentioned :

Ils sacrifièrent gaîment **leur vie.** *They cheerfully sacrificed their lives.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The plural is used—

(1) With names of persons :

Leurs pères étaient morts. *Their fathers were dead.*

(2) Generally when there is comparison or reciprocity :

Nos caractères ne se ressemblent pas. *Our characters do not resemble each other.*

Leurs cœurs étaient faits pour se comprendre. *Their hearts were made to understand each other.*

§ **71.** The possessive adjectives **son, sa, ses, leur, leurs,** are replaced by the pronoun **en** and the definite article, when the possessor is an inanimate object (not personified) mentioned in a preceding sentence :

Je connais votre pays, j'en admire les institutions.	*I know your country, I admire its institutions.*

(For the use of the definite article alone, or accompanied by the personal pronouns **me, te, se, lui, nous, vous, leur,** instead of a possessive adjective, see § 12.)

EXCEPTIONS.—The possessive adjectives are used—

(1) When the thing possessed is governed by a preposition :

Paris est fameux pour **ses** monuments.	*Paris is famous for its monuments.*

(2) When it is the subject of any verb *but* **être, devenir, paraître, sembler** :

J'aime ces vers, **leur** harmonie m'enchante.	*I like these verses, their harmony delights me.*

(3) Even when it is the subject of **être,** etc., sometimes for the sake of emphasis, especially if it is qualified by some other word :

La guerre est déclarée, **ses** funestes effets sont faciles à prévoir.	*War is declared, its fatal consequences can be easily foreseen.*

§ **72.** In speaking to some one of his relations, the words **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles,** are used out of politeness before **votre, vos** :

Comment se porte **madame** votre mère?	*How is your mother?*

H.—*INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.*

§ **73. Aucun,** which is both an adjective and a pronoun, is used—without *ne*—in the sense of *any, any one*—

(1) In interrogative sentences :

Ont-ils **aucune** preuve solide?	*Have they any solid proof?*

(2) In dubitative sentences :

Je doute qu'ils aient **aucune** preuve.	*I doubt whether they have any proof.*

(3) After **sans** :

On le condamna sans **aucune** preuve.	*He was condemned without any proof.*

§ **74.** **Aucun** is also used in the sense of *no, not any, none, no one,* in which case it requires **ne,** without *pas* or *point* :

Ils **n'**ont **aucune** preuve solide.	*They have no solid proof.*
Aucun n'est prophète chez soi.	*No one is a prophet in his own country.*

EXCEPTION.—**Aucun** may have a negative meaning without the negative **ne,** when the verb is understood :

Avez-vous lu quelqu'un de ses ouvrages?—**Aucun.**	*Have you read any of his works?—None.*

§ **75.** **Aucun** is generally used in the singular, but the plural is of course necessary—

(1) When the sense does not admit of the singular :

C'est une petite ville qui n'est divisée en **aucuns partis.**	*It is a small town which is not divided into any parties.*

(2) When the noun has no singular :

Aucuns matériaux.	*No materials.*

(3) When the noun has not the same meaning in the singular as in the plural :

Il ne reçoit **aucuns gages.**	*He gets no wages.*[1]

Obs. **Aucuns, d'aucuns,** are sometimes used substantively in familiar style :

D'aucuns le disent.	*Some say so.*

§ **76.** **Autre,** which is, like **aucun,** both an adjective and a pronoun, generally means *other, different,* and when used adjectively and repeated to mark contrast, often stands without **de** in the plural :

Revenez une **autre** fois.	*Come back another time.*
Autres temps, **autres** mœurs.	*Other times, other manners.*

Obs. 1. **Autre,** accompanied by a numeral, must be placed after it :

Les dix **autres** officiers.	*The other ten officers.*

Obs. 2. **Autres** is often used for the sake of emphasis after **nous, vous** :

Nous **autres,** nous resterons ici.	*As for us, we will remain here.*
Vous **autres,** Anglais . . .	*You Englishmen . . .*

Obs. 3. *Others* must be rendered by **d'autres** without the article, even after **bien** :

D'autres ont déjà essayé.	*Others have already tried.*
Bien **d'autres.**	*Many others.*

[1] **Gage** in the singular means *pledge.*

§ **77.** **Autre** means also—

(1) *Better* (different, hence superior) :

Le commencement n'est pas mauvais, mais la fin est bien **autre.**	*The beginning is not bad, but the end is far better.*

(2) *Second* :

Bruxelles est un **autre** Paris.	*Brussels is a second Paris.*

§ **78.** Joined with **un, autre** forms several locutions : **l'un l'autre, les uns les autres** (= *one another, each other*), **l'un et l'autre** (= *both*), **l'un ou l'autre** (= *either*), **ni l'un ni l'autre** (= *neither*).

§ **79.** **L'un l'autre, les uns les autres,** are used to translate *one another*—

(1) Together with **se,** to avoid ambiguity, when the verb governs the accusative or dative :

Ils se flattent.	*They flatter themselves.* Or *They flatter one another.*
But Ils **se** flattent **les uns les autres.**	*They flatter one another.*

(2) Without **se,** when the verb cannot have a complement in the accusative or dative :

Ils marchèrent **l'un contre l'autre.**	*They marched against one another.*
Ils diffèrent beaucoup **l'un de l'autre.**	*They differ much from one another.*

Obs. 1. The preposition is always placed between **l'un** and **l'autre.**

Obs. 2. The plural, **les uns les autres,** is generally used in speaking of more than two, unless the objects mentioned are considered as acting one by one.

§ **80.** **L'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre,** are used both adjectively and substantively, and, in the former case, require the following noun in the singular :

L'un et l'autre ; l'un et l'autre **parti.**	*Both; both parties.*
Ni l'un ni l'autre **parti.**	*Neither party.*

Obs. 1. **L'un** and **l'autre,** when standing instead of a qualificative adjective, a verb, or a whole clause, always remain in the masculine singular :

Vous êtes jeunes et robustes ; elle n'est ni **l'un** ni l'autre.	*You are young and robust; she is neither.*

Obs. 2. Any preposition placed before **l'un** must be repeated before **l'autre** in the above locutions :

Ni dans l'un ni **dans** l'autre parti.	*In neither party.*

EXCEPTION.—The preposition is sometimes omitted before **l'autre**, in the locutions **l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre,** when the two objects are considered as a whole :

La même ardeur régnait dans l'une et l'autre armée.	*The same ardour prevailed in both armies.*

§ **81.** Notice the following idioms :

C'est une **autre** paire de manches.	*It is quite another thing.*
Parler de choses et d'**autres.**	*To talk of various things.*
De côté et d'**autre**; de part et d'**autre.**	*Here and there; on both sides.*
D'une ou d'**autre** manière.	*Some way or another.*
Il n'en fait jamais d'**autres.**	*That's just like him.*
Il en a vu bien d'**autres.**	*He has seen stranger things than that.*
Entre **autres.**	*Among other things.*
A d'**autres !**	*Nonsense !*
Ecoutez ce que vous dit cet **autre.**	*A fine story that !*
Comme dit l'**autre.**	*As the saying is.*
Qui voit l'un voit l'**autre.**	*There is no difference between them.*
L'un vaut l'**autre.**	*One is no better than the other.*
L'un dans l'**autre.** / L'un portant l'**autre.**	*On an average.*

§ **82.** **Certain** (=*certain, some*), may or may not be preceded in the singular by **un**, and in the plural by **de** :

Certain (*or* **un certain**) homme.	*A certain man.*
Certaines (*or* **de certaines**) nouvelles.	*Certain news.*

Obs. 1. **Certains** may be used substantively in the sense of **quelques-uns** :

Certains l'affirment.	*Some affirm it.*

Obs. 2. When **certain** follows the noun, it is a qualificative adjective and means *reliable, positive* :

Des nouvelles **certaines.**	**Reliable** *news.*

§ **83.** **Chaque** (=*each*), is never used, like **chacun**, without a noun after it :

Chaque âge a ses plaisirs.	*Every age has its pleasures.*
But Ces tableaux valent mille francs **chacun.**	*These pictures are worth a thousand francs each.*

§ **84. Maint** (=*many a*), may be used either in the singular or in the plural, and is often repeated :

Mainte fois. **Maintes** fois. **Maintes et maintes** fois.	*Many a time.*

§ **85. Même** is an adjective and agrees—

(1) When it means *same, alike* :

Les **mêmes** mérites et les **mêmes** défauts.	*The same merits and defects.*

(2) When it modifies a personal pronoun placed before it :

Ils le reconnaissent eux-**mêmes.**	*They recognise it themselves.*

Exception.—**Même** remains invariable after the pronouns **nous, vous,** referring to one person :

Vous le faites souvent vous-**même.**	*You do it often yourself.*

(3) When it modifies *one* noun placed before it :

Les Romains ne vainquirent les Grecs que par les Grecs **mêmes.**	*The Romans only conquered the Greeks with the help of the Greeks themselves.*

Exceptions.—(1) **Même** *may* remain invariable after the noun, when it might equally well be placed before it :

Ses flatteurs **même** le méprisent.	*His very flatterers despise him.*

(2) **Même** *must* remain invariable—

[*a*] When the noun which precedes it is not determined by an article or a demonstrative or possessive adjective :

Certaines gens **même** . . .	*Certain people even . . .*

[*b*] After an adjective used substantively :

Les plus braves **même** tremblaient.	*The bravest themselves trembled.*

Obs. **Même** after **ceux, celles,** *may* remain invariable, when it might precede those pronouns instead of following them :

Ceux **même** (*or* **mêmes**) qui le craignaient.	*Even those who feared him.*

But if the order cannot be inverted **même** *must* agree :

Donnez-moi ceux **mêmes** dont vous m'avez parlé.	*Give me the very ones of which you spoke to me.*

§ **86.** **Même** is an adverb (meaning *even, also*), and consequently does not agree—

(1) When it modifies an adjective or a verb :

Les hommes les plus cruels **même.** Les hommes **même** les plus cruels.	*Even the most cruel men.*
Ils se sont écrit, ils se sont **même** vus.	*They have written to each other, they have even seen each other.*

(2) When it precedes a determinative word :

Les femmes et **même** les enfants.	*Women and even children.*

(3) When it follows an indefinite pronoun :

Quelques-uns **même** sont morts.	*Some even have died.*

(4) Generally when it follows several nouns :

Les femmes, les enfants **même** furent massacrés.	*The women and even the children were slaughtered.*

EXCEPTION.—**Même** is used in the plural after several nouns, when it refers equally to all, which is chiefly the case when they are synonymous, or nearly so :

Ses prières, ses supplications **mêmes.**	*His prayers, his entreaties themselves.*

§ **87.** Notice—

(1) The difference in the meaning of **même** according to its place before or after the noun :

Le **même** honneur.	*The* **same** *honour.*
L'honneur **même.**	*Honour* **itself.**

(2) The following idioms :

Il l'a fait **de lui-même.**	*He has done it of his own accord.*
Cela **revient au même.**	*That comes to the same thing.*
J'irai **quand même.**	*I will go in spite of it all.*
Il n'était pas **à même de** le faire.	*He was not in a position to do it.*
Je vous mettrai **à même d'**y aller.	*I will enable you to go.*
Agissez **de même.**	*Act likewise.*
Ils partirent **tout de même.**	*They started nevertheless.*

§ **88.** **Nul**, like **aucun**, is both an adjective and a pronoun, meaning *no, not any, none, no one*, and requires **ne** without **pas** or **point** :

Nul obstacle **n'**arrêta sa marche.	*No obstacle stopped his progress.*
Nul que moi **ne** le sait.	*No one but myself knows it.*

EXCEPTION.—*Nul* is used, like *aucun*, without the negative *ne*, when the verb is understood :

Le connaissez-vous? —En nulle façon.	*Do you know him?*—*By no means.*

Obs. 1. **Nul** is also used without **ne** in the sense of *any* after the preposition **sans** :

Nous arrivâmes sans **nul** accident.	*We arrived without* **any** *accident.*

Obs. 2. When **nul** is a qualificative adjective (meaning *null, void*), it is used without **ne** and follows the noun :

Le contrat était **nul.**	*The contract was null and void.*
Un contrat **nul.**	*A contract null and void.*

§ **89. Plusieurs** (=*several*) has no distinct feminine form, and may be used substantively :

Plusieurs hommes et **plusieurs** femmes.	*Several men and women.*
Plusieurs me l'ont dit.	*Several people have told me so.*

§ **90. Quelconque** (=*whatever, any . . . whatever*) is only used adjectively, **quiconque** being the corresponding pronoun, and always follows its noun :

Des livres **quelconques.**	*Any books whatever.*
Une raison **quelconque.**	*Some reason or other.*

§ **91. Quelque** is an adjective, and always agrees with its noun, when it means *some, any, a few* :

Quelques hommes.	*Some men.*
J'ai **quelques** questions à vous faire.	*I have a few questions to ask you.*

Obs. 1. Notice that **a little** is rendered by **un peu, little** or **few** by **peu** but **a few** by **quelques** :

Few soldiers.	**Peu** *de soldats.*
A few soldiers.	**Quelques** *soldats.*

Obs. 2. Notice also the following idioms :

Quelque peu.	*A little, somewhat.*
Quelque sot (*i.e.* quelque sot le ferait, mais non pas moi) !	*I am not such a fool.*
Ils sont vingt et **quelques.**	*They are over twenty.*

§ **92. Quelque** is an adverb, and consequently remains invariable, when it means *about* :

Il y a **quelque** trente ou quarante ans.	**About** *thirty or forty years ago.*

§ **93.** **Quelque . . . qui, quelque . . . que** (=*whatever*), always require the subjunctive mood :

Quelque faute **qui soit** commise. . . .
Quelque faute qu'on commette. . .
} *Whatever mistake may be made.*

§ **94.** **Quelque,** thus followed by **qui** or **que,** agrees with its noun, whether preceded or not by an adjective :

Quelques fautes, **quelques** grandes fautes qu'il ait commises. *Whatever mistakes, whatever great mistakes he may have made.*

Exception.—**Quelque,** thus followed by **que,** is invariable before an adjective preceding a noun, when it is construed with **être,** or a verb expressing manner of being, such as **devenir, paraître, sembler,** or when **être,** though not expressed, may be considered as understood :

Quelque habiles écrivains qu'ils soient, *or* qu'ils paraissent. *However clever writers they may be,* or *they may appear.*

Quelque habiles écrivains que vous les jugiez. *However clever writers you may judge them to be.*

§ **95.** It is invariable before an adjective not followed by a noun and before an adverb, in which cases it means *however* (see also § 94, Exc.) :

Quelque grandes que soient **ses fautes.** *However great his mistakes may be.*

Quelque habilement qu'ils écrivent. *However cleverly they write.*

Obs. Notice that the noun-subject *follows* the verb.

§ **96.** When *whatever* refers to the *subject* of such a verb as *to be, to become, to appear,* it is generally translated by **quel que, quel** agreeing with the subject, which, when a noun, is as a rule placed *after* the verb :

Quelles que soient ses fautes. *Whatever his mistakes may be.*

Obs. Notice that—

(1) The verb is always in the subjunctive mood.

(2) *Whatever,* used absolutely, is rendered, according to the sense, either by **quoi que** with the *subjunctive,* or by **tout ce qui, tout ce que,** with the *indicative* :

Quoi qu'il dise, je ne puis le croire. *Whatever he may say, I cannot believe it.*

Tout ce qu'il dit est faux. *Whatever he says is false.*

§ **97.** **Tel**, contrary to its English equivalent *such*, never precedes the article :

Un **tel** homme ; de **tels** hommes.	*Such a man ; such men.*

It is often repeated to mark similitude :

Tel maître, **tel** valet.	*Like master, like man.*
Telle vie, **telle** fin.	*People die as they live.*

§ **98.** Followed by **que, tel** may express—

(1) *Comparison*, in which case it *follows* the noun (unless it begins the sentence) :

Avec une armée **telle** que la sienne . . .	*With such an army as his. . . .*

Obs. **Tel que . . ., tel . . .**, are often used in elevated style in the sense of *as . . ., so . . .*

Tel que l'astre du jour écarte les ténèbres, **Telle** tu chasses d'un coup d'œil L'Envie . . .	**As** *the sun disperses darkness,* **So** *with a glance you drive away Envy . . .*

(2) *Intensity*, in which case it sometimes precedes, sometimes follows the noun :

Il s'était fait une **telle** réputation (*or* une réputation **telle**) que tout le monde le redoutait.	*He had made for himself such a reputation that every one feared him.*

Obs. **Tel** cannot be used before a qualificative adjective, but must be replaced by **si** or **tellement** :

Une entreprise **si** difficile.	**Such** *a difficult undertaking.*

§ **99.** **Tel**, used absolutely without the article, means *he, many a one, some* :

Tels le disent qui n'en croient rien.	*Some say it who do not believe it.*
Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera.	*Laugh to-day, cry to-morrow.*

§ **100.** Notice the following idioms :

Monsieur **un tel.**	*Mr. So-and-so.*
Je vous rends votre livre **tel quel.**	*I give you back your book, such as it was.*
Il se contenta de ces excuses **telles quelles.**	*He was satisfied with those indifferent excuses.*

§ **101.** **Tout** (which may be used as an adjective, a pronoun, a noun, and an adverb), precedes not only the noun it refers to, but also the article, or any other determinative word; but when it accompanies a personal pronoun, it always follows it:

Toute la ville.	*The whole town.*
Toute une ville.	*A whole town.*
Nous **tous.**	*All of us.*

§ **102.** **Tout** is used without any article—

(1) In the sense of *any, every*:

Toute ville.	*Any town.*
A **tout** moment.	*At every instant.*
A **tout** propos.	*At every turn.*
De **toute** sorte.	*Of every description.*
En **toute** occasion.	*On any occasion.*

EXCEPTION.—In the plural the article is generally used:

Tous les jours.	*Every day.*
Tous les deux jours.	*Every other day.*

Obs. The article, however, is omitted in several locutions:

A **tous** moments.	*At every instant.*
De **toutes** sortes.	*Of every description.*
De **tous** côtés.	*On every side.*

(2) In the sense of *nothing but, mere*:

Les crimes dont on l'accuse sont **toutes** calomnies.	*The crimes of which he is accused are* **nothing but** *calumny.*

(3) In the sense of *all, whole, full*, in several idiomatic locutions:

A **toute** force.	*By all means.*
A **tout** hasard.	*At all hazards.*
A **toutes** jambes. / A **toute** bride. / A **toute** vapeur.	*Full speed.*
Un cheval à **toutes** mains.	*A horse for both saddle and harness.*
Etre à **toutes** mains.	*To be fit for anything.*
Prendre à (*or* de) **toutes** mains.	*To take on all sides.*
En **tout** bien, **tout** honneur.	*With honourable intentions.*
En **toute** liberté.	*With full liberty.*

(4) In the plural, to recapitulate:

Il me faut rire, plaisanter, jouer, **toutes** choses qui ne me vont guère.	*I must laugh, jest, play, not one of which suits me much.*

Obs. With a numeral, **tous** may be used with or without the article up to four; from four to ten, it almost always takes the article; above ten, always:

Tous trois *or* **tous les** trois.	*All three.*
Tous les trente.	*All thirty.*

§ **103.** **Tout ce qui, tout ce que** (=*all that which, all that, all*), are sometimes used in speaking of persons :

Tout ce que notre temps a produit de fameux.	*All the famous* **men** *of our time.*

Obs. **Tout ce qu'il y a de**, followed by an adjective, has often the force of a superlative :

C'est **tout ce qu'il y a de beau.**	*It is* **the finest possible** *thing.*

§ **104.** **Tout** is used substantively—

(1) In the singular, meaning *all, everything, every one* :

Tout ou rien.	*All or nothing.*
Tout me plaît en lui.	*Everything pleases me in him.*
Femmes, enfants, **tout** périt.	*Women, children, all perished.*
Rien du **tout.**	*Nothing at all.*
Ils diffèrent du **tout** au **tout.**	*They are wholly different.*

(2) In the plural (**tous, toutes**), meaning *all* :

Il a plu à **tous** et à **toutes.**	*He has pleased everybody.*

Obs. When **tout** is a real noun (meaning *whole*), it keeps the final *t* in the plural :

Plusieurs **touts.**	*Several wholes.*

§ **105.** **Tout** is used adverbially in the sense of *quite, wholly,* but, even in that case, agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun before a *feminine* adjective or participle, beginning with a *consonant* or *aspirated h* :

Ils étaient **tout** étonnés.	*They were* } *quite astonished.*
Elle éta **tout** étonnée.	*She was* } *quite astonished.*
But Elle était **toute** surprise.	*She was* } *quite surprised.*
Elles étaient **toutes** surprises.	*They were* } *quite surprised.*

Obs. 1. Notice the difference between

Toute autre chose	**Any other** *thing.*
and **Tout autre** chose.	**Quite another** *thing.*
Je suis **toute** à vous	*I am* **wholly** *yours.*
and Je suis **tout** à vous.	*I am yours* **truly.**

Obs. 2. Notice also the following idioms :

Tout à l'heure.	*Presently, just now.*
Tout beau, **tout** doux.	*Gently.*
Tout bonnement.	*Simply.*
Tout de bon.	*In earnest.*
Tout en causant, etc.	*Whilst talking, etc.*

§ **106.** **Tout . . . que**, like **quelque . . . que**, is used in the sense of *however*, *as*, but being more affirmative, does not require the subjunctive mood :

Tout puissants **qu'ils sont.**	*Powerful as they are.*

Obs. 1. **Tout**, thus followed by **que**, varies not only in the case mentioned in the preceding section, but also before *feminine nouns of* **persons** beginning with a *consonant* or *aspirated h* :

Toutes puissantes qu'elles sont.	*Powerful as they are.*
Toute reine qu'elle est.	*Queen as she is.*

Obs. 2. Before feminine nouns of **things, tout** remains invariable :

Ces calomnies, **tout** calomnies qu'elles sont, lui ont beaucoup nui.	*These slanders, slanders as they are, have injured him much.*

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

A.—*PERSONAL PRONOUNS.*

§ **107.** Personal pronouns are divided into—

(1) Conjunctive, standing in immediate connection with a verb:

Je, me; tu, te; il, le, lui; elle, la, lui, for the singular.
Nous; vous; ils, les, leur; elles, les, leur, for the plural.
Se, en, y, for both numbers.

(2) Disjunctive, standing alone or after a preposition, etc.:

Moi; toi; lui, elle, for the singular.
Nous; vous; eux, elles, for the plural.
Soi, for both numbers.

Obs. **Se** and **soi** are the reflexive pronouns of the third person; there are no special forms for the first and second.

I.—Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

(*a*) THEIR PLACE AS SUBJECTS.

§ **108.** Conjunctive personal pronouns used as subjects must be placed *immediately* before or after the verb, and when it is in a compound tense, *immediately* before or after the auxiliary:

Il plaisante toujours ainsi.	*He always jests in that way.*
Plaisante - t - il toujours?	*Does he always jest?*
Il a toujours aimé à plaisanter.	*He has always been fond of jesting.*

EXCEPTIONS. — They may be separated from the verb—

(1) By the negative **ne**:

Il ne plaisante jamais.	*He never jests.*

(2) By other conjunctive pronouns used as objects:

Je le leur avais déjà dit.	*I had already said it to them.*

§ **109.** Conjunctive personal pronouns used as subjects are generally placed *before* the verb, and with compound tenses *before* the auxiliary:

Nous écoutons.	*We are listening.*
Vous n'avez pas écouté.	*You have not listened.*
J'avais espéré que **vous** pourriez venir.	*I had hoped you would be able to come.*

Obs. For their redundant use after the verb with a noun-subject, see §§ 21 *Obs.*, and 23.

EXCEPTIONS.—They are placed *after* the verb—

(1) In interrogative sentences:

Vous a-**t-il** appris la nouvelle?	*Did he tell you the news?*

Obs. If, however, **est-ce que** is used, they precede the verb:

Est-ce qu'**il** vous a appris la nouvelle?

(2) In parenthetical sentences introduced in the middle of a quotation or directly following it:

"Mes enfants," dit-**il**, "écoutez."	"*My children*," *said he*, "*listen.*"
"Que je te plains!" s'écria-**t-il**.	"*How I pity you!*" *he exclaimed.*

(3) In optative, and sometimes in exclamative, sentences:

Puisse-t-**il** ne jamais le savoir!	*May he never know it!*
Est-**il** amusant!	*How amusing he is!*

(4) In conditional and suppositive clauses not introduced by a conjunction:

Etaient-**ils** accusés, leur mort était certaine.	*If they were accused, their death was certain.*
Fût-**il** roi . . .	*Even if he were a king . . .*
Dussé-**je** mourir . . .	*Though I should die . . .*

(5) Generally in sentences beginning with **à peine, à plus forte raison, au moins, du moins, aussi** (=so, hence), **encore** (=yet, even then), **en vain, peut-être, toujours** (=still):

A peine fut-**il** arrivé que . . .	*He had scarcely arrived when . . .*
En vain essaya-t-**il**.	*In vain he tried.*
Peut-être irons-**nous**.	*Perhaps we shall go.*

(*b*) THEIR PLACE AS OBJECTS.

§ **110.** Conjunctive personal pronouns used as objects are generally placed *before* the verb, and, with compound tenses, *before* the auxiliary:

Nous **les** verrons.	*We will see them.*
Nous **les** avons vus.	*We have seen them.*
Les avez-vous vus?	*Did you see them?*
Ne **les** avez-vous pas vus?	*Did you not see them?*
Ne **nous** levons pas.	*Let us not get up.*
Ne **lui** montrez pas ce livre.	*Do not show him this book.*
Ne **leur** dites pas de venir.	*Do not tell them to come.*

EXCEPTION.—They are placed *after* the verb, when it is in the imperative affirmative:

Levons-**nous.**	*Let us get up.*
Montrez-**lui** ce livre.	*Show him this book.*
Dites-**leur** de venir.	*Tell them to come.*

Obs. 1. In such a case, **moi** and **toi** stand for **me** and **te,** except before **en** and **y**:

Donnez-**moi** de l'eau.	*Give me some water.*
Assieds-**toi.**	*Sit down.*
But Donnez-**m'en.**	*Give me some.*

Obs. 2. If two imperatives are connected by **et** or **ou,** the pronoun governed by the latter may come before it:

Va, cours, vole et **nous** venge.	*Go, run, fly and avenge us.*

This construction, however, is now seldom used.

§ **111.** When a verb has two conjunctive personal pronouns for objects, they both stand before it, and, with compound tenses, before the auxiliary, the *indirect* object, as a rule, *preceding* the direct:

Je **vous le** donne.	*I give it to you.*
Je **vous les** ai donnés.	*I have given them to you.*
Me les avez-vous donnés?	*Have you given them to me?*
Nous ne **te les** avons pas donnés.	*We have not given them to you.*
Ne **nous les** avez-vous pas donnés?	*Have you not given them to us?*
Ne **me les** donnez pas.	*Do not give them to me.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The *direct* object *precedes* the indirect—

(1) When both pronouns are of the third person:

Je **le lui** donne.	*I give it to him.*
Je **les leur** ai donnés.	*I have given them to them.*
Je ne **le lui** donne pas.	*I do not give it to him.*
Ne **les leur** avez-vous pas donnés?	*Have you not given them to them?*
Ne **le lui** donnez pas.	*Do not give it to him.*

(2) When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, in which case both pronouns follow it:

Donnez-**le-moi.**	*Give it to me.*
Donnez-**les-nous.**	*Give them to us.*
Donnez-**les-vous.**	*Give them to yourself.*

§ **112.** SPECIAL RULE.—**Y** and **en** come *after* all other pronouns, and when they stand together, **y** precedes **en**:

Je **vous y** verrai.	*I shall see you there.*
Les y avez-vous vus?	*Did you see them there?*
Il **m'en** a donné.	*He gave me some.*
Donnez-**lui-en.**	*Give him some.*
Ne **lui en** donnez pas.	*Do not give him any.*
N'**y en** avez-vous pas trouvé?	*Did you not find any there?*

EXCEPTION.—After an imperative affirmative, **y** is sometimes placed before **moi, toi**:

Attendez-**y-moi.**	*Wait for me there.*
Prépares-**y-toi.**	*Prepare for it.*

But it is better to say:

Attendez-**m'y,** prépare-**t'y.**

Obs. Some grammarians recommend to avoid both constructions whenever possible, and to say, for instance:

Veuillez m'y attendre.

§ **113.** When a verb is followed by an infinitive, the pronouns depending on the latter are now, as a rule, placed between the two verbs:

Quelqu'un est venu **vous** voir.	*Some one came to see you.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The pronouns are placed before the first verb, when it is **envoyer, faire, laisser,** or a verb of *perception*:

Il **l'**a envoyé chercher.	*He has sent for him.*
Je **le** ferai faire.	*I will have it done.*
Nous **le leur** avons entendu dire.	*We have heard them say so.*

(*c*) THEIR REPETITION AS SUBJECTS.

§ **114.** Conjunctive personal pronouns used as subjects are generally repeated before each verb:

Je vois, **je** sais, **je** crois.	*I see, I know, I believe.*
Je suis venu, **j'**ai vu, **j'**ai vaincu.	*I came, I saw, I conquered.*
Je l'ai dit et **je** le ferai.	*I said it and I will do it.*
Viendrez-vous ou resterez-**vous** ici?	*Will you come or remain here?*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) They must not be repeated after **ni**:

Il ne voit **ni n'**entend.	*He neither sees nor hears.*

(2) They are not repeated, as a rule, especially those of the third person, after **et, mais, ou**:

Ils eurent peur **et s'**enfuirent.	*They were afraid and ran away.*
Elle parlait **ou riait** tout le temps.	*She spoke or laughed all the time.*

Obs. 1. They must always be repeated, however, even after **ni,** when the verbs are used *interrogatively,*

or when the order is *inverted* for some other reason :

Ne voit-il ni n'entend-**il** ?	*Does he not see or hear ?*
"Les voilà !" dit-elle, et **elle** courut à eux.	*"Here they are !" she said, and ran to them.*

Obs. 2. They are generally repeated, even after **et, mais, ou** (but not after **ni**), when the verbs are in different tenses, or when the first is negative, and the second affirmative :

Il l'a dit, mais **il** ne le fera pas.	*He said it, but he will not do it.*
Je n'en suis pas sûr, mais **je** le crois.	*I am not sure of it, but I think so.*

(*d*) THEIR REPETITION AS OBJECTS.

§ **115.** Conjunctive personal pronouns used as objects must be repeated before every verb :

Je l'aime et je **l'**admire.	*I love and admire him.*
Nous les lisons et **les** relisons sans cesse.	*We read and re-read them constantly.*
Il vous le montrera et vous l'expliquera lui-même.	*He will show it and explain it to you himself.*

EXCEPTION.—They are not repeated when the verbs are in a compound tense and the auxiliary is understood :

Je l'ai toujours aimé **et admiré.**	*I have always loved and admired him.*
Nous les avons lus **et relus.**	*We have read them over and over again.*

Obs. The auxiliary cannot be understood, and consequently the pronouns must be repeated, when one of the verbs requires a direct, and the other an indirect object :

Il nous (acc.) a appelés et **nous** (dat.) a demandé d'entrer.	*He called us and asked us to come in.*

(*e*) SPECIAL RULES.

PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS.

§ **116.** **Me** (**moi** after an imperative affirmative), **te, nous, vous,** are sometimes used expletively to give more energy to the sentence (ethic dative) :

Battez-**moi** ce vaurien.	*Thrash this rogue soundly.*
Je **vous** le punirai comme il faut.	*I'll punish him properly.*

§ **117.** **Nous** is used—

(1) Instead of **je**, by authors, sovereigns, and men in authority :

Nous prions nos lecteurs . . .	*I beg my readers . . .*
Nous avons ordonné que . . .	*We have ordered that . . .*

(2) Sometimes, in familiar style, instead of **tu** or **vous** :

Eh bien ! **nous** sommes-**nous** amusé ?	*Well, did* **you** *enjoy* **yourself?**

§ **118.** **Tu, te**, are generally used in speaking to relations, intimate friends, and young children, and sometimes to express contempt, whilst **vous** is used out of respect :

C'est moi, c'est **ton** père qui **t'**en prie.	*It is I, your father, who beg you to do it.*
Quel âge as-**tu** ?—Quatre ans.	*How old are you ?—I am four.*
Lâche, que fais-**tu** ?	*Coward, what are you doing ?*

Exception.—In elevated style and in poetry, **tu, te**, are often used instead of **vous** :

Si le ciel **t'**a fait roi, c'est pour me protéger.	*If Heaven made you a king, it was to protect me.*

Pronouns of the Third Person.

(1) *Il, elle, ils, elles.*

§ **119.** **Il, elle, ils, elles**, are sometimes used expletively directly after the subject, for the sake of emphasis :

Ce misérable, **il** nous a trahis !	*That wretch has betrayed us !*

(For other redundant uses of these pronouns see §§ 21 *Obs.*, and 23.)

§ **120.** **Il** is often used impersonally before a verb in the singular ollowed by its real subject, which may be of any gender and number :

Il nous reste encore trois jours.	*We have still three days left.*
Il est venu plusieurs personnes.	*Several people have come.*

(2) *Le, la, les.*

§ **121.** The pronoun **le** agrees in gender and number with its antecedent when it is a noun used in a determinate sense :

Etes-vous sa femme ?—Je ne **la** suis pas encore.	*Are you his wife ?—Not yet.*
Etes-vous les témoins ?—Nous **les** sommes.	*Are you the witnesses ?—We are.*

But when **le** refers to a noun used indeterminately or adjectively, an adjective, a verb, or a whole clause, it remains invariable :

Etes-vous amis?—Nous **le** sommes.	*Are you friends?—We are.*
Si vous êtes vexé, nous **le** sommes aussi.	*If you are vexed, we are too.*
Il triomphe, et c'est à vous qu'il **le** doit.	*He triumphs, and it is to you he owes it.*

§ **122.** The pronouns **le, la, les,** are used in French without any corresponding pronoun in English, not only with the verb **être,** as above, but also when the object is placed before the verb for the sake of emphasis :

Ce but que vous poursuivez, vous ne l'atteindrez jamais ainsi.	*This aim you are pursuing, you will never reach thus.*
Ce qu'il fait, il **le** fait bien.	*What he does, he does well.*

§ **123.** The neutral pronoun **le** is also used without corresponding pronoun in English—

(1) In parenthetical clauses, when the order is not inverted :

C'est fort triste, je l'avoue.	*It is very sad, I confess.*

(2) In the second term of a comparison, before the verb :

Il est plus heureux que je ne **le** pensais.	*He is happier than I thought.*

(3) Often after **comme** and **si** :

C'est comme vous **le** dites.	*It is as you say.*
J'irai, si vous **le** désirez.	*I will go, if you like.*

§ **124.** **Le** is further used in several idiomatic expressions :

Il ne **le** cède à personne.	*He is inferior to none.*
Vous l'avez échappé belle.	*You have had a narrow escape.*
La prudence l'emporta.	*Prudence prevailed.*
Vous **le** prenez bien haut.	*You are talking very big.*
Je me **le** tins pour dit.	*I took the hint.*

§ **125.** *Vice versâ*, the pronoun *it* is not translated when it merely announces a statement which follows :

Vous pouvez être certain qu'il ne le fera pas.	*You may take* **it** *for granted that he will not do it.*
Je ne crois pas probable qu'il réussisse.	*I do not think* **it** *likely that he will succeed.*

(3) *Lui, leur.*

§ **126.** **Lui, leur,** used as indirect objects when the preposition **à** is understood, generally refer to *persons,* whilst **y,** as a rule, refers to animals and inanimate things :

Le **lui** avez-vous montré?	*Have you shown it to* **him**?
Voici les **témoins,** parlez-**leur.**	*Here are the witnesses, speak to them.*

EXCEPTION.—**Lui, leur,** are used instead of **y** in speaking of animals and inanimate things, when they are personified :

Ce cheval a soif, donnez-**lui** à boire.	*This horse is thirsty, give him to drink.*
Je suis heureux de cet accident, car je **lui** dois de vous avoir vu.	*I am glad of that accident, for to it I owe having seen you.*

§ **127.** **Lui, leur,** being the same for both genders, it is sometimes necessary, in order to avoid ambiguity, to place after the verb a disjunctive pronoun with the preposition **à** :

Montrez-le-lui, **à lui,** non pas **à elle.**	*Show it to him, not to her.*

(4) *En, y.*

§ **128.** GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.—**En** (L. *inde*) and **y** (L. *ibi*) are both used with reference to a place mentioned before, the former answering the question *whence?* and the latter the questions *where? whither?*

Est-il toujours à Londres?—Il **en** est revenu ce matin.	*Is he still in London?—He came back this morning.*
Etait-il chez lui?—Non, il **n'y** était pas.	*Was he at home?—No, he was not.*
Avez-vous été en Italie?—Non, je **n'y** ai jamais été.	*Have you been to Italy?—No, I have never been there.*

§ **129.** **En** and **y** are sometimes used with reference to pronouns of the first and second persons :

Vous fiez-vous à **moi**?—Je m'**y** fie.	*Do you trust me?—I do.*
Prendrez-vous soin de **vous**?—**J'en** prendrai soin.	*Will you take care of yourself?—Yes, I will.*

§ **130.** SPECIAL RULES.—**En** is used—

(1) Instead of **de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, de ceci, de cela,** with reference to things or a whole clause, seldom to persons :

Ne vous **en** tourmentez pas.	*Do not torment yourself about* **it.**
Cela l'irrite, n'**en** parlons plus.	*That irritates him, let us no longer speak of* **it.**
Je l'ai fait, j'**en** conviens.	*I have done* **it,** *I confess.*
But Nous parlons **de lui, d'elle.**	*We are speaking of* **him,** *of* **her.**

(2) Partitively, to translate *some* or *any*, or with numerals, adjectives and adverbs of quantity referring to a noun mentioned before:

Voulez-vous de l'argent?—Merci, j'**en** ai.	*Do you want money?—No, thank you, I have some.*
N'avez-vous pas d'amis?—Je n'**en** ai pas.	*Have you not any friends?—I have not any.*
Combien **en** avez-vous pris?	*How many did you take?*
J'**en** ai pris quatre.	*I have taken four.*
J'**en** ai vu de fort beaux.	*I have seen very fine ones.*

(3) With comparatives, answering to *for it*:

Il n'**en** est pas plus heureux.	*He is none the happier for it.*
J'**en** suis d'autant plus fâché que...	*I am the more sorry for it because . . .*

(4) With the definite article, instead of a possessive adjective (see § 71).

§ **131.** **En** is further used in several idiomatic expressions:

A qui **en** a-t-il?	*Whom is he angry with?*
A vous **en** croire . . .	*If we are to believe you . . .*
Eh bien! où **en** êtes-vous?	*Well, how are you getting on?*
Voilà où **en** sont les choses.	*Such is the state of affairs.*
Je ne sais où j'**en** suis.	*I do not know what I am about.*
Vous **en** serez pour votre peine.	*You will lose your time.*
Il en **est** ainsi de tout ce qu'il fait.	*It is the same with everything he does.*
Quoi qu'il **en** soit.	*However it may be.*
C'**en** est fait de nous.	*It is all over with us.*
Peu s'**en** fallut qu'il ne périt.	*He very nearly perished.*
Il ne nous **en** imposera point.	*He will not impose upon us.*
Le sort **en** est jeté.	*The die is cast.*
Faut-il **en** passer par là?	*Must we submit to it?*
Je n'**en** puis mais.	*I cannot help it.*
Je n'**en** puis plus.	*I am knocked up.*
Pourquoi vous **en** prenez-vous à moi?	*Why do you lay the blame on me?*
Où **en** sommes-nous restés?	*Where did we leave off?*
Je n'**en** reviens pas. Les bras m'**en** tombent.	*I cannot recover from my surprise.*
Il **en** tient.	*He is smitten; he is in for it.*
Nous **en** tenons.	*We have been taken in.*
Je m'**en** tiens à ce que j'ai dit.	*I abide by what I have said.*
Ils **en** vinrent aux mains.	*They came to blows.*
A quoi voulez-vous **en** venir?	*What are you driving at?*
Il vous **en** veut.	*He has a spite against you.*
A qui **en** voulez-vous?	*Whom are you aiming at?*

§ **132.** **Y** is used instead of **à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles, à ceci, à cela,** with reference to things or a whole clause :

C'est une tâche délicate, consacrez-**y** tout votre temps.	*It is a delicate task, devote all your time to* **it.**
Si vous le faites, qu'**y** gagnerez-vous ?	*If you do it, what will you gain by* **it** *?*
Il voudrait partir, mais je n'**y** consentirai pas.	*He would like to start, but I will not consent to* **it.**
Nous **y** pensions.	*We were thinking of* **it.**
But Nous pensions **à lui, à elle.**	*We were thinking of* **him,** *of* **her.**

Obs. 1. **Y** sometimes refers to persons, especially with the verbs **croire, se fier, penser :**

Croyez-vous aux revenants ?—Je n'**y** crois pas.	*Do you believe in ghosts ?—I do not believe in them.*
C'est un fourbe, ne vous **y** fiez pas.	*He is a knave, do not trust him.*

Obs. 2. **Y** may sometimes be used instead of **lui, elle, eux, elles, ceci, cela,** governed by other propositions than à :

Comptez-vous sur sa promesse ?—Je n'**y** compte pas beaucoup.	*Do you rely upon his promise ?—I do not rely upon it much.*
Me rendrez-vous ce service ?—J'**y** ferai tous mes efforts.	*Will you render me that service ?—I will do my best.*

§ **133.** **Y** is further used in several idiomatic expressions :

Il **y** va de votre vie.	*Your life is at stake.*
Combien **y** a-t-il d'ici à Londres ?	*How far is it from here to London ?*
Il **y** a huit jours.	*A week ago.*
Qu'**y** a-t-il ?	*What's the matter ?*
Tant il **y** a qu'il est parti.	*However that may be, he is gone.*
J'**y** suis.	*I have got it.*
Vous n'**y** êtes pas.	*You are wide of the mark.*
Madame n'**y** est pas.	*Mistress is not at home.*
Le compte **y** est.	*The account is exact.*
Y pensez-vous ?	*You don't mean it !*
Vous vous **y** prenez mal.	*You go the wrong way to work.*
Nous **y** voici.	*Here we are ; we have come to it.*
Je n'**y** vois pas.	*I cannot see.*

(5) *Se.*

§ **134.** The reflexive pronoun **se**, which is of both numbers and genders, and stands, as direct or indirect object, before all other pronouns, is often used to translate the English passive voice :

Comment s'appelle-t-il ?	*How is he called ?*
Cela ne peut **se** soutenir.	*That cannot be maintained.*
Tout s'est fait en un moment.	*All was done in a moment.*
Sa conjecture **se** vérifia bientôt.	*His conjecture was soon verified.*

§ **135.** The reflexive pronoun is generally omitted after **faire** (and sometimes after **laisser**) :

Je l'en ferai repentir.	*I'll make him repent of it.*

II.—Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ **136.** Disjunctive personal pronouns are used—

(1) When the verb is understood :

Qui le fera ?—**Moi.**	*Who will do it ?—I.*
Qui avez-vous vu ?—**Lui.**	*Whom did you see ?—Him.*
Il n'est pas plus grand que **toi.**	*He is not taller than you.*
Il vous craint plus que **moi.**	*He fears you more than he does me.*
J'y étais aussi bien que **lui.**	*I was there as well as he.*
Vous m'y trouverez aussi bien qu'**eux.**	*You will find me there as well as them.*
Il écrira le commencement, **moi** la fin.	*He will write the beginning, I the end.*

(2) Before a participle (present or past), and any word or words which separate the pronoun from its verb (see, however, § 108, Exc.) :

Moi, voyant cela, je me tus.	*I, seeing that, kept silent.*
Eux, surpris et charmés, me regardèrent.	*They, surprised and delighted, looked at me.*
Toi aussi, tu le sais.	*You also know it.*
Lui seul viendra.	*He alone will come.*
Moi, qui m'en doutais, je me mis à rire.	*I, who suspected it, began to laugh.*
Eux, sans s'émouvoir, continuèrent leur route.	*They, without being moved, went on their way.*

Obs. When **moi** and **toi** are thus used as subjects, the conjunctive pronouns **je** and **tu** are placed before the verb.

(3) In exclamations, as subjects of a verb in the infinitive :

Moi, vous oublier !	*I, forget you !*
Lui, manquer à sa parole ! / Manquer à sa parole, **lui** !	*He, break his word !*

(4) Redundantly, before words standing in apposition to a conjunctive personal pronoun :

De quoi m'accuses-tu, **moi** ton frère ?	*Of what do you accuse me, your brother ?*
Voilà comment il le traite, **lui** son bienfaiteur.	*That is how he treats him, his benefactor.*

Obs. When the conjunctive pronoun is in the dative, the preposition **à** must be placed before the disjunctive :

Voilà comment il lui parle, **à lui** son bienfaiteur.	*That is how he speaks to him, his benefactor.*

§ **137.** Disjunctive personal pronouns are used likewise—

(1) After the verb **être** preceded by **ce** :

C'est **moi**; c'est **toi**; ce sont **eux.**	*It is I; it is you; it is they.*
N'était-ce pas **lui** ?	*Was it not he ?*
Ce doit être **toi.**	*It must be you.*

(2) When the verb has several subjects or objects (in which case, especially when the subjects or objects are of different persons, a conjunctive pronoun, of the person which has priority, is generally placed before the verb) :

Mon frère et **moi,** nous partirons demain.	*My brother and I will start to-morrow.*
Toi ou **lui,** vous le ferez.	*You or he will do it.*
Je les verrai, **lui** et sa sœur.	*I will see him and his sister.*
Il nous a avertis, **eux** et **moi.**	*He has warned them and me.*

(3) For the sake of emphasis or contrast :

Moi, je n'y consentirai pas.	*I will not consent to it.*
Lui travaillait, **eux** jouaient.	*He was working, they were playing.*
Il ne fait jamais rien, **lui.**	*He never does anything.*
Vous les croirez peut-être, **eux.**	*Them you will perhaps believe.*

Obs. A conjunctive pronoun must be placed before the verb, except after **lui, eux,** which may stand without one as subjects.

§ **138.** Lastly, disjunctive personal pronouns are used as indirect objects after a preposition :

Nous parlions de **toi.**	*We were speaking of you.*
C'est pour **lui** que je le fais.	*It is for him that I do it.*
La maison est-elle à **eux** ?	*Does the house belong to them ?*

Also, idiomatically :

Mon opinion, à **moi,** est qu'il a tort.	*My opinion is that he is wrong.*
As-tu une voiture à **toi** ?	*Have you a carriage of your own ?*
Il a des idées à **lui.**	*He has peculiar ideas.*

§ **139.** First Observation.—The preposition **à**, which is understood before personal pronouns with most verbs governing the dative, must be expressed (except when **y** may be used) and followed by a disjunctive pronoun—

(1) When the direct object is of the first or second person :

Envoyez-moi **à eux.**	*Send me to them.*
Je te confie **à lui.**	*I intrust you to him.*
Qui vous a adressé **à moi** ?	*Who addressed you to me ?*

(2) When the verb is used with **ne . . . que** :

Je n'obéirai qu'**à lui.**	*I will obey him alone.*
Il ne plaît qu'**à toi.**	*He pleases you only.*

(3) With reflexive verbs :

Il se recommande **à toi.**	*He recommends himself to you.*
Ne s'est-elle pas attaquée **à lui** ?	*Did she not attack him ?*
Pourquoi s'en prendre **à moi** ?	*Why lay the blame on me ?*

Note.—The preposition **à** must also be expressed after verbs of motion taken in their literal sense (**aller, courir, marcher, venir,** etc.), and a few others, as **accoutumer, appeler, aspirer, être** (=*to belong*), **habituer, penser, prétendre, songer, renoncer, viser** :

Il courut **à moi.**	*He ran to me.*
Je n'aspire pas **à elle.**	*I do not aspire to her.*
Nous pensions **à toi.**	*We were thinking of you.*
Renoncez **à lui.**	*Give him up.*
But Ce chapeau **vous** va fort bien.	*This hat suits you very well.*
Il **me** vient une idée.	*I have got an idea.*

§ **140.** Second Observation.—When personal pronouns referring to inanimate things are governed by a preposition in English, and it is not

Exceptions.—Disjunctive personal pronouns are used, even in speaking of things, when the preposition cannot be used adverbially,

possible to use **en** or **y**, they are generally omitted in French, and the preposition, if it cannot be left out also, or used adverbially, is replaced by the corresponding adverb:

Attachez un poids **au bout.**	*Tie a weight* **to the end of it.**
Il y avait une table **devant.**	*There was a table* **in front of it.**
Ne regardez pas sur le banc, mais **dessous.**	*Do not look on the form, but* **under it.**

Note.—Sometimes another turn may be used with a possessive, demonstrative, or conjunctive pronoun:

Laissez vos livres, et servez-vous des miens **à leur place.**	*Leave your books, and use mine* **instead of them.**
Avez-vous vu la forêt? Nous **l'avons traversée** en venant.	*Did you see the forest?—We came* **through it.**

and there is no corresponding adverb, or when the object mentioned may be looked upon as personified:

Mes livres! que deviendrais-je sans **eux**?	*My books! what would become of me without them?*
Sa présence d'esprit ne l'abandonna point, et grâce à **elle**, il nous sauva.	*His presence of mind did not forsake him, and, thanks to it, he saved us.*
C'est ma foi, je saurai mourir pour **elle.**	*It is my faith, I shall know how to die for it.*

§ **141. Soi.**—The disjunctive reflexive pronoun **soi** may refer—

(1) To persons, in which case it is used, as a rule, in an indeterminate sense, *i.e.*—

[*a*] After an indefinite pronoun, like **chacun, nul, on, personne**:

Chacun pour **soi.**	*Every one for himself.*
On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que **soi.**	*We often want the help of one less than ourselves.*

[*b*] After a noun or an infinitive taken indefinitely:

L'amour de **soi.**	*Self-love.*
Il ne faut pas toujours parler de **soi.**	*We must not always speak of ourselves.*
Rentrer chez **soi.**	*To return home.*

EXCEPTION.—**Soi** is used with determinate nouns of persons, when **lui, elle**, might give rise to ambiguity:

Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à **soi.**	*Although his brother is reduced to poverty, he only thinks of himself.*

Obs. In the seventeenth century, **soi** was commonly used instead of **lui, elle**, even when there was no ambiguity:

Gnathon ne vit que pour **soi** (La Bruyère).	*Gnathon only lives for himself.*

(2) To things, after a *singular* noun (sometimes, but very seldom, in modern French, after a plural):

La vertu trouve sa récompense en **soi.**	*Virtue finds its reward in itself.*

Obs. Notice the following expressions:

Etre à **soi.**	*To be one's own master.*
N'être pas à **soi.**	*To have lost one's senses.*
Rentrer en **soi.**	*To reflect.*
Revenir à **soi.**	*To recover one's senses.*
Faire des réflexions à part **soi.**	*To think to one's-self.*
Avoir un chez-**soi.**	*To have a home.*

B.—*POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.*

§ **142.** Possessive pronouns, **le mien, le tien,** etc., agree in *gender* and *number* with the *object possessed*, in person with the possessor:

Sa sœur et **la mienne.**	*His sister and mine.*
Voici mes livres, où sont **les siens?**	*Here are my books, where are* **his** *(or* **hers)?**

§ **143.** They are generally replaced by **à moi, à toi,** etc., after the verb **être** expressed or understood:

Ce crayon est-il **à vous** ou **à lui?**	*Is this pencil yours or his?*
Tout à vous.	*Yours truly.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) **Le mien, le tien,** etc., are used, even after **être,** to distinguish one object from another:

Ce n'est pas votre plume, c'est **la mienne.**	*It is not your pen, it is mine.*

(2) **Mien, tien,** etc., are sometimes found without the article after **être:**

Cette idée est **mienne.**	*That idea is mine.*

§ **144.** They are used substantively—

(1) In the masculine singular, for property:

Ils ne demandent que **le leur.**	*They only ask for their own.*

(2) In the masculine plural, for relations or followers:

Elle a perdu tous **les siens.**	*She has lost all her relations.*
Quatre **des nôtres.**	*Four of our party.*

§ **145.** They are also used adjectively in a few expressions, as:

Un **mien** neveu, un **sien** cousin.	*A nephew of mine, a cousin of his.*

Obs. Notice the following ways of translating English possessive pronouns:

Un mien ami. Un ami à moi. Un de mes amis.	*A friend of mine.*
Cela ne vous regarde pas.	*It is no business of yours.*

C.—*DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.*

§ **146.** The demonstrative pronoun **ce** is generally used before—

(1) A relative pronoun (**qui, que, dont, à quoi**):

Ce qui m'amuse.	*What amuses me.*
Ce que j'aime.	*What I like.*
Ce dont nous parlons.	*What we are speaking of.*
Ce à quoi je pense.	*What I am thinking of.*

(2) The verb **être**, which may be preceded by the verbs **devoir, pouvoir,** and **savoir** (in the sense of **pouvoir**):

C'est vrai.	*It is true.*
Ce doit être vrai.	*It must be true.*
Ce ne peut être vrai.	*It cannot be true.*
Ce ne saurait être vrai.	*It cannot be true.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Ce** is used independently of a relative pronoun or the verb **être** in a few idiomatic expressions:

En **ce** faisant . . .	*In doing so . . .*
Pour **ce** faire . . .	*In order to do so . . .*
Quand **ce** vint à . . .	*When it came to . . .*
Sur **ce** . . .	*Thereupon . . .*
Ce dit-il.	*So says he.*
Ce dit-on.	*It is said.*
Ce semble.	*It seems.*
Ce me semble.	*Methinks.*

Obs. The last four expressions are only used parenthetically:

Rien, **ce semble,** ne lui réussit.	*He does not seem to succeed in anything.*

§ **147.** **Ce** is used with **être** to translate the demonstrative pronouns *this, that, these, those,* connected with a *following* noun:

Ce sont de bien pauvres raisons.	*Those are very poor reasons.*

Obs. The adverb **là** is generally placed after **être**:

C'est **là** un fort beau vers.	*That is a very fine line.*
Sont-**ce là** vos livres?	*Are these your books?*

§ **148.** **Ce** is used with **être** to translate not only *this, that,* but also the pronoun *it,* taken impersonally—

(1) In connection with **ce que** and all interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

Je sais ce que **c'est**.	*I know what it is.*
Qui est-**ce**?	*Who is it?*
Qu'est-**ce**? Qu'est-**ce** que **c'est**? (*Or* Qu'est-**ce** que **c'est** que cela?)	*What is that?*
Combien est-**ce**? Où est-**ce**?	*How much is it? Where is that?*

Obs. Notice the difference between **ce** and **il** in the following sentences:

Quelle heure est-**ce**?	*What o'clock is* **that**?
Quelle heure est-**il**?	*What o'clock is* **it**?

(2) Before a qualificative adjective (preceded or not by an adverb), an infinitive (preceded or not by a preposition) or an adverb, when referring to a *previous* statement:

Ils ont raison, **c'est** évident.	*It is evident that they are right.*
But **Il** est évident qu'ils ont raison.	
C'est mourir à petit feu.	*It is dying by inches.*
C'est à craindre.	*It is to be feared.*
But **Il** est à craindre que . . .	*It is to be feared that . . .*
C'est bien.	*It is well.*
C'est trop de temps perdu.	*It is too much time lost.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Il** is used instead of **ce** in the expressions—

[*a*] **Il est vrai,** explaining or modifying a previous statement:

Je suis jeune, **il est vrai,** mais . . .	*I am young indeed, but . . .*

[*b*] **N'est-il pas vrai?** in the sense of *n'est-ce pas?*:

Vous viendrez, **n'est-il pas vrai?**	*You will come, will you not?*

Obs. Notice **C'est à savoir** (=*it remains to be seen*):

C'est à savoir s'il le fera.	*It remains to be seen whether he will do it.*

(3) Before a conjunction:

C'est comme vous le dites.	*It is as you say.*
C'était pour qu'il le vît.	*It was in order that he should see it.*

(4) Before any word placed immediately after **être** for the sake of emphasis, in which case the conjunction **que,** or a relative pronoun, is generally used after the verb:

C'est de vous **que** nous parlons.	*It is of you that we are speaking*
C'est se moquer de nous **que** d'agir ainsi.	*To act thus is to laugh at us.*
C'est une belle ville **que** Paris.	*Paris is a beautiful town.*
C'est lui **qui** l'a fait, non pas moi.	*He did it, not I.*

§ **149.** **Ce** is used with **être**, to translate not only *this, that*, but also *he, she, it* (taken impersonally or not) and *they*, before—

(1) A proper name :

C'est Alfred et Georges.	*It is Alfred and George.*

(2) A noun determined by an article, a possessive or a demonstrative adjective :

C'est l'artiste dont je vous ai parlé.	*He is the artist of whom I spoke to you.*
C'était **un** vaillant capitaine.	*He was a valiant captain.*
Ce sont **des** Américains.	*They are Americans.*
C'est **mon** cousin.	*It is my cousin.*
C'est **cet** homme.	*It is that man.*

Obs. The indefinite or partitive article may be omitted and the pronouns **il, elle, ils, elles**, used instead of **ce**, when the noun is not qualified by any other word :

Il est artiste.	*He is an artist.*
Ils sont Américains.	*They are Americans.*
But **C'**est **un** artiste **célèbre.**	*He is a celebrated artist.*
Ce sont **des** Américains **de Boston.**	*They are Americans from Boston.*

(3) A superlative relative :

Lisez ces vers, **ce** sont les plus beaux.	*Read these verses, they are the finest.*

(4) A personal, possessive, or demonstrative pronoun :

Ce sont eux.	*It is they.*
A qui est ce livre?—**C'**est le mien.	*Whose book is that?—It is mine.*
C'est celui de mon frère.	*It is my brother's.*
C'est cela.	*That's it.*

§ **150.** **Ce** is used expletively with **être**—

(1) When the first member of the sentence begins with **ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi**, and the verb **être**, at the beginning of the second, is followed by a plural noun (not used adjectively) or a personal pronoun :

Ce qui me console, **ce** sont vos bontés.	*What comforts me is your kindness.*
Ce que je redoute, **c'**est lui.	*It is he whom I fear.*

Obs. 1. When the verb **être** is followed by an adjective, a participle or a noun used adjectively, **ce** is omitted :

Ce que je dis est { vrai. / la vérité.	*What I say is* { *true.* / *the truth.*

Obs. 2. In other cases, **ce** is most commonly used, but its use is not imperative :

Ce qui m'afflige, **c'**est son obstination.	*What grieves me is his obstinacy.*
Ce dont je me réjouis, **c'**est de partir.	*What rejoices me is to start.*

(2) Generally between two infinitives, the first of which is subject of the verb **être** :

Voir, **c'**est croire.	*Seeing is believing.*
Vouloir, **c'**est pouvoir.	*Where there is a will, there is a way.*

EXCEPTION.—**Ce** is omitted when the verb **être** is used *negatively* :

Souffler **n'est pas** jouer.	*Huffing is not playing.*

(3) Often, but not necessarily, when the order of the two parts of the sentence may be inverted :

Le courage, **c'**est sa seule vertu.	*Courage is his only virtue.*
Sa seule vertu, **c'**est le courage.	*His only virtue is courage.*

§ **151.** **Ce** forms with the verb **être**, the following locutions—

(1) **Est-ce que**, often used in questions :

Est-ce que vous ne viendrez pas ?	*Will you not come ?*

Obs. **Est-ce** is often combined with interrogative pronouns and adverbs :

Qui est-ce qui l'a fait ?	*Who has done it ?*
Où est-ce que vous l'avez vu ?	*Where have you seen it ?*

(2) **N'est-ce pas ?** used at the end of a question :

Vous m'écrirez, **n'est-ce pas ?**	*You will write to me, will you not ?*
Il vous a écrit, **n'est-ce pas ?**	*He has written to you, has he not ?*

(3) **C'est que** (=*it is because, the fact is*) :

Si je l'ai fait, **c'est que** j'ai cru devoir le faire.	*If I did it, it is because I thought it my duty to do it.*

(4) **Ce n'est pas que** (=*not that*), followed by the subjunctive :

Ce n'est pas que je le craigne.	*Not that I fear him.*

(5) **Si ce n'est** (=*unless it be, if not, but*) :

Qui le fera, **si ce n'est** vous ?	*Who will do it, unless it be you ?*

(6) **Ne fût-ce que** (=*even were it only*) :

Essayez, **ne fût-ce que** pour lui plaire.	*Try, even were it only to please him.*

Obs. Notice also :

C'est-à-dire . . .	*That is to say, that is . . .*
C'est donc à dire que . . .	*That is as much as to say that . . .*
Est-**ce** à dire que . . . ?	*Do you mean to say that . . . ?*
Ce n'est pas à dire pour cela que . . .	*It does not, on that account, follow that . . .*
Qu'est-**ce** à dire ?	*What is the meaning of this ?*

§ **152.** **Ceci** (=*this*), **cela** (=*that*), are used in referring—

(1) To something pointed at (not to an object already mentioned, in which case **celui-ci, celui-là,** must be used) :

Ceci est bon, **cela** est meilleur.	*This is good, that is better.*

(2) To a whole clause :

Je ne vous dis que **ceci** : il n'y a pas de temps à perdre.	*I only tell you this : there is no time to lose.*
Qu'il le fasse ou non, **cela** m'importe peu.	*Whether he does it or not, that matters little to me.*

Obs. 1. **Ceci** refers to what is going to be said ; **cela,** to what has been said already.

Obs. 2. Notice the familiar expression—

C'est ceci, c'est cela, je suis toujours occupé.	*Now one thing, now another, I am always busy.*

§ **153.** **Cela,** which is often contracted into **ça** in colloquial style, may be applied to persons familiarly or in contempt :

Comme **cela** (*or* **ça**) s'amuse !	*How they enjoy themselves !*
Cela (*or* **ça**) veut se mêler de tout.	*He* (or *she,* or *they*) *will meddle with everything.*

§ **154.** **Cela** is also used instead of **ce** to translate *it,* referring to a previous statement—

(1) With other verbs than **être** :

Cela me paraît impossible.	**It** *seems to me impossible.*

(2) Often, but not necessarily, with **être** itself :

Cela (*or* **ce**) sera admirable.	**It** *will be admirable.*

§ **155.** **Celui, celle, ceux, celles,** are only used—

(1) Before a relative pronoun, in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, the one which, those which* :

Malheur à **celui qui** l'a dit !	*Woe to him who said it !*
Voici vos livres et **ceux que** je vous ai promis.	*Here are your books and those which I promised you.*

(2) Before **de, du, de la, des,** in the sense of *that, those :*

J'ai sa parole et **celle de** son frère.	*I have his word and that of his brother.*

§ **156.** **Celui-ci, celui-là,** etc., which correspond to the English *this one, that one, the latter, the former,* contrary to **celui,** are never followed by **de,** and, contrary to **ceci, cela,** always refer to persons or things already mentioned :

De ces divers tableaux, lequel préférez-vous ? — Je préfère **celui-ci.**	*Of these various pictures, which do you prefer ?—This one.*

Exception.— **Celui-là** is sometimes used absolutely before a verb, as an antecedent to a relative pronoun :

Celui-là est heureux qui n'a rien à se reprocher.	*He is happy who has nothing to reproach himself with.*

Obs. Notice the other ways of translating the same sentence :

(Celui) qui n'a rien à se reprocher est heureux.

Il est heureux, celui qui n'a rien à se reprocher.

Heureux celui qui n'a rien à se reprocher.

D.—*RELATIVE PRONOUNS.*

§ **157.** Relative pronouns agree in gender, number, and person with their antecedent :

Moi qui en **suis convaincu.**	*I who am* }
Elle qui en **est convaincue.**	*She who is* } *convinced of it.*
Nous qui en **sommes convaincus.**	*We who are* }

158. Relative pronouns are placed at the beginning of the relative clause and as near as possible to their antecedent, so as to avoid ambiguity :

Cette **campagne, dont** le début avait été si désastreux . . .	*That campaign, the beginning of which had been so disastrous . . .*
Il y a en France bien des **gens qui . . .**	*There are many people in France who . . .*

Exception.—If a relative pronoun depends on a noun governed by a preposition, it must be placed after the preposition and the noun :

Voici l'homme **au courage de qui** (*or* **duquel**) vous devez la vie.	*Here is the man to whose courage you owe your life.*

§ **159.** Relative pronouns can never be understood as in English :

Le livre **que** vous lisez.	*The book you are reading.*
L'enfant **dont** elle parlait.	*The child she was speaking of.*

§ **160.** **Qui**, used with an antecedent, is either subject or indirect object, and in the first case may apply to things as well as to persons ; but when governed by a *preposition*, it can only refer to *persons* or *personified* things :

Les soldats **qui** sont partis hier.	*The soldiers* **who** *started yesterday.*
La pierre **qui** vient de tomber.	*The stone* **which** *has just fallen.*
L'homme **à qui** il s'était adressé.	*The man* **to whom** *he had applied.*
But La table **sur laquelle**, NOT sur qui . . .	*The table* **on which** . . .

§ **161.** **Qui**, without an antecedent, is used both as subject and object (direct or indirect), and refers to *persons* only :

Qui vit haï de tous ne saurait longtemps vivre.	**He who** *lives hated by all cannot live long.*
Prenez **qui** vous voudrez.	*Take* **whomsoever** *you like.*
Il a trouvé **à qui** parler.	*He has met his match.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Qui** is used absolutely without referring to persons in a few idiomatic expressions :

Voilà **qui** est fort étrange !	*That is very strange !*
Qui pis est.	*What is worse.*
Qui plus est.	*What is more.*

Obs. **Qui**, used absolutely and repeated, is sometimes found in the sense of *some . . . others . . .* :

Ils se mirent **qui** à rire, **qui** à chanter.	*They began* **some** *to laugh,* **others** *to sing.*

§ **162.** **Que**, which can never be governed by a preposition, is used as *direct* object, and refers both to persons and things :

Les **poètes** / Les **poèmes** } **que** nous préférons.	*The poets* / *The poems* } *we prefer.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Que** stands as indirect object, a preposition being understood, with a few verbs like **dormir, régner, vivre** :

Les trente ans **qu'il** (*i.e.* pendant lesquels il) a régné.	*The thirty year* **during which** *he reigned.*

Obs. **Que** is also used idiomatically in the sense of *what* :

Advienne **que** pourra.	*Come* **what** *may.*
Coûte **que** coûte.	*At any price.*

§ **163.** **Qui** and **que**, preceded by the demonstrative pronoun **ce**, are used in the sense of *what*, *that which*, the former as subject, the latter as object of the following verb :

Faites **ce qui** vous plaira. Faites **ce que** vous voudrez.	*Do what you like.*

Obs. **Ce que** is also used as appositive complement with **être** and verbs denoting *manner of being*, as **devenir, paraître, sembler :**

Je suis **ce que** j'étais.	*I am what I was.*
J'ignore **ce qu'**ils sont devenus.	*I do not know what has become of them.*

§ **164.** **Ce qui, ce que**, are besides used instead of **qui, que**, to translate *which* referring to a whole clause, *i.e.* meaning *a thing which :*

Il le fit, **ce qui** surprit tout le monde.	*He did it,* **which** *surprised everybody.*
Il le fit, **ce que** personne n'aurait jamais cru.	*He did it,* **a thing which** *no one would ever have believed.*

§ **165.** **Ce que** is often followed by the preposition **de** with a noun or an adjective :

Ce qu'il avait **de** courage l'abandonna.	*What courage he had, forsook him.*
Ce qu'il y a **de** plus amusant, c'est que . . .	*What is most amusing is, that . . .*

§ **166.** **Quoi**, which is used after a preposition, refers to an indefinite antecedent (**ce, rien**) or to a whole clause, or stands without any antecedent expressed :

C'est **en quoi** vous vous trompez.	*You are mistaken in that.*
Il lut la lettre, après quoi il me dit . . .	*He read the letter, after which he said to me . . .*
Vous avez **de quoi** causer.	*You have enough to talk about.*
Donnez-moi **de quoi** écrire.	*Give me writing materials.*
Il a **de quoi.**	*He is well off.*
Il n'y a pas **de quoi.**	*It is not worth while.* *It is not worth mentioning.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Quoi** is sometimes used—

(1) With reference to a thing mentioned before (but in that case **lequel** is preferable) :

C'est une condition sans **quoi** (*or* sans laquelle) je ne consentirai à rien.	*It is a condition without which I will not consent to anything.*

(2) Without any preposition, in a few idioms :

Quoi faisant. En **quoi** faisant.	*In doing which.*
Il ne connaît qui ni **quoi.**	*He pays attention to nothing.*
Sans dire ni **quoi** ni qu'est-ce.	*Without saying anything.*

§ **167.** **Dont**, which is never used interrogatively or absolutely, may refer either to persons or things of both genders and numbers, and is generally preferred to **de qui**, **duquel**, etc.:

La personne **dont** vous parlez.	*The person* **of whom** *you are speaking.*
Les bienfaits **dont** nous jouissons.	*The blessings* **which** *we enjoy.*
La manière **dont** il a agi.	*The way* **in which** *he has acted.*

EXCEPTION.—**Duquel, de laquelle**, etc., for persons or things, **de qui** for persons only, must be used instead of **dont**, when the relative pronoun depends on a noun preceded by a preposition:

Voici l'homme **au courage de qui** (*or* **duquel**) je dois la vie.	*Here is the man to whose courage I owe my life.*
La rue **au coin de laquelle** il demeure.	*The street at the corner of which he lives.*

§ **168.** The noun which follows **dont** always takes the article, and must be placed after the verb when standing as object or appositive complement:

L'écrivain dont vous venez de lire **la biographie.**	*The writer whose biography you have just read.*
La pauvre femme, dont il était **la seule joie.**	*The poor woman, whose only joy he was . . .*

§ **169.** **Dont** is used to express *extraction, lineage*; **d'où**, to denote *motion from, result, inference*:

La maison **dont** il sort.	*The* **family** *from which he descends.*
La maison **d'où** il sort.	*The* **house** *he is coming from.*
Voilà les faits **d'où** je **conclus** que . . .	*Such are the facts from which I conclude that . . .*

§ **170.** **Lequel, laquelle**, etc., may refer both to persons and things, and are used instead of **qui**—

(1) After a preposition, in speaking of *things*:

La cause **pour laquelle** (NOT pour qui) il avait tant fait.	*The cause* **for which** *he had done so much.*

Obs. In speaking of persons, either **qui** or **lequel** may be used:

L'homme **à qui** (*or* **auquel**) vous vous êtes adressé.	*The man to whom you have applied.*

(2) To avoid ambiguity, when the relative pronoun does not come immediately after its antecedent:

L'énergie de ce peuple, **laquelle** est extraordinaire . . .	*The energy of that people, which is extraordinary . . .*

Obs. **Lequel** is seldom used as subject or direct object, except in the latter case.

§ **171.** **Lequel**, preceded by a preposition, is often replaced by **où** in speaking of things, especially of time and place:

L'époque **où** nous vivons.	*The time in which we live.*
Le bois par **où** ils sont passés.	*The wood through which they passed.*

E.—*INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.*

§ **172.** The interrogative pronoun **qui** refers to *persons only*, and may be used as subject, direct or indirect object, and appositive complement:

Qui vous l'a dit?	*Who said it to you?*
Qui cherchez-vous?	*Whom are you looking for?*
A qui pensez-vous?	*Whom are you thinking of?*
Qui êtes-vous?	*Who are you?*

Obs. **Qui** may be replaced, when subject, by **qui est-ce qui**, in other cases by **qui est-ce que**:

Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit?	*Who said it to you?*
Qui est-ce que vous cherchez?	*Whom are you looking for?*
A qui est-ce que vous pensez?	*Whom are you thinking of?*

§ **173.** The interrogative pronoun *whose* is translated by **à qui** when possession is implied, by **de qui** in other cases, but never by **dont**:

A qui sont ces livres?	*Whose books are these?*
De qui êtes-vous fils?	*Whose son are you?*

§ **174.** The interrogative pronoun **que**, which is never governed by a preposition, generally stands—

(1) As direct object, referring to *things only*:

Que faites-vous?	*What are you doing?*
Qu'a-t-il dit?	*What did he say?*

(2) As appositive complement, with **être, devenir, paraître**, etc., referring both to persons and things:

Qu'est devenu son frère?	*What has become of his brother?*
Que sont devenus mes livres?	*What has become of my books?*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Que** is also used, in a few expressions, as subject or indirect object (a preposition being understood), and may stand adverbially instead of **pourquoi**:

Que vous semble de cela?	*What do you think of that?*
Que sert de pleurer?	*What is the use of crying?*
Que tardez-vous à partir?	*Why do you delay setting out?*
Que ne l'a-t-il fait plus tôt?	*Why did he not do it earlier?*

Obs. **Que** may generally be replaced by **qu'est-ce que**:

Qu'est-ce que vous faites?	*What are you doing?*
Qu'est-ce qu'est devenu son frère?	*What has become of his brother?*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Qu'est-ce que** cannot be used in the idiomatic expressions just mentioned or before an infinitive:

Que (NOT qu'est-ce que) faire?	*What is to be done?*

§ **175.** The interrogative pronoun *what*, when used as subject, must be rendered by **qu'est-ce qui** (see, however, § 174, Exc.):

Qu'est-ce qui vous fait rire?	*What makes you laugh?*

§ **176.** The interrogative pronoun **quoi** is used—

(1) After a preposition, instead of **que**:

A quoi pensez-vous?	*What are you thinking of?*
De quoi riez-vous?	*What are you laughing at?*

(2) As subject of a verb understood, followed by **de** and an adjective, generally in the comparative:

Quoi de nouveau?	*What news?*
Quoi de plus simple?	*What can be simpler?*

(3) By itself:

Quoi? Quoi!	*What? What!*

§ **177.** **Lequel, laquelle,** etc., refer both to persons and things:

Lequel de ces enfants est votre frère?	*Which of these children is your brother?*
De ces tableaux, **lequel** préférez-vous?	*Of these pictures, which do you prefer?*

§ **178.** **Quel, quelle,** etc., generally used before a noun, may also stand alone before the verb **être**, but must be replaced by **lequel, laquelle,** etc., when there is a genitive expressed or understood:

Quel livre lisez-vous?	*What book are you reading?*
Quel est le livre que vous lisez?	*What is the book you are reading?*
But **Lequel de ces livres** lisez-vous?	*Which of these books are you reading?*
Lequel lisez-vous?	*Which are you reading?*

F.—*INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.*

§ **179.** **Autrui** (=*another, others, our neighbour*), is invariable, and always stands as *complement*, generally after a preposition :

Le bien **d'autrui.**	*The property of others.*
Il se soucie peu du bonheur **d'autrui.**	*He little cares for other people's happiness.*

§ **180.** **Chacun, chacune,** which has no plural and may refer both to persons and things, must be used instead of **chaque,** to translate *each,* whenever it is not immediately followed by a noun :

Ces tableaux valent mille francs **chacun.**	*These pictures are worth a thousand francs each.*

Obs. 1. **Chacun** is often used absolutely in the sense of *every one* :

Chacun pour soi et Dieu pour tous.	*Every one for himself and God for all.*
Chacun prend son plaisir où il le trouve.	*Every one to his liking.*

Obs. 2. **Un chacun** is sometimes used familiarly in the same sense :

Un chacun doit mourir.	*Every one must die.*

§ **181.** When **chacun** refers to a plural of the first or second person, the corresponding possessive adjective is always **notre** or **votre** :

Nous parlerons **chacun** à **notre** tour.	*We will speak each in our turn.*

When it refers to a plural of the third person, **son** or **leur** may be used indifferently ; the latter, however, is generally preferred, if **chacun** precedes a direct object :

Ils ont reçu **chacun leur** part.	*They have each received their share.*

§ **182.** **On** (=*one, we, they, people*), can only be used as subject, and always requires the verb in the singular :

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.	*We often stand in need of one less than ourselves.*

Obs. 1. **On** may stand instead of a personal pronoun, singular or plural :

On ne vous oubliera pas.	**I** *will not forget you.*
Et **vous**, qu'**on** se retire.	*As for* **you**, **retire.**

Obs. 2. Used instead of **vous**, **on** often denotes anger, indignation or contempt :

Comment ! **on** ose me contredire !	*What !* **you** *dare to contradict me !*

§ **183.** The adjectives or participles connected with **on** are, as a rule, in the masculine singular :

On est agréablement **étonné** en arrivant.	*You are agreeably surprised on arriving.*
On n'est pas toujours **jeune** et **fort.**	*We are not always young and strong.*

Exceptions.—(1) The adjectives or participles must be put in the feminine, when **on** distinctly refers to a woman :

On n'est pas plus **charmante** qu'elle.	*It is impossible to be more charming than she is.*

(2) They must be put in the plural, when **on** refers to several persons between whom there is comparison or reciprocity :

Ici **on** est **égaux.**	*Here all are equal.*
Pourquoi se haïr, parce qu'**on** est **rivaux ?**	*Why should we hate each other, because we are rivals ?*

Obs. The participle of a reciprocal verb remains, however, invariable as a rule, when used with the auxiliary :

On s'est **querellé**, puis **on** s'est **réconcilié.**	*They quarrelled, and then made it up.*

§ **184.** **On** is often used with an active verb to translate the English passive voice, especially when the subject is a person, and the verb governs the preposition à :

On dit, on raconte.	**It is said, it is related.**
On ferma toutes les portes.	*All the gates* **were closed.**
On nous l'a dit.	**We have been told so.**
Vous permet-on de le faire ?	**Are you allowed** *to do it ?*

§ **185.** For the sake of euphony, the definite article is generally used before **on**—which was originally a noun (L. *homo*),—when it is preceded by **et, ou, où, qui, quoi, si :**

Et l'on n'a rien dit?	*And they said nothing?*
Celui à **qui l'on** attribue cet ouvrage.	*He to whom that work is attributed.*
Si l'on vient . . .	*If any one comes . . .*

EXCEPTION.—For the same reason the article is omitted after **et, on,** etc., when the next word begins with an **l :**

Et on le croit?	*And they believe it?*
Si on les écoutait tous . . .	*If we were to listen to them all . . .*

Obs. **L'on** is also frequently used after **que,** especially before words beginning with **con :**

Que l'on consente ou non.	*Whether they consent or not.*

§ **186. Personne,** which is always feminine as a noun, is generally masculine as a pronoun :

Personne ne sera assez **fou** pour le croire.	*No one will be foolish enough to believe it.*

EXCEPTION.—When **personne** distinctly refers to a woman, the adjectives must be put in the feminine :

Personne n'est plus **charmante** qu'elle.	*No one is more charming than she is.*

§ **187. Personne** is used—without *ne*—in the sense of *any one, anybody*—

(1) In interrogative sentences :

Personne a-t-il jamais rien vu de pareil?	*Has any one ever seen anything like it?*

(2) In dubitative sentences :

Je doute que **personne** le fasse.	*I doubt whether any one will do it.*

(3) After a comparative :

Vous le savez mieux que **personne.**	*You know it better than any one.*

(4) After **trop :**

Ils sont trop peu nombreux pour effrayer **personne.**	*They are too few to frighten any one.*

(5) After **sans** and **sans que :**

Sans déranger **personne.**	*Without disturbing any one.*
Sans que **personne** le voie.	*Without any one seeing it.*

§ **188.** **Personne**, meaning *no one, nobody*, requires **ne** before the verb :

Personne n'y songe.	*No one thinks of it.*

Obs. **Ne** is not used when the verb is understood :

Qui y songe ? **Personne.**	*Who thinks of it? No one.*
Personne dans les rues.	*No one in the streets.*

§ **189.** Although **chose** is feminine, **quelque chose** (=*anything, something*) is masculine :

Quelque chose est **arrivé.**	*Something has happened.*

Obs. 1. **Quelque chose** requires the preposition **de** before adjectives and adverbs :

Quelque chose d' amusant.	*Something amusing.*
Quelque chose de plus.	*Something more.*

Obs. 2. **Quelque chose que** (=*whatever thing, whatever*) is feminine :

Quelque chose que vous ayez **dite.**	*Whatever thing you may have said.*

§ **190.** (1) **Quelqu'un** (=*anybody, somebody*) has a plural (**quelques-uns**), but is always masculine, even when it distinctly refers to a woman :

Quelqu'un vous demande.—Qui? —**Une femme.**	*Some one wants you?—Who?—A woman.*
Quelques-uns le pensent.	*Some think so.*

(2) **Quelqu'un**, in the sense of *one, any, some*, has both a feminine and a plural (**quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes**), and may refer to things as well as to persons :

Donnez-moi **quelques-unes** de ces **fleurs.**	*Give me some of those flowers.*

Obs. **Quelqu'un**, like **quelque chose**, may be followed by *de* and an adjective :

Quelqu'un de brave et **de** prudent.	*Some one brave and prudent.*

§ **191.** **Quiconque** (=*whoever*) has no plural and is masculine :

Quiconque violait la loi était **mis** à mort.	*Whoever transgressed the law was put to death.*

EXCEPTION.—**Quiconque** is feminine when it distinctly refers to a woman :

Quiconque est mère est toujours **occupée.**	*Whoever is a mother is always busy.*

§ **192.** **Quiconque** generally plays a double part, *i.e.* is at the same time subject or object of two verbs, or else subject or object of one verb, and complement of some other word :

J'aime **quiconque** m'aime.	*I love whoever loves me.*
Il s'intéressait au sort de **quiconque** était malheureux.	*He took an interest in the fate of whoever was unhappy.*

§ **193.** *Whoever* is, as a rule, rendered by—

(1) **Qui que ce soit qui**, when it is only used as subject of one verb :

Qui que ce soit qui vous l'ait dit, vous pouvez être sûr que c'est impossible.	*Whoever has said it to you, you may be sure that it is impossible.*

(2) **Qui que, qui que ce soit que** or **quel que**, when it precedes a noun or pronoun subject :

Qui que vous soyez . . .	*Whoever you may be . . .*
Quels que soient vos amis . . .	*Whoever your friends may be . . .*

Obs. **Quel que**, which generally means *whatever*, is only used in the sense of *whoever* before a pronoun of the third person or a noun.

§ **194.** **Quoi que** is usually preferred to **quelque chose que**, to render *whatever thing*, *whatever* :

Quoi que vous fassiez . . .	*Whatever you may do . . .*

Obs. 1. **Quiconque** is followed by the indicative or conditional, but **qui que, qui que ce soit qui, quel que, quoi que**, require the *subjunctive.*

Obs. 2. Notice **qui que ce soit** (=*any one whatever*), **quoi que ce soit** (=*anything whatever*) :

Il en dit autant de **qui que ce soit.**	*He says the same of any one whatever.*
Il ne craint **quoi que ce soit.**	*He fears nothing whatever.*

§ **195.** **Rien** is used—without *ne*—in the sense of *anything*—

(1) In interrogative sentences :

Personne a-t-il jamais **rien** vu de pareil ?	*Has any one ever seen anything like it ?*

(2) In dubitative sentences :

Je doute que **rien** le satisfasse.	*I doubt whether anything will satisfy him.*

(3) After a comparative :

C'est plus beau que **rien** au monde.	*It is more beautiful than anything in the world.*

(4) After **trop** :

Il est trop irrésolu pour **rien** faire.	*He is too irresolute to do anything.*

(5) After **sans** and **sans que** :

Sans **rien** dire.	*Without saying anything.*
Sans que **rien** paraisse.	*Without anything appearing.*

§ **196.** **Rien**, meaning *nothing*, requires **ne** before the verb :

Il **n'**y a **rien** que je ne fasse pour vous.	*There is nothing I will not do for you.*

Obs. If the verb is understood, **ne** is not used :

Que vous a-t-il dit?— **Rien.**	*What did he say to you?— Nothing.*

EXCEPTION.—After a preposition or a conjunction, **rien** does not take **ne** when the negative does not bear upon the verb, *i.e.* when **rien** can only be translated by *nothing*, *nought* :

Il a réduit leurs arguments **à rien.**	*He has reduced their arguments to nothing.*

But if **rien** can be rendered by *not . . . anything*, **ne** *must* be used :

Il **n'**avait pensé **à rien.**	*He had not thought of anything.*

§ **197.** **Rien** requires the preposition **de** before adjectives and adverbs :

Rien de bon.	*Nothing good.*
Rien de moins.	*Nothing less.*

Obs. **Rien**, as a noun (meaning *a trifle*), has a plural, and naturally does not take **ne** :

Tous ces **riens** l'irritent.	*All these trifles irritate him.*

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

A.—*AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH THE SUBJECT.*

I.—Agreement with One Subject.

§ **198.** General Rule.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person:

L'obscurité **est** le royaume de l'erreur.	*Obscurity is the kingdom of error.*
Les meilleurs auteurs **parlent** trop.	*Even the best authors speak too much.*
Nous **rions**, d'autres **pleurent**.	*We laugh, others weep.*

Obs. 1. The verb **être** is sometimes found in the plural after a singular noun:

Leur nourriture **sont** des insectes.	*Their food consists of insects.*

But in such a construction—which had better be avoided—the exception is only apparent, as there is an inversion, and the real subject is the noun which follows the verb.

Obs. 2. Impersonal verbs agree with their *grammatical* subject **il**, and consequently remain in the singular, even when their *real* subject is a plural noun following:

Il **arriva** plusieurs accidents.	*There happened several accidents.*

A few, however, may have a noun—instead of il—for their subject, and if that noun is plural, they must, according to the rule, be put in the plural:

Qu'**importent** ses menaces?	*What do his threats matter?*
Les forts **tonnèrent**.	*The forts thundered.*

§ **199.** Special Rules:—

(1) Collective Nouns.—[*a*] If the subject is a collective noun in the singular, not followed by a noun in the genitive, the verb agrees with it, according to the general rule, and is put in the singular:

Le peuple, trahi par son souverain, le **déposa.**	*The people, betrayed by their sovereign, deposed him.*

Exceptions.—The verb is put in the plural—

(1) After **la plupart**:

La plupart **avaient** péri.	*The greater part had perished.*

(2) After **la moitié, le tiers, le quart**, etc., when expressing an *approximative*—not an exact—number:

La moitié **avaient** péri.	*Half (about) had perished.*
But La moitié **avait** péri.	*Half (exactly) had perished.*

(3) Generally after **le plus grand nombre, la plus grande partie, un grand nombre, une grande partie, une infinité**, etc., when a genitive plural, though not expressed, is necessarily implied:

Le plus grand nombre le **croyaient** coupable.	*The greater part thought him to be guilty.*

[*b*] If the subject is a collective noun followed by another noun in the genitive, the verb agrees with the more important of the two, *i.e.* (as a rule) with the collective noun when it is general, and with its complement, when the collective noun is partitive:[1]

La foule de ses amis l'**abandonna.**	*The multitude of his friends forsook him.*
Une foule d'amis l'**abandonnèrent.**	*A multitude of friends forsook him.*

Obs. It follows from the above rule that—

(*a*) When the idea expressed by the verb clearly refers to one of the nouns in particular, the verb must always agree with that noun:

Une nuée de traits **obscurcit** l'air.	*A cloud of darts obscured the air.*
Une nuée de barbares **désolèrent** le pays.	*A host of barbarians ravaged the country.*

[1] A collective noun is *general* when it expresses a distinct whole or a determinate number, in which case it is usually preceded by the definite article, as **l'armée, la foule, le peuple**; *partitive*, when it denotes a partial or indeterminate number, in which case it is generally preceded by the indefinite article, as **une foule, une multitude, une quantité.**

(*b*) After **le peu**, meaning a small, but sufficient quantity, the verb agrees with the following noun; but it agrees with **le peu**, when it denotes *insufficiency*:

Le peu de soldats qu'il avait **défirent** l'ennemi.	*The few soldiers he had defeated the enemy.*
Le peu de soldats qu'il avait lui **était** inutile.	*The few soldiers he had were useless to him.*

(*c*) After **force, nombre,** and **quantité,** not preceded by any determinative word, the verb always agrees with the following genitive:

Nombre (*or* quantité) de gens me l'**ont** dit.	*Many people have told me so.*
Force trompeurs **sont** trompés.	*Many deceivers are deceived.*

(2) ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.—If the subject is an adverb of quantity, the verb agrees with the complement of the adverb, whether expressed or understood:

Peu (de chose) **suffit** au sage.	*Little is enough for the wise.*
Beaucoup (de gens) le **croient.**	*Many think so.*

Accordingly, **plus d'un,** though expressing an idea of plurality, requires the verb in the singular, whilst **moins de deux,** on the contrary, requires it in the plural:

Plus d'une erreur **dépare** son œuvre.	*More than one error spoils his work.*

EXCEPTION.—**Plus d'un** requires the verb in the plural when there is reciprocity:

Plus d'un conjuré se **trahirent** l'un l'autre.	*Several conspirators betrayed each other.*

II.—Agreement with several Subjects.

§ **200.** When there are several subjects, the verb is put in the plural; and when the subjects are of different persons, in the first person, if there is one; if not, in the second (the pronouns **nous** or

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) The verb remains in the singular—

[*a*] When the various nouns which form the subject refer to

vous being, in that case, generally placed before the verb):

La raison et la liberté **sont** incompatibles avec la faiblesse.	*Reason and liberty are incompatible with weakness.*
Vous et moi nous **l'avons** vu.	*You and I have seen it.*
Vous et lui vous **l'avez** vu.	*You and he have seen it.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns **nous, vous,** *must* be used when the sentence is interrogative:

Vous et lui, **viendrez-vous** avec nous?	*Will you and he come with us?*

Obs. 2. They *cannot* be used when the subjects are followed by a relative pronoun:

C'est lui et moi **qui l'avons** fait.	*It was he and I who did it.*

one and the same person or thing:

Bertrand et Raton est une des meilleures comédies de Scribe.	Bertrand et Raton *is one of the best comedies of Scribe.*

[*b*] Generally when the subject consists of several infinitives or indefinite pronouns, and no idea of plurality is expressed in the rest of the sentence:

Lire et écrire **fait** tout son plaisir.	*Reading and writing is his only pleasure.*
Tout ce qui est beau, tout ce qui est vrai le **charme.**	*Everything beautiful and true charms him.*

[*c*] Sometimes after **l'un et l'autre,** when used distributively:

L'un et l'autre **peut** se dire.	*Either may be said.*

[*d*] Always after **l'un ou l'autre:**

L un ou l'autre **sera** nommé.	*Either the one or the other will be appointed.*

(2) The verb agrees with the *first* subject only—

[*a*] When the subjects are connected by **ainsi que, aussi bien que, autant que, comme, de même que, et non, mais non, moins que, plus que,** etc.:

Le chef, **ainsi que** les soldats, **était** abattu.	*The chief, as well as the soldiers, was disheartened.*

[*b*] Sometimes, when the first subject, though connected with the second by **et,** excludes it in the mind of the speaker:

L'ambition, **et** peut-être la haine, lui **fit** prendre ce parti.	*Ambition — or perhaps hatred—made him take that course.*

(In such a case it is preferable to use **ou.**)

(3) The verb agrees with the *last* subject only, when the subjects, not connected by any conjunction, are—

[*a*] Synonymous or nearly so :

Sa dignité, sa noblesse **frappa** tout le monde.	*His dignity, his noble bearing, struck every one.*

[*b*] Placed in gradation :

Un seul mot, un soupir, un coup d'œil nous **trahit.**	*One word, one sigh, one glance, betrays us.*

[*c*] Recapitulated by **aucun, chacun, chaque** (followed by a noun), **nul, personne, rien, tout,** etc. :

Prières, promesses, menaces, rien ne le **toucha.**	*Prayers, promises, threats, nothing moved him.*

[*d*] The verb further agrees with the *last* subject, when the subjects are connected by **ni** or **ou,** and the state or action expressed by the verb only refers to one (which is seldom the case with **ni,** and almost always with **ou**) :

Ni lui ni son frère ne **sera** choisi pour ce poste.	*Neither he nor his brother will be chosen for this post.*
Lui ou son frère **viendra.**	*He or his brother will come.*

Obs. If the subjects are of different persons, the verb must always be put in the plural :

Ni lui ni moi ne **serons** choisis pour ce poste.	*Neither he nor I will be chosen for this post.*
Son frère ou moi **nous viendrons.**	*Either his brother or I will come.*

III.—Agreement of the Verb *être* after the Pronoun *ce*.

§ **201.** The verb **être** preceded by **ce** is used in the singular before—

(1) One singular noun (or pronoun of the third person) :

C'est la terre qui tourne autour du soleil.	*It is the earth which turns round the sun.*

(2) Two or more nouns (or pronouns of the third person), the first of which is singular :

C'est sa vertu et ses talents que redoute la cour.	*It is his virtue and talents that the court fears.*
C'est lui et ses amis qui en sont cause.	*It is he and his friends who are the cause of it.*

(3) A pronoun of the first or second person, whether singular or plural :

C'est nous qui le disons.	*It is we who say so.*
C'est vous qui le dites.	*It is you who say so.*

(See also § 202, Exc.)

EXCEPTION.—The verb **être** preceded by **ce** is put in the plural before two or more nouns, the first of which is singular, when the pronoun **ce** refers to a plural noun expressed before :

Ses crimes, **c'étaient** sa vertu et ses talents.	*His crimes were his virtue and talents.*

§ **202.** The verb **être** preceded by **ce** is used in the plural before—

(1) A plural noun :

Ce sont mes amis.	*They are my friends.*

(2) A plural pronoun of the third person :

Ce sont eux.	*It is they.*

Obs. See also § 201, Exc.

EXCEPTIONS.—The verb **être** preceded by **ce** is used in the singular, even before a plural noun—

(1) When **ce** refers to a singular noun expressed before :

Sa seule récompense, **ce fut** des fers.	*Chains were his only reward.*

(2) When the noun is preceded by a numeral and used collectively, not distributively :

C'est dix heures qui viennent de sonner.	*It is ten o'clock which has just struck.*
C'est dix livres que je perds.	*It is ten pounds that I lose.*

(3) In the locution **si ce n'est** (= *except, unless it be*) :

Qui le fera, **si ce n'est** ses amis ?	*Who will do it, unless it be his friends ?*

Obs. The verb **être** immediately followed by **ce** is also used in the singular for the sake of euphony, so as to avoid such forms as **seront-ce, fussent-ce :**

Sera-ce ses amis qui le feront ?	*Will it be his friends who will do it ?*
Fût-ce ses amis qui le fissent !	*Even were it his friends who did it !*

§ **203.** The verb **être** with **ce**, followed by a plural noun, is found either in the singular or plural—

(1) When it is used impersonally, instead of **il y a**, etc. :

Ce n'était *or* ce n'étaient que fêtes.	*There was nothing but festivities.*

(2) When it precedes two nouns in opposition followed by the relative **que :**

C'est *or* ce sont leurs faveurs, et non leur colère, que vous devez craindre.	*It is their favours, and not their anger, that you must fear.*

(3) In an interrogative sentence, when the plural noun is followed by the relative **que :**

Est-ce là *or* sont-ce là les livres que vous m'avez promis ?	*Are these the books you promised me ?*

B.—*GOVERNMENT OF VERBS WITH NOUNS.*

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **204.** A verb cannot have two direct objects :

Il enseignait l'histoire à son élève.	*He taught his pupil history.*

EXCEPTIONS. — See, however, § 213.

Obs. It stands to reason that this rule does not apply to composite objects, *i.e.* to objects composed of two or more nouns which are—or might be—joined by a conjunction :

Dieu créa le ciel et la terre.	*God created heaven and earth.*

§ **205.** A verb cannot have two indirect objects to express the same relation :

C'est **à vous que** *or* c'est **vous à qui** je parle,	*It is to you that I am speaking.*
not C'est *à vous à qui* je parle.	

Obs. It stands to reason that this rule does not apply to composite objects :

C'est à vous et à votre frère que je parle.	*It is to you and your brother that I am speaking.*

§ **206.** For the same reason we should say—

C'est ici, c'est là **que** nous demeurons,	*It is here, it is there that we live.*
not C'est ici, c'est là *où* nous demeurons.	

§ **207.** If the object of a verb is composite, its several parts must be, as far as possible, of the same nature, *i.e.* two (or more) nouns or pronouns, two (or more) infinitives, etc. :

Ces enfants apprennent **la lecture, l'écriture** et **le calcul,**	*These children learn reading, writing, and arithmetic.*
or Ces enfants apprennent **à lire, à écrire** et **à compter,**	
not Ces enfants apprennent la lecture, l'écriture et *à compter.*	

§ **208.** Two or more verbs can govern the same noun if they all require a direct object, or an indirect object marked by the same preposition:

Nous avons vu et entendu **votre chanteur favori.**	*We have seen and heard your favourite singer.*

(Both *voir* and *entendre* govern the accusative.)

Il survécut et succéda **à son cousin.**	*He outlived and succeeded his cousin.*

(Both *survivre* and *succéder* govern the dative.)

§ **209.** If one verb is transitive and the other intransitive, or if, both being intransitive, they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter:

J'ai appris votre succès et je m'**en** réjouis.	*I have heard of, and rejoice at, your success.*
Qui n'aimerait un tel homme et ne se fierait **à lui?**	*Who would not love and trust such a man?*

§ **210.** Some verbs may be used with different constructions, the meaning generally changing, but sometimes remaining the same:

Abuser, *to deceive.*	Abuser de, *to misuse, to take advantage of.*
Applaudir quelqu'un, *to applaud some one.*	Applaudir à quelque chose, *to approve of, to praise.*
Assister, *to help.*	Assister à, *to be present at, to witness.*
Avoir affaire à, *to have to do with.*	Avoir affaire avec, *to do business with.*
Avoir affaire de, *to want, to be in need of.*	
Se cacher à quelqu'un, *to keep out of the sight of some one.*	Se cacher de quelqu'un, *to conceal something from some one.*
Convenir à (with *avoir*), *to suit.*	Convenir de (with *être*), *to agree.*
Croire, *to believe.*	Croire à *or* en, *to believe in.*
Demander quelqu'un, *to ask for some one.*	Demander quelque chose à quelqu'un, *to ask some one something.*
Insulter, *to insult.*	Insulter à, *to deride.*
Jouer de l'argent, *to play for money.*	Jouer à un jeu, *to play at a game.*
Jouer quelqu'un, *to deceive some one.*	Jouer d'un instrument, *to play on an instrument*
Se jouer à, *to meddle with.*	Se jouer de, *to sport with, to laugh at.*

Manquer son but, *to miss one's aim.*

Manquer à quelqu'un, *to be wanting in respect towards some one*, etc.

Pardonner quelque chose, *to forgive something.*

Prétendre, *to lay claim to.*

Répondre à, *to answer.*

Satisfaire quelqu'un, *to satisfy some one.*

Servir, *to serve, to wait on.*

Servir de, *to serve as.*

Souscrire un billet, *to sign a bill.*

User, *to wear out.*

Veiller quelqu'un, *to sit up with, to watch over, some one.*

Veiller sur quelqu'un, *to watch over some one*, etc.

Manquer à ses devoirs, *to neglect one's duties.*

Manquer de quelque chose, *to be deficient in something.*

Pardonner à quelqu'un, *to forgive some one.*

Prétendre à, *to aspire to.*

Répondre de, *to be responsible for.*

Satisfaire à ses devoirs, *to fulfil one's duties.*

Servir à, *to serve for.*

Se servir de, *to make use of.*

Souscrire à, *to assent to.*

User de, *to make use of.*

Veiller à quelque chose, *to attend to, to watch over, something.*

II.—Verbs governing a Noun without a Preposition (Accusative).

§ **211.** The noun-object stands without a preposition after—

(1) All essentially *transitive* verbs:

J'ai fini **mon travail.**	*I have finished my work.*
Entendez-vous **les cloches?**	*Do you hear the bells?*
Avant de consulter **votre goût,** consultez **votre bourse.**	*Ere fancy you consult, consult your purse.*

(2) Intransitive verbs accidentally used with a *transitive* force:

Courir **le cerf.**	*To hunt the stag.*
Descendre **la garde.**	*To come off guard.*
Échouer **un bâtiment.**	*To run a vessel aground.*
Manquer **son but.**	*To miss one's aim.*
Monter **un cheval.**	*To mount a horse.*
Vivre **une triste vie.**	*To lead a sad life.*

§ **212.** Some verbs which in English require a preposition before the noun do not require any in French:

Accepter, *to accept of.*	Écouter, *to listen to.*
Admettre, *to admit of.*	Envoyer chercher, *to send for.*
Approuver, *to approve of.*	Espérer, *to hope for.*
Attendre, *to wait for.*	Fournir, *to supply with.*
Chercher, *to look for.*	Payer, *to pay for.*
Demander, *to ask for.*	Regarder, *to look at.*
Désirer, souhaiter, *to wish for.*	Rencontrer, *to meet with,* etc.

Je n'approuve pas **sa conduite.**	*I do not approve* **of** *his conduct.*
N'écoutez pas **cet homme.**	*Do not listen* **to** *that man.*
Avez-vous envoyé chercher **vos bagages?**	*Did you send* **for** *your luggage?*
Nous regardions **les vagues.**	*We were looking* **at** *the waves.*

§ **213.** The verbs **croire** (=*to believe*), **créer** (=*to create*), **déclarer** (=*to declare*), **élire** (=*to elect*), **nommer** (=*to appoint*), **faire** (=*to make*), and the like, may govern two accusatives in apposition:

Tout le monde **les** croyait **artistes.**	*Every one thought they were artists.*
Ils firent **les deux frères tribuns.**	*They made the two brothers tribunes.*
Le parlement nomma **le duc régent** du royaume.	*The parliament appointed the duke regent of the kingdom.*

III.—Verbs governing an Indirect Object with *à* (Dative).

§ **214.** The indirect complement is marked by the preposition **à** chiefly when it denotes—

(1) The object to which something is *given* or *refused*, after verbs of *giving*, *pardoning*, *telling*, *teaching*, *advising*, *commanding*, *obeying*, *showing*, *permitting*, *pleasing*, *trusting*, *refusing*, *opposing*, *hurting*, etc.:

Le prince pardonna **aux** coupables.	*The prince forgave the culprits.*
Les soldats n'obéissaient plus **à** leurs chefs.	*The soldiers no longer obeyed their chiefs.*
Ne vous fiez pas **à** ce flatteur.	*Do not trust that flatterer.*
Il résista **à** toutes les prières.	*He resisted all entreaties.*
Sa réponse ne plut pas **à** la cour.	*His answer did not please the court.*
Il ne faut nuire **à** personne.	*We should harm no one.*

(2) The object to which something *belongs*, after **appartenir, avoir, être,** and often in speaking of *the parts of the body* to translate the English possessive case:

Ces livres appartiennent à mon frère.	*These books belong to my brother.*
A-t-il une maison à lui?	*Has he a house of his own?*
Toute la fortune est à sa femme.	*The whole fortune is his wife's.*
Une balle cassa la jambe à son cheval.	*A bullet broke his horse's leg.*

(3) The object from which something is *asked* or *taken*, after verbs of *demanding, buying, borrowing, taking, stealing*, etc.:

Il demanda une audience au roi.	*He asked for an audience from the king.*
Le malheureux empruntait à tous ses amis.	*The poor fellow borrowed from all his friends.*
Ôtez ce couteau à cet enfant.	*Take away this knife from this child.*

(4) The object to which *the action of the verb tends*, after verbs of *aiming, thinking, exhorting, employing, succeeding, providing, replying, comparing*, etc.:

Le peuple aspirait à la liberté.	*The people aspired to liberty.*
Inclinez son cœur à la clémence.	*Incline his heart to clemency.*
Je pensais à autre chose.	*I was thinking of something else.*
Il est parvenu à ses fins.	*He has reached his aim.*
Qui pourvoit (*or* subvient) à leurs besoins?	*Who provides for their wants?*
Quand répondrez-vous à cette lettre?	*When will you answer that letter?*

Obs. Amongst the verbs which require **à**, but do not govern the corresponding preposition in English, the following should also be noticed:

Aller à, Convenir à, } *to fit, to suit.*
Compâtir à, *to sympathise with.*
Importer à, *to concern.*
Obvier à, *to obviate.*
Présider à, *to preside over.*
Remédier à, *to remedy.*
Renoncer à, *to give up.*
Ressembler à, *to resemble.*
Survivre à, *to survive.*

IV.—Verbs governing an Indirect Object with *de* (Genitive).

§ **215.** The indirect complement is marked by the preposition **de** chiefly when denoting—

(1) *Origin, extraction*, after—

Aller, to go ; **arriver**, to arrive ; **dériver**, to derive ; **descendre**, to descend ; **monter**, to ascend ; **partir**, to start ; **sortir**, to go out ; **venir**, to come, etc., expressing motion *from* ; **être** expressing authorship ; **exiger**, to exact ; **obtenir**, to obtain ; **recevoir**, to receive, etc. :

Nous arrivons **d'**Italie.	*We arrive from Italy.*
Il n'était jamais sorti **de** son village.	*He had never left his village.*
La tragédie de Cinna est **de** Corneille.	*The tragedy of Cinna is by Corneille.*
Vous exigez trop **de** lui.	*You exact too much from him.*
Il obtint sa grâce **du** roi.	*He obtained his pardon from the king.*

(2) *Separation, difference, nearness*, after—

Approcher, to approach ; **décourager**, to discourage ; **détacher**, to detach; **détourner**, to deter, to turn away ; **différer**, to differ ; **dissuader**, to dissuade ; **distinguer**, to distinguish ; **éloigner**, to remove ; **séparer**, to separate, etc. :

Approchez-vous **du** feu.	*Come nearer to the fire.*
Les mauvais exemples détournent **de** la vertu.	*Evil examples are discouragements to virtue.*
Ma position diffère beaucoup **de** la sienne.	*My position is very different from his.*
Pouvez-vous distinguer l'un **de** l'autre	*Can you distinguish one from the other?*
Il nous fallut le séparer **de** ses compagnons.	*We were obliged to separate him from his companions.*

(3) *Protection, relief, deliverance,* after—

Abriter, to shelter ; **débarrasser,** to rid ; **décharger,** to unload, to discharge ; **défendre,** to defend ; **dégager,** to free ; **délier,** to release ; **délivrer,** to deliver ; **dispenser,** to dispense ; **garantir,** to shield ; **libérer,** to liberate ; **préserver,** to preserve ; **protéger,** to protect ; **sauver,** to save, etc. :

C'est ainsi qu'il se débarrassa **de** ses ennemis.	*Thus he got rid of his enemies.*
Le pape les délia **de** leur serment.	*The Pope released them from their oath.*
Je vous dispense **de** cette corvée.	*I exempt you from this tax.*
Le ciel nous préserve **d'**un pareil malheur !	*May Heaven preserve us from such a misfortune !*

(4) *Scarcity, want, deprivation,* after—

S'abstenir, to abstain ; **avoir besoin,** to want ; **être à court,** to be short ; **manquer,** to lack ; **se passer de,** to do without ; **dépouiller,** to strip ; **priver,** to deprive, etc. :

Je m'abstiens **de** tout commentaire.	*I abstain from all comment.*
Nous sommes à court **d'**argent.	*We are short of money.*
Il ne manque **de** rien.	*He lacks nothing.*
Elle ne peut se passer **de** lui.	*She cannot do without him.*
Tous les deux furent dépouillés **de** leur charge.	*They were both deprived of their office.*

(5) *Plenty, fulness, contents, material,* after—

Abreuver, to steep ; **accabler,** to overwhelm ; **armer,** to arm ; **charger,** to load ; **combler,** to overwhelm ; **couvrir,** to cover ; **écraser,** to crush ; **entourer, envelopper, environner,** to surround ; **fourmiller,** to swarm ; **grever,** to burden ; **munir,** to furnish ; **orner, parer,** to adorn ; **planter,** to plant ; **pourvoir,** to provide ; **regorger,** to overflow ; **remplir,** to fill ; **semer,** to sow ; **tapisser,** to hang, to deck ; **vêtir,** to clothe, etc. :

La foule { l'abreuva / l'accabla } **d'**injures.	*The crowd overwhelmed him with insults.*
Armez-vous **de** courage.	*Arm yourself with courage.*
Nous étions entourés **d'**ennemis.	*We were surrounded by enemies.*
La terre fourmille **de** vie.	*The earth is teeming with life.*
Toutes les rues sont plantées **de** grands arbres.	*All the streets are planted with large trees.*
Il avait tapissé sa chambre **de** dessins.	*He had hung his room with drawings.*

(6) *Cause, manner, instrument,*—also the *agent* after passive verbs expressing *moral feeling,* as **aimer, détester, estimer,** and the three verbs **accompagner, précéder, suivre :**

Le pauvre enfant tremblait **de** froid.	*The poor child was trembling with cold.*
Il les examina **d'**un air sévère.	*He examined them with a stern look.*
Elle écoutait **de** toutes ses oreilles.	*She had all her ears open.*
De quel instrument jouez-vous?	*What instrument do you play?*
Il était estimé **de** tout le monde.	*He was esteemed by everybody.*
Le prisonnier entra, accompagné **de** son geôlier.	*The prisoner entered, accompanied by his gaoler.*

(7) *Joy, sorrow, fear, surprise,* and other emotions, after—

S'affliger, to grieve ; **avoir peur,** to fear ; **avoir pitié,** to pity ; **brûler,** to burn ; **se contenter,** to be satisfied ; **se désoler,** to be distressed ; **gémir,** to groan ; **jouir,** to enjoy ; **s'inquiéter,** to be concerned ; **se lamenter,** to lament ; **se plaindre,** to complain ; **se réjouir,** to rejoice ; **se repentir,** to repent ; **trembler,** to tremble, etc. :

Il s'affligeait **des** malheurs de son pays.	*He was grieved at the misfortunes of his country.*
Il faut vous contenter **de** peu.	*You must be satisfied with little.*
Rome jouissait alors **de** la liberté.	*Rome was then enjoying liberty.*
Je me réjouis **de** votre succès.	*I rejoice at your success.*
Se repent-il **de** ses fautes?	*Does he repent of his faults?*

(8) *Thanks, praise, congratulation, reward, blame, accusation, threat, punishment,* etc., after—

Accuser, to accuse ; **blâmer,** to blame ; **complimenter,** to compliment ; **dédommager, indemniser,** to indemnify ; **féliciter,** to congratulate ; **se glorifier,** to glory ; **louer,** to praise ; **menacer,** to threaten ; **payer,** to pay ; **punir,** to punish ; **récompenser,** to reward ; **remercier,** to thank ; **se vanter,** to boast, etc. :

Ses ennemis l'accusèrent **de** magie.	*His enemies accused him of witchcraft.*
Qui m'indemnisera **de** mes pertes?	*Who will indemnify me for my losses?*
Le roi le félicita **de** cette brillante victoire.	*The king congratulated him on his brilliant victory.*
Il nous menaça **de** sa colère.	*He threatened us with his anger.*
Je vous remercie **de** toute votre bonté.	*I thank you for all your kindness.*

Obs. Among the verbs which require **de**, but do not govern a corresponding preposition in English (*i.e. of* or *from*), the following should also be noticed :

Abuser **de**, *to abuse.*
s'acquitter **de**, *to discharge.*
s'apercevoir **de**, *to perceive.*
se défier **de**, } *to distrust.*
se méfier **de**, }
déjeuner **de**, *to breakfast on.*
se démettre **de**, *to give up.*
dépendre **de**, *to depend on.*
dîner **de**, *to dine on.*
disconvenir **de**, *to disown, to deny.*
douter **de**, *to doubt.*
se douter **de**, *to suspect.*
médire **de**, *to slander.*
se mêler **de**, *to meddle with.*
se moquer **de**, } *to laugh at.*
rire **de**, }
se nourrir **de**, } *to feed on.*
se repaître **de**, }
profiter **de**, *to profit by.*
se souvenir **de**, *to remember.*
triompher **de**, *to triumph over.*
se tromper **de**, *to mistake.*
user **de**, *to use.*
vivre **de**, *to live on.*

C.—*MOODS AND TENSES.*

The Indicative.

§ **216.** General Rule.—The indicative mood states a fact or an opinion in a positive manner, and consequently is used, in dependent as well as in principal sentences, to express certainty (or very high probability) :

Je **pense**, donc je **suis**.	*I think, therefore I exist.*
Il **est** certain que la terre **est** ronde.	*It is certain that the earth is round.*

Use of the Tenses of the Indicative.—

§ **217.** General Observation. —In English there are different ways of expressing the same tense ; in French there is only one, whatever the mood may be :

J'aime.	*I love ; I do love ; I am loving.*
J'écrirai.	*I shall (or will) write ; I shall (or will) be writing.*
Avoir ri.	*To have laughed ; to have been laughing.*

Exception.—The past conditional has two forms, the second being borrowed from the pluperfect subjunctive :

J'aurais aimé. } J'eusse aimé. }	*I should have liked.*

SPECIAL RULES.—

§ **218.** PRESENT.—The present is used to express—

(1) A state or action actually going on at the present time, or of usual occurrence:

Je **vois** que **vous vous amusez.**	*I see that you are enjoying yourself.*
Il se lève tous les matins à six heures.	*He gets up every morning at six.*

Obs. Though the state or action should have begun long ago, the present must be used instead of the English *present perfect*, if it is still lasting (with **depuis, depuis que, depuis quand, il y a . . . que, voici . . . que, voilà . . . que**):

Depuis quand demeurez-vous ici?	*How long have you been living here?*
J'y demeure depuis six mois.	*I have been living here for six months.*
Il y a vingt ans **que nous le connaissons.**	*We have known him for twenty years.*
Nous le connaissons depuis vingt ans.	

(2) A thing true at all times, even though the verb in the principal sentence should be in the past:

Il leur apprit le premier que l'âme **est** immortelle.	*He was the first who taught them that the soul is immortal.*

EXCEPTION.—After verbs of *declaring, thinking, knowing*, etc., used in a past tense, the verb of the dependent sentence is put in the imperfect instead of the present—even when speaking of a state or action still lasting, or a thing true at all times—if the statement of the dependent sentence is not considered in a general point of view, but distinctly refers to the time marked by the first verb:

Le roi se dit que l'honneur **valait** mieux que la vie.	*The king said to himself that honour was worth more than life.*

§ **219.** The present is further used—

(1) Instead of the Past:

[*a*] To give more animation to a narrative:

Le général Ziethen avait réussi à gagner du temps. Il **retire** ses troupes. Un des bataillons **est** rompu et pris presque en entier; mais la division **atteint** la lisière du bois, où le général **déploie** ses tirailleurs.	*General Ziethen had succeeded in gaining time. He withdrew his troops. One of the battalions was broken and taken almost to a man; but the division reached the skirts of the wood, where the general deployed his sharpshooters.*

[*b*] With the verb **être** preceded by **ce** and followed by **que**, also for the sake of vividness :

C'est là que nous demeurions.	*It was there that we used to live.*
C'est alors que je l'ai vu pour la première fois.	*It was then that I first saw him.*
C'est en 1715 que mourut Louis XIV.	*It was in* 1715 *that Louis XIV. died.*

[*c*] With the verbs **faire** and **venir** used idiomatically to express that something has just occurred :

La nouvelle **vient d'arriver.** La nouvelle **ne fait que d'arriver.**	*The news has just arrived.*

(2) Instead of the future :

[*a*] In familiar style, to express that something will be done at a time generally not far distant :

Nous **partons** jeudi prochain.	*We will start next Thursday.*

[*b*] After the conjunction **si** meaning *if* (see, however, § 227, *Obs.* 1) :

Nous serons tous enchantés, si vous **venez.**	*We shall all be delighted if you will come.*

(For the future used instead of the present, see § 227.)

§ **220.** IMPERFECT.—The imperfect (**je pensais** = *I was thinking, I did think, I used to think, I thought*) is used—

(1) For a state or action which was going on at some time altogether past, whether specified or not :

Je **voyais** encore le bateau qui m'avait amené,	*I could still see the boat which had brought me,*

and consequently for a state or action which had already begun, but was not yet over, when something else came to pass :

Il **pleuvait** quand il est parti.	*It was raining when he went away.*

Obs. Though the state or action should have begun long before, the imperfect must be used—instead of the English *pluperfect*—with **depuis, depuis que, depuis quand, il y avait . . . que, voici . . . que, voilà . . . que :**

Depuis quand demeuriez-vous ici ?	*How long* **had you been living** *here ?*
Je **demeurais** ici **depuis** six mois. **Il y avait** six mois **que** je **demeurais** ici.	*I* **had been living** *here for six months.*

(2) For a state or action of habitual or repeated occurrence in the past :

Il se **levait** tous les matins à six heures.	*He got up every morning at six.*
Les perles **étaient** fort estimées des Romains.	*Pearls were greatly valued by the Romans.*

Obs. It is a common error to think that a past state or action must be expressed by the imperfect, if it lasted for a long time. Even if it should have lasted for centuries, it must be expressed by the *preterite*, whenever the mind does not consider it as habitual or simultaneous with something else, but purely as an *historical* fact :

La monarchie **fleurit** pendant de siècles.	*Monarchy flourished for centuries.*

(3) For two or more states or actions occurring simultaneously at some past time :

J'étais à Paris pendant que vous **étiez** à Londres.	*I was in Paris whilst you were in London.*
Elle **regardait** l'enfant qui **souriait** tristement.	*She was looking at the child, who was smiling sadly.*

(4) To describe the nature, condition, and qualities of persons or things at some past time :

Il **avait** l'air noble et sévère.	*He had a noble and severe countenance.*
L'ordre qu'il avait reçu **était** difficile à exécuter.	*The order he had received was not easy to carry out.*
A droite s'**élevait** une haute montagne.	*To the right rose a high mountain.*

(5) To explain and comment upon the principal events of a narrative :

Comme les vivres **manquaient**, il leur fallut se rendre.	*As they were short of provisions, they were compelled to surrender.*

(6) To report thoughts or words relating to some past time, in indirect statements :

Nous crûmes que tout **était** perdu.	*We thought that everything was lost.*
Il me salua et me demanda comment **j'allais.**	*He saluted me and asked me how I was.*

(7) To express a condition or supposition after **si**, when the principal verb is in the conditional :

Il pourrait le faire, s'il **voulait**.	*He could do it, if he would.*

§ **221**. The imperfect is further used—for the sake of vividness—

(1) Instead of the preterite :

Arrivés à onze heures, nous **partions** à midi.	*Arrived at eleven, we started at twelve.*

(2) Instead of the past conditional :

S'il n'avait accouru à mon aide, je **périssais.**	*If he had not run to my help, I should have perished.*

§ **222**. Preterite or Past Definite.—The preterite or past definite denotes something altogether completed at a time entirely over, and generally far distant. It is used—

(1) For an action considered in a purely historical point of view :

Dieu **créa** le ciel et la terre.	*God made heaven and earth.*
Henri IV **fut** assassiné.	*Henry IV. was murdered.*

(2) For all events which bring the narrative nearer to its close, *i.e.* which came to pass—

[*a*] Whilst something else was already going on :

Il songeait déjà à partir, lorsqu'il nous **aperçut.**	*He was already thinking of going away when he caught sight of us.*

[*b*] After something else had already occurred :

Quand les vivres manquèrent, il leur **fallut** bien se rendre.	*When they were short of provisions, they could not but surrender.*

(See, however, next section.)

Obs. When *it was* is not translated by the present according to § 219 (1, *b*), the verb **être** is, by attraction, put in the preterite, if the following verb is in that tense :

Ce **fut** la cour qui **triompha.**	*It was the court which triumphed.*

§ **223**. Past Indefinite.—The past indefinite denotes something altogether completed in a period—

(1) Not entirely over at the time of speaking :

Je **me suis levé** à six heures ce matin.	*I got up at six this morning.*
Il **a** beaucoup **plu** cette semaine, ce mois-ci, cet été, cette année.	*It has rained a good deal this week, this month, this summer, this year.*

(2) Entirely over, but generally not far distant, whether distinctly specified or indeterminate :

Je les **ai vus** l'autre jour.	*I saw them the other day.*
Nous **sommes arrivés** hier à midi et demi.	*We arrived yesterday at half-past twelve.*

(3) Entirely over, and even far distant, in *conversation* and *correspondence*, or when the effect of the action is still lasting :

Je les **ai vus** pour la première fois il y a eu hier vingt ans.	*I saw them for the first time twenty years ago yesterday.*

Obs. 1. The past indefinite is also used sometimes instead of the future past :

Attendez, j'**ai fini** dans cinq minutes.	*Wait, I shall have done in five minutes.*

Obs. 2. For the use of the future past instead of the past indefinite, see § 227, Exc. 2.

§ **224.** It follows from the above rules that, in a narrative, the imperfect is chiefly used to describe a state or action which had already begun, but was not fully accomplished at the time ; the preterite to relate events as they follow each other in the body of the narrative, and the past indefinite to represent them in any intervening dialogue :

Il **marcha** le lendemain sur Edimbourg à la tête de ses gardes. Deux régiments **étaient** en quartier dans la ville : il **cassa** les officiers qu'il **savait** contraires à ses desseins, il **fit** arrêter ceux dont il **se méfiait** le plus ; et, ayant assemblé les troupes, il leur **déclara** les motifs de sa détermination : "L'armée d'Angleterre, dit-il, **a chassé** le parlement . . ."	*The next day he marched upon Edinburgh at the head of his guards. Two regiments were quartered in the town : he cashiered the officers whom he knew to be opposed to his designs, had those he distrusted most arrested, and, having assembled the troops, he declared to them the motives of his determination : "The army of England," said he, "has turned out the Parliament . . ."*

Hence the **imperfect** may be called the **descriptive**, the **preterite** the **historical**, and the **past indefinite** the **colloquial** past tense.

§ **225.** PLUPERFECT.—The use of the pluperfect is generally the same in French as in English :

Il n'**avait** pas encore **commencé** que j'**avais** déjà **fini**.	*He had not yet begun when I had already finished.*
Si je l'**avais su** plus tôt, j'aurais agi différemment.	*If I had known it sooner, I should have acted otherwise.*

§ **226.** PAST ANTERIOR.—The past anterior is used—

(1) Instead of the pluperfect, after the conjunctions of time **à peine . . . que, aussitôt que, dès que, ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que, après que, lorsque, quand,** to denote an action which had taken place *immediately* before another :

À peine nous **eut-il vus qu'**il s'enfuit.	*He had scarcely seen us when he ran away.*
Quand nous l'**eûmes** bien **grondé,** nous lui permîmes de se retirer.	*When we had thoroughly scolded him, we allowed him to retire.*

(2) Instead of the preterite, with a few adverbs and adverbial expressions of time, to describe with more vividness the rapidity of an action :

Nous l'**eûmes bientôt démasqué.**	*We soon unmasked him.*
Il m'avait donné un quart d'heure, je l'**eus fait en cinq minutes.**	*He had given me a quarter of an hour, I did it in five minutes.*

EXCEPTIONS.— (1) The French pluperfect is often used to translate the English perfect in speaking of an action which was completely over at the time referred to :

Il mourut comme il **avait vécu.**	*He died as he lived.*

(2) The English pluperfect is, in a few cases, rendered in French—

[*a*] By the imperfect (see § 220, (2) *Obs.*).

[*b*] By the past anterior (see § 226).

EXCEPTION. — The pluperfect must be used, however, in both cases, when the action was habitual or repeated :

À peine nous **avait-il vus** qu'il s'enfuyait.	*He had no sooner seen us, than he used to run away.*
Il me donnait un quart d'heure, mais je l'**avais** toujours **fait** en cinq minutes.	*He used to give me a quarter of an hour, but I had always done it in five minutes.*

Obs. With adverbs and expressions of time, when the action is not presented as the continuation of the narrative, but considered *after* it has been accomplished, the past anterior evidently cannot be used, since the preterite could not :

Quelle fut sa surprise, quand il vit que je l'**avais fait** en cinq minutes !	*What was his surprise, when he saw that I had done it in five minutes !*
Quelle fut sa surprise ! Je l'**avais fait** en cinq minutes.	*What was his surprise ! I had done it in five minutes.*

§ **227.** FUTURE.—The use of the future is generally the same in French as in English:

Nous vous **attendrons** jusqu'à une heure.	*We will wait for you until one o'clock.*
Il **sera parti** avant que vous ayez fini.	*He will be gone before you have finished.*
Tu **aimeras** ton prochain comme toi-même.	*Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.*

Obs. 1. It has already been observed that the present, not the future, is used after **si** meaning *if* (§ 219, (2), [*b*]).

The future, however, is used when no mere condition or supposition is expressed, but *an undoubted fact*:

Si nous **mourrons** tous un jour, c'est que nous avons tous péché.	*If we shall all die some day, it is because we have all sinned.*

Obs. 2. It is obvious that, when the auxiliary *will* does not express futurity, but an act of the will or a habit, the *present*, not the future, should be used in French:

Voulez-vous venir avec nous?—Je veux bien.	**Will you come** *with us?—Yes, I will.*
Si je parle, il m'**interrompt** toujours.	*If I speak, he* **will** *always* **interrupt** *me.*

In subord. clauses with the indic. future tense is used for future time.

Future time often expressed as "going to" to go + infin

EXCEPTIONS. — (1) The future present and future past are used in French, when the verb denotes a future action, to render the English present and perfect—

[*a*] After conjunctions of *time* (except, of course, such as govern the subjunctive):

Je lui en parlerai **quand** je le **verrai.**	*I will speak of it to him when I see him.*
Portez-moi votre livre **la prochaine fois que** vous **viendrez.**	*Bring me your book next time you come.*
Je vous le donnerai **dès que** je l'**aurai lu.**	*I will give it to you as soon as I have read it.*

[*b*] After **comme, aussi . . . que, si . . . que, plus . . . que, moins . . . que, qui, que, dont, quiconque, celui qui,** etc., **ce qui,** etc.:

Faites **comme** il vous **dira.**	*Do as he tells you.*
Y aille **qui voudra.**	*Let him go who likes.*
Advienne **que pourra.**	*Come what may.*
Adressez-vous à la première personne **que** vous **verrez.**	*Apply to the first person you see.*
Vous suivrez **celui qui** vous **ouvrira.**	*You will follow him who opens to you.*
Nous prendrons **ce qu'**il **y aura.**	*We will take whatever there is.*

(2) The future past is sometimes used instead of the past indefinite, to express *supposition, probability*:

Il aura manqué le train.	**Doubtless he has missed** *the train.*
Vous **l'aurez mal compris.**	*You* **must have misunderstood** *him.*

(3) *Vice versâ*, the past indefinite is sometimes used instead of the future past (see § 223, *Obs.* 1):

J'ai fini dans un instant.	*I shall have done in an instant.*

The Conditional.

§ **228.** The conditional is used to denote an action which would take place (or would have taken place) if a condition, expressed or understood, was (or had been) fulfilled—

(1) In a principal sentence :

Il **serait** ministre, s'il voulait.	*He would be a minister, if he chose.*
Il **aurait été** ministre, s'il avait voulu.	*He would have been a minister, if he had chosen.*
Que **feriez-vous** à ma place? —J'**attendrais.**	*What would you do in my place?—I should wait.*
Qu'**auriez-vous fait** à ma place?—J'**aurais attendu.**	*What would you have done in my place? —I should have waited.*

(2) In a dependent clause in connection with a verb in the conditional or in a past tense, provided the subjunctive is not required—

[*a*] With a conjunction :

Puisque nous **serions** tous ensemble, qu'**auriez-vous** à craindre?	*Since we should be all together, what would you have to fear?*
Puisque nous **aurions été** tous ensemble, qu'**auriez-vous eu** à craindre	*Since we should have been all together what would you have had to fear?*
Je savais que vous **seriez** désappointé, si vous appreniez son départ.	*I knew you would be disappointed, if you heard of his departure.*

Obs. Notice especially this use of the conditional—contrary to English custom—after **comme** and conjunctions of *time* :

Vous auriez fait **comme** vous **auriez voulu.**	*You would have done as you liked.*
Si vous me prêtiez votre livre, je vous le rendrais **dès que** je l'**aurais lu.**	*If you lent me your book, I should return it to you as soon as I had read it.*

[*b*] With **qui, que, dont, celui qui,** etc., **ce qui,** etc., **quiconque,** also contrary to English custom :

Je m'adresserais à la première personne **que** je **verrais.**	*I should apply to the first person I saw.*
Irait **qui voudrait.**	*He who liked could go.*
Vous prendriez **ce qui resterait.**	*You would take what remained.*

§ **229.** The conditional is also used to express—

(1) A future action, not subject to any condition, after the verbs **croire, penser, dire, affirmer, décréter, savoir,** etc., in a past tense, provided the subjunctive is not required:

Nous pensions que vous **partiriez** avec nous.	*We thought you would start with us.*
Il avait dit qu'il ne **viendrait** pas.	*He had said that he would not come.*
Je savais qu'il **réussirait.**	*I knew he would succeed.*

(2) A doubt with regard to a future action, after the conjunction **si** governed by a verb in a *past* tense:

J'ignorais si vous **accepteriez** ou non.	*I did not know whether you would accept or not.*
Saviez-vous s'il **viendrait**?	*Did you know whether he would come?*

(3) A supposition—

[*a*] After **quand, quand même,** or with **que**:

Quand il me le **dirait,** je ne le croirais pas. / Il me le **dirait** que je ne le croirais pas.	*Even if he told me so, I should not believe it.*

[*b*] Sometimes, but very seldom, without any conjunction, by using the interrogative form:

Devrais-je (*or better,* dussé-je) tout perdre, je le ferais.	*Though I should lose everything, I should do it.*

EXCEPTION.—The future is generally used instead of the conditional after declarative verbs, when the fact is looked upon as certain:

Dieu a dit que sa parole **durera** éternellement.	*God has said that His Word shall last for ever.*

Accordingly we should say,

"On m'a assuré que vous **viendriez** demain,"

if we doubt the accuracy of the statement, but—

"On m'a assuré que vous **viendrez,**"

if we have no doubt about it.

Obs. After **si,** meaning *if,* not *whether,* the present conditional is replaced by the imperfect indicative, and the first form of the past conditional by the pluperfect, but its second form (or pluperfect subjunctive) may be used:

Si vous le **voyiez,** vous auriez pitié de lui.	*If you saw him, you would pity him.*
Si vous l'**aviez** (*or* **l'eussiez**) **vu,** vous auriez eu pitié de lui.	*If you had seen him, you would have pitied him.*

§ **230.** The conditional is further used in a principal sentence to express—

(1) A feeling of surprise or indignation, in questions and exclamations:

Les vents nous **auraient-ils exaucés?**	*Have the winds indeed been favourable to us?*
Se pourrait-il qu'il l'eût fait?	*Is it possible that he can have done it?*
Moi, je vous **abandonnerais!**	*I, forsake you!*

Obs. In the latter case, the subjunctive or infinitive might be used:

Moi, que je vous abandonne! / Moi, vous abandonner!	*I, forsake you!*

(2) A command, request, duty, desire, etc., in a less affirmative manner than the indicative:

Vous **feriez bien** de travailler maintenant.	*You would do well to work now.*
Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me donner ce livre?	*Would you be kind enough to give me that book?*
Il **faudrait** écouter une autre fois.	*You must listen another time.*
Je **voudrais bien** qu'il fût ici!	*I wish he were here!*

(3) A statement that the speaker repeats without being able or willing to vouch for its accuracy:

A l'en croire, la république **serait** en danger.	*If we are to believe him, the republic is in danger.*
D'après le *Temps*, la paix **aurait été** déjà **signée.**	*According to the* Temps, *peace has already been signed.*

§ **231.** Observe that—

(1) *Would* and *should* must often be translated by the subjunctive (see the syntax of that mood).

(2) *Should*, when implying obligation, and *ought*, are translated by the present or past conditional of **devoir**, according as they are followed by a present or past infinitive:

Vous **devriez** le faire.	*You ought to do it.*
Vous **auriez dû** le faire.	*You ought to have done it.*

Obs. Might and *could* are likewise rendered by the present or past conditional of **pouvoir**:

Vous **pourriez** venir.	*You might come.*
Vous **auriez pu** venir.	*You might have come.*

(3) *Would*, when not the sign of the conditional (or the subjunctive), is rendered—

[*a*] By the imperfect of the verb or sometimes of **vouloir**, if it denotes habit or repetition:

Si je parlais, il m'**interrompait** toujours.	*If I spoke, he* **would** *always interrupt me.*
La porte ne **voulait** pas fermer.	*The door* **would** *not shut.*

[*b*] By the imperfect, preterite, or past indefinite (as the case may be) of **vouloir**, if it expresses an act of the will:

Il était fâché, mais ne **voulait** pas le paraître.	*He was angry, but* **would** *not appear so.*
Je l'appelai, mais il ne **voulut** pas venir. Je l'ai appelé, mais il n'**a** pas **voulu** venir.	*I called him, but he* **would** *not come.*

(4) *I wish*, meaning *I should like*, is translated by the conditional:

Je **voudrais, je voudrais bien**, qu'il fût ici.	*I wish he were here.*

(5) **Je ne saurais** is often used instead of **je ne puis**:

Je ne saurais le nier.	*I cannot deny it.*

The Imperative.

§ **232.** The use of the imperative is generally the same in French as in English:

Frappe, mais **écoute.**	*Strike, but listen.*
Allons-nous-en tout de suite.	*Let us go away directly.*
Travaillez jusqu'à mon retour.	*Work until I come back.*
Ayez fini quand je reviendrai.	*Have done when I return.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) The imperative is often replaced by the infinitive in official language, documents, notes, examination papers:

Répondre au plus tôt.	*Answer as soon as possible.*
Revoir cette page.	*Revise this page.*
Consulter le dictionnaire.	*Consult the dictionary.*
Voir chapitre III.	*See chapter III.*
Donner les règles du subjonctif.	*Give the rules of the subjunctive.*

Obs. In both languages the imperative is sometimes replaced—

(1) By the future :

Ne l'oubliez pas au moins !	*Mind you do not forget it !*
Or Vous ne l'**oublierez** pas au moins !	*You will be sure not to forget it !*

(2) By the present, with certain verbs :

Ne l'oubliez pas,	*Do not forget it.*
Or Il ne **faut** pas l'oublier.	*You must not forget.*
Faites-le à l'instant,	*Do it at once.*
Or Vous **allez** le faire à l'instant.	*You are going to do it at once.*

(2) The imperatives **va, allons, allez, voyons,** are often used idiomatically :

Va, je ne te hais point.	**You know** *I do not hate you.*
Allons, allons, du courage !	**Now then,** *courage !*
Allons donc !	**Nonsense !**
Je suis fatigué de tout cela, **allez !**	*I am tired of it all,* **I can assure you !**
Voyons, que feriez-vous à ma place ?	**Now then,** *what would you do in my place ?*

(3) The first person plural is often used in familiar conversation instead of the second singular or plural :

Ne nous fâchons pas.	**Do not get angry.**

Obs. Notice also :

Allons !	**Come !**
Voyons !	**Let me see ! Come !**

The Subjunctive.

(*a*) GENERAL RULE.

§ **233.** Contrary to the indicative, or objective mood, which, as a rule, states a fact in a positive and absolute manner, the subjunctive, or subjective mood, generally expresses a mere opinion or feeling. Hence it may be broadly said that the indicative denotes *certainty,* whilst the subjunctive conveys an idea of *doubt* (for exceptions, see the following sections) :

Je doute qu'il **vienne.**	*I doubt whether he will come.*
Je regrette / Je suis bien aise } que vous y **consentiez.**	*I regret / I am glad* } *that you consent to it.*

Obs. From this general principle it follows that the use of the subjunctive depends on the meaning of the sentence, and whilst certain expressions, always implying doubt or contingency, must always be followed by the subjunctive, others, which may—but do not necessarily—imply doubt, govern sometimes the subjunctive, and sometimes the indicative or conditional, according to the thought of the speaker.

(*b*) CASES IN WHICH THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR INDICATIVE MAY BE USED, ACCORDING TO THE MEANING.

I.—*Substantival Clauses.*

§ **234.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is required, *provided there is real doubt or uncertainty*, after the conjunction **que** in a substantival clause depending on an expression used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, or *preceded* by **si** (= *if*), even though the same expression should otherwise govern the indicative :

Je crois qu'il **partira.**	*I think that he will start.*
But Je **ne** crois **pas** qu'il **parte.**	*I do not think that he will start.*
Croyez-vous qu'il **parte?**	*Do you think that he will start?*
Si je croyais qu'il **partît,** j'irais le voir tout de suite.	*If I thought that he would start, I should go and see him at once.*
J'ai remarqué qu'il **est** fort triste.	*I have noticed that he is very sad.*
But Je **n'ai pas** remarqué qu'il **soit** triste.	*I have not noticed him to be sad.*
Avez-vous remarqué qu'il **soit** triste?	*Have you noticed him to be sad?*
Si j'avais remarqué qu'il **fût** triste, je vous l'aurais dit.	*If I had noticed that he was sad, I should have told you.*
Il est certain que le gouvernement **sera** battu.	*It is certain that the government will be defeated.*
But Il **n'est pas** certain que le gouvernement **soit** battu.	*It is not certain that the government will be defeated.*
Est-il certain que le gouvernement **soit** battu?	*Is it certain that the government will be defeated?*
S'il est certain que le gouvernement **soit** battu . . .	*If it is certain that the government will be defeated . . .*

The INDICATIVE (or CONDITIONAL) is generally used—

(1) When the interrogation or negation does not really bear upon the first verb :

Quand croyez-vous que votre frère **partira?**	*When do you think that your brother will start?*

(The speaker does not ask *whether* you think, but *when* you think, that your brother will start.)

Je ne dis pas qu'il **a** tort, je dis qu'il a raison.	*I do not say that he is wrong, I say that he is right.*

(The verb *dire* is not really negatived, the sense being "*I say, not that he is wrong, but . . .*")

(2) When the interrogation or negation does not bear upon the second verb, *i.e.* when the statement of the dependent clause is certain or highly probable, or at any rate looked upon as such :

Il ne comprend pas que deux et deux **font** quatre.	*He does not understand that two and two make four.*
Avez-vous remarqué qu'il **est** triste?	*Have you noticed that he is sad?*

(It is certain that he is sad, but have you noticed it?)

Vous ne dites pas qu'il **est** parti.	*You do not say that he is gone.*

(That he is gone is certain, but you do not say so.)

Si je crois qu'il **est** parti, c'est que je l'ai vu à la gare.	*If I think that he is gone, it is because I saw him at the station.*

(I believe he is gone, because . . .)

Croyez-vous qu'il **partira**?	*Do you think that he will start?*

(The indicative shows there is no doubt in the speaker's mind.)

(3) After most verbs of *saying* used interrogatively or preceded by **si**:

Répondrai-je que vous **avez** fini?	*Shall I answer tha you have done?*
Avez-vous soutenu qu'il **était** sorti?	*Did you maintain that he was out?*
Si l'on vous dit qu'il **viendra** . . .	*If they tell you that he will come . . .*

[The subjunctive is sometimes used, however, to express doubt, especially when the subject of such verbs is in the third person, and the statement does not refer to the future:

Vous a-t-on dit qu'il **est** venu?	*Did they tell you* **that** *he* **did** *come?*
But Vous a-t-on dit qu'il **soit** venu?	*Did they tell you* **whether** *he came?*]

Obs. 1. As certainty or very high probability is generally implied when a verb is used *interrogatively and negatively together*, the INDICATIVE is, as a rule, required in such a case (unless the verb governs the subjunctive when used affirmatively):

N'avez-vous pas remarqué qu'il **est** fort triste?	*Did you not notice that he is very sad?*

Obs. 2. The verbs **dissimuler, se dissimuler, douter,** and **ignorer** govern the subjunctive when used affirmatively; but the first three (**douter,** however, only when referring to the future), may be followed by the indicative (or conditional) instead of the subjunctive with **ne,** when the sentence is *interrogative* or *negative*, whilst **ignorer** generally governs

the indicative (or conditional) in the first case, and always in the second :

Je ne me dissimule pas	que ce **ne soit** difficile. / que **c'est** difficile.	*I do not conceal from myself that it is difficult.*
Doutez-vous	qu'il **ne réussisse**? / qu'il **réussira**?	*Do you doubt that he will succeed?*
Ignoriez-vous qu'il **avait** quitté?		*Did you not know that he had left?*
Je n'ignore pas que vous **êtes** mon ami.		*I am well aware you are my friend.*

Obs. 3. **Réfléchir** and **songer**—also **considérer** and **penser** used in the sense of **réfléchir**—always require the indicative (or conditional); **oublier** generally does so when the sentence is interrogative, and always when it is affirmative or negative :

Considérez-vous / Réfléchissez-vous / Songez-vous	que le danger **est** grand?	*Do you bear in mind that the danger is great?*
Je ne considérais pas / Je ne réfléchissais pas / Je ne songeais pas	qu'il le **sait.**	*I was forgetting that he knows it.*
Je n'ai pas oublié que vous me l'**avez** promis.		*I have not forgotten that you have promised it to me.*
Je ne pensais pas que vous **venez** avec nous.		**I was not thinking** *that you* **are coming** *with us.*
But Je ne pensais pas que vous **vinssiez** avec nous.		**I did not think** *that you* **would come** *with us.*

§ **235.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is used after **que** in a substantival clause depending on certain verbs like **comprendre, dire, entendre, prendre garde, prétendre supposer,** etc., when they are taken in such a sense as to fall under the classes mentioned in §§ 241-243 :

Je comprends que cela vous **paraisse** dur.	*I* **am not surprised** *that it seems hard to you.*
Il dit que vous y **alliez.**	*He* **bids** *you go.*
J'entends qu'il **vienne.**	*I* **mean** *him to come.*
Prenez garde qu'il **ne** vous **voie.**	**Take care lest** *he should see you.*

The INDICATIVE is used after the same verbs, when they are taken in such a sense as *not* to fall under the classes mentioned in §§ 241-243 :

Je comprends que cela vous **paraît** dur.	*I* **understand** *that it seems hard to you.*
Il dit que vous **irez.**	*He* **says** *you will go.*
J'entends qu'il **vient.**	*I* **hear** *him coming.*
Prenez garde qu'il vous **voit.**	**Observe, bear in mind** *that he sees you.*

Je prétends que tout le monde **soit** satisfait.	*I* **want** *every one to be satisfied.*
Supposons qu'il **ait** réussi.	*Let us* **suppose** *that he has succeeded.*
Je prétends que tout le monde **est** satisfait.	*I* **maintain** *that every one is satisfied.*
Nous supposons qu'il **a** réussi.	*We* **think** *that he has succeeded.*

§ **236.** According to the general principle, the SUBJUNCTIVE is used after—

(1) **On croirait que, on dirait que,** when the following statement is presented as impossible :

On dirait que le ciel **veuille** inonder ces lieux d'un déluge nouveau.	*It looks as if the sky would drench this place with a new flood.*

(2) **Il semble que,** when the following statement is presented as doubtful (which is generally the case, if **il semble** has no indirect object) :

Il semblait que nous **fussions** perdus.	*It seemed as if we were lost.*

(3) Verbs of *commanding* generally (see § 242), the result of the command being uncertain :

Le capitaine ordonna que le coupable **fût** mis à mort.	*The captain ordered that the culprit should be put to death.*

According to the general principle, the INDICATIVE (or CONDITIONAL) is used after—

(1) **On croirait que, on dirait que,** when the following statement is presented as likely or at any rate possible :

On dirait qu'il **va** pleuvoir.	*It looks as if it were going to rain*
On croirait qu'il **est** malade.	*He seems to be ill.*

(2) **Il semble que,** when the following statement is presented as certain or very likely (which is almost always the case when **il semble** has an indirect object) :

Il me semblait que nous **étions** perdus.	*It seemed to me that we were lost.*

(3) Verbs of *commanding,* when used in the sense of *enacting,* the result being looked upon as certain :

Il fut ordonné que la torture **serait** abolie.	*It was decreed that torture should be abolished.*

Obs. After **il suffit que** the indicative is sometimes used instead of the subjunctive, when the fact is presented as positive :

Il suffit que je le **veux** (*or* **veuille**).	*It is enough that I* **wish** *it.*
But Il suffit que je le **veuille** (*not* **veux**) pour qu'il le fasse.	*It is enough that I* **should** *wish it for him to do it.*

II.—*Adjectival Clauses.*

§ **237.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is used after a relative pronoun in an adjectival clause having a *consecutive*, *final*, or *concessive* force, *i.e.* depending on—

(1) A *negative* statement bearing upon the dependent verb :

Je n'ai jamais entendu de chanteur qui me **plaise** davantage.	*I have never heard* a *singer who pleases me more.*
Nous n'avons pas de lettre qui vous **soit** adressée.	*We have not* **any** *letter addressed to you.*
Il y a ici peu de gens que je **connaisse.**	*There are* **few people** *here that I know.*

(2) An *interrogative* or *conditional* statement, or any word implying *purpose*, *wish*, *expectation*, *command*, *advice*, etc., which gives to the adjectival clause a character of *uncertainty* :

Avez-vous un livre où cette question **soit** traitée ?	*Have you got* a *book in which this question is treated ?*
Si je connaissais personne qui l'**eût** dit . . .	*If I knew* **any one** *who had said it . . .*
Ils désirent une maison qui **ait** un jardin.	*They want* a *house with a garden.*
J'attends une lettre qui **mette** fin à mon incertitude.	*I am waiting for a letter* **likely** *to put a stop to my uncertainty.*
Indiquez-moi un chemin qui **conduise** à la ville.	*Show me* **any** *road which leads to the town.*

The INDICATIVE (or CONDITIONAL) is used after a relative pronoun in an adjectival clause having a mere *attributive* or *descriptive* meaning, *i.e.* even after—

(1) A negative statement, when it does **not** bear upon the dependent verb :

Je n'ai pas entendu le chanteur qui vous **a** tant plu.	*I have not heard* **the** *singer who pleased you so much.*
Nous n'avons pas la lettre qui vous **est** adressée.	*We have not* **the** *letter addressed to you.*
Il y a ici peu des gens que je **connais.**	*There are here few* **of the people** *know.*

(2) An interrogative or conditional statement, or any word implying purpose, wish, expectation, command, advice, etc., when it does **not** give to the adjectival clause a character of uncertainty :

Avez-vous le livre où cette question **est** traitée ?	*Have you got* **the** *book in which this question is treated ?*
Si je connaissais la personne qui **l'a** dit . . .	*If I knew* **the person** *who said it . . .*
Ils désirent la maison qui **a** un jardin.	*They want* **the** *house with a garden.*
J'attends une lettre qui **mettra** fin à mon incertitude.	*I am waiting for a letter which* **I know** *will put a stop to my uncertainty.*
Indiquez-moi le chemin qui **conduit** à la ville.	*Show me* **the** *road which leads to the town.*

(3) A *superlative*, an *ordinal number*, or an *exclusive expression* like **le seul, l'unique, ne . . . que**, when the statement is presented as a mere matter of *opinion*, or meant to convey an idea of *surprise, joy, indignation*, etc., and whenever the speaker wishes to *attenuate* his assertion, even though he should look upon the fact as certain :

Victor Hugo est le plus grand écrivain qu'**ait** produit notre siècle.	*Victor Hugo is* (**I think**) *the greatest writer our age has produced.*
C'est le meilleur chanteur que j'**aie** entendu.	*He is* (**in my opinion**) *the best singer I ever heard.*
C'est le dernier ouvrage que nous **songions** à lire.	*It is the last work we* **should ever think** *of reading.*
C'était la première victoire qu'ils **eussent** remportée.	*It was the first victory they had won.*

(Subjunctive to mark *surprise, joy*, etc.)

La promenade est l'unique plaisir que nous **ayons.**	*Walking is the only pleasure we have.*

(Subjunctive to mark *regret.*)

(3) A superlative, an ordinal number, or an exclusive expression like **le seul, l'unique, ne . . . que**, when the statement is made in a *positive* and *absolute* manner, *not admitting of contradiction* :

Victor Hugo est le plus grand écrivain qu'a produit notre siècle.	*Victor Hugo is* (**beyond doubt**) *the greatest writer our age has produced.*
C'est le meilleur chanteur que j'**ai** entendu.	*It is the best singer I did hear* (**not any other**).
C'est le dernier ouvrage que nous **songeons** à lire.	*It is the last work we are* (**actually**) *thinking of reading.*
C'était la première victoire qu'ils **avaient** remportée.	*It was the first victory they had won.*

(Indicative to state *a simple fact.*)

L'unique promenade que nous faisons tous les jours . . .	*The only walk we take every day . . .*

(Indicative to state *a simple fact.*)

Obs. After a *superlative*, an *ordinal number*, or an *exclusive expression*, the INDICATIVE is generally used to translate the English *future*, unless the verb **pouvoir** is introduced, in which case the subjunctive is employed, according to the rule :

Voilà le meilleur chanteur que vous **entendrez** jamais.	*There is the best singer that you will ever hear.*
La promenade est l'unique plaisir que nous **aurons.**	*Walking is the only pleasure we shall have.*
C'est peut-être le plus bel ouvrage qu'il **écrira** jamais.	*It is perhaps the finest work he will ever write.*
But C'est le plus bel ouvrage qu'il **puisse** jamais écrire.	*It is the finest work he will ever be able to write.*

III.—*Adverbial Clauses.*

§ **238.** In adverbial consecutive clauses introduced by the conjunction **que** preceded by **de façon, de manière, de** (or **en**) **sorte, si, si bien, tant, tellement** (=*so that, so much that*)—

The SUBJUNCTIVE is used in speaking of an *aim* to be attained, *i.e.* when there is some degree of *uncertainty* :

Agissez de façon que tout le monde **soit** content.	*Act so that every one* **may** *be satisfied.*
Il avait fortifié la ville de manière qu'elle **pût** soutenir un long siège.	*He had fortified the town so that it* **might** *sustain a long siege.*
Il faut faire en sorte qu'il ne **sache** rien.	*We must manage so that he* **may** *know nothing.*
Priez-les tant qu'ils ne **puissent** vous le refuser.	*Beg them so much that they* **may** *not be able to refuse you.*

The INDICATIVE (or CONDITIONAL) is used in speaking of a *result* already achieved, or even to be achieved, when there is *certainty* :

J'ai agi de façon que tout le monde **est** content.	*I have acted so that every one is satisfied.*
Il avait fortifié la ville, de manière qu'elle **put** soutenir un long siège.	*He had fortified the town, so that it* **was** *able to sustain a long siege.*
Nous avons fait en sorte qu'il ne **sait** rien.	*We have so managed that he* **knows** *nothing.*
Je les prierai tant qu'ils ne **pourront** refuser.	*I will beg them so much that they* **will** *not be able to refuse.*

§ **239.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is further used in adverbial clauses introduced by **que** standing instead of any conjunction which (according to § 246) governs the *subjunctive*, or instead of **si** :

De peur qu'on ne vous voie et qu'on ne vous **retienne** . . .	*Lest any one should see you and detain you* . . .
Quoiqu'il le veuille et que nous le **voulions** aussi . .	*Although he wishes it and we wish it too* . . .
Pourvu qu'il vienne et que je le **voie** . .	*Provided he comes and I see him* . . .
S'il vient et que je le **voie** . . .	*If he comes and I see him* . . .

The INDICATIVE (or CONDITIONAL) is used in adverbial clauses introduced by **que** standing instead of any conjunction—except **si**—which governs the *indicative* (or *conditional*) :

Comme nous le connaissons et que nous l'**estimons** beaucoup . . .	*As we know him and esteem him very much* . . .
Puisqu'il le veut et que nous le **voulons** aussi . . .	*Since he wishes it and we wish it too* .
Lorsqu'il viendra et qu'il vous **verra** . . .	*When he comes and sees you* . . .
Dès qu'il viendra et qu'il vous **verra** . . .	*As soon as he comes and sees you* . . .

240. The SUBJUNCTIVE is generally used after **jusqu'à ce que** (=*until*), even in speaking of an accomplished and positive fact :

Il restera jusqu'à ce que tout le monde **soit** parti. — *He will remain until everybody is gone.*

Il resta jusqu'à ce que tout le monde **fût** parti. — *He remained until everybody was gone.*

The INDICATIVE is *sometimes* found after **jusqu'à ce que**, but only when speaking of an accomplished and positive fact :

Il resta jusqu'à ce que tout le monde **fut** parti. — *He remained until everybody was gone.*

Obs. 1. The only tense of the *subjunctive* that may be used after **si** is the *pluperfect*, and even then the use of that mood is not necessary :

S'il **avait** (or **eût**) osé . . . — *If he had dared . . .*

Obs. 2. **À condition que** governs the indicative, the conditional, or the subjunctive :

À condition qu'il **viendra** (or **vienne**) . . . — *On condition that he will come . . .*
À condition qu'il **viendrait** (or **vînt**) . . . — *On condition that he would come . . .*

(*c*) CASES IN WHICH THE SUBJUNCTIVE ALONE IS USED.

I.—*Substantival Clauses.*

§ **241.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is used after the conjunction **que** in a substantival clause depending on—

(1) An expression denoting *denial* or *doubt*, as—

Contester (=*to contest*), **disconvenir**, **nier** (= *to deny*) ;
Douter (= *to doubt*), **il est douteux** (= *it is doubtful*) ;
Mettre (or **révoquer**) **en doute** (= *to call in question*)
[See, however, § 234, *Obs.* 2] :

Je nie que ce **soit** vrai. — *I deny that it is true.*

Je doute que vous **arriviez** à temps. — *I doubt whether you will arrive in time.*

Il est douteux qu'il **soit** réélu. — *It is doubtful whether he will be re-elected.*

OBSERVATION.—The subjunctive is *not* used, in an *affirmative* sentence, after verbs of *thinking* and the impersonal verbs and expressions **il paraît, il y a apparence** (= *it appears*), **il m'est avis** (= *methinks*), **il est probable** (= *it is likely*), although they imply a certain degree of doubt :

Je crois	que ce n'**est** pas vrai.	*I believe*
Je pense		*I think*
Je soupçonne		*I suspect*
J'imagine		*I imagine*
Je me doute		*I surmise*
Il paraît		*It seems*
Il est probable		*It is likely*

that it is not true.

For the mood required by such verbs and expressions when used interrogatively or negatively, see § 234.

NOTE.—It has already been stated [§ 236 (2)] that **il semble** does not always govern the subjunctive.

§ **242.** (2) An expression denoting *prayer, counsel, command, prohibition, impediment, consent, approval, blame, avoidance, merit, want, request, necessity,* as—

Prier, conjurer, supplier (= *to beg, to beseech*); **conseiller** (= *to advise*); **commander, ordonner, enjoindre** (= *to order*); **défendre, interdire** (= *to forbid*); **empêcher, prévenir** (= *to prevent*); **consentir** (= *to consent*); **permettre** (= *to permit*); **accorder** (= *to grant*); **refuser** (= *to refuse*); **approuver** (= *to approve*); **juger à propos, trouver bon** (= *to think fit*); **blâmer** (= *to blame*); **désapprouver** (= *to disapprove*); **éviter** (= *to avoid*); **mériter** (= *to deserve*); **valoir** (= *to be worth*); **être digne** (= *to be worthy*); **avoir besoin** (= *to want*); **demander** (= *to ask*); **exiger** (= *to exact*); **requérir** (= *to require*):

Il ordonna qu'on **déliât** le prisonnier.	*He ordered that the prisoner should be unbound.*
Empêchez qu'il ne **sorte.**	*Prevent him from going out.*
Le roi permit qu'on **ouvrît** les portes.	*The king allowed the gates to be opened.*
Approuvez-vous qu'il **agisse** ainsi?	*Do you approve of his acting so?*
Il mérite que vous le **respectiez.**	*He deserves that you should respect him.*
Je demande que tout le monde se **taise.**	*I ask every one to be silent.*

§ **243.** (3) An expression denoting an *emotion* or *feeling of the mind* (*wish, joy, sorrow, disgust, indignation, regret, fear, surprise,* etc.), as—

Vouloir, désirer, souhaiter (= *to wish*);
Se réjouir (= *to rejoice*); **s'affliger** (= *to grieve*);
S'inquiéter (= *to fret*); **se soucier** (= *to care*);
S'indigner (= *to be indignant*); **regretter** (= *to regret*);
Craindre, appréhender (= *to fear*); **trembler** (= *to tremble*);
S'étonner (= *to be astonished*); **admirer** (= *to admire*);
Avoir envie (= *to wish*); **avoir honte** (= *to be ashamed*);
Avoir peur (= *to be afraid*); **être fâché** (= *to be sorry*);

Exceptions.—(1) **Espérer** (= *to hope*) is the only verb expressing an emotion which does *not* govern the subjunctive in an *affirmative* sentence:

J'espère que vous **serez** mieux demain.	*I hope you will be better to-morrow.*

(2) It should be noticed that, when expressions belonging to this class are followed by **de ce que** instead of **que**, the subjunctive is almost always replaced by the indicative or conditional:

Je suis ravi **de ce que** vous **avez** si bien réussi.	*I am delighted you have succeeded so well.*
J'étais fâché **de ce que** vous ne **viendriez** pas.	*I was sorry that you would not come.*

(The use of **que** with the **subjunctive** is, as a rule, preferable.)

Être bien aise, content, heureux (= *to be glad*), etc. :

J'aurais voulu que vous **fussiez** avec nous.	*I should have liked you to be with us.*
Tous regrettèrent qu'il **eût** échoué.	*All regretted that he had failed.*
On craignait que les troupes ne **refusassent** de marcher.	*It was feared that the troops might refuse to march.*
Je suis surpris que personne n'y **ait** encore pensé.	*I am surprised that no one should have yet thought of it.*

§ **244.** (4) Impersonal verbs and expressions, as—

Il convient, il sied, il est à propos, il est bon (= *it is proper*);

Il faut, il est nécessaire, il est indispensable (= *it is necessary, indispensable*);

Il importe, il est important, essentiel (= *it is important, essential*);

Il se peut, il est possible, impossible (= *it may be, it is impossible*);

Il vaut mieux, il est préférable (= *it is better*);

Il est dommage (= *it is a pity*);

Il est temps (= *it is time*), etc. :

Il convient que vous **alliez** les voir.	*It is proper you should go and see them.*
Il faut que je m'en **aille** tout de suite.	*I must go away at once.*
Il se peut qu'il se **soit** trompé.	*It may be that he was mistaken.*
Il vaut mieux que vous ne **disiez** rien.	*It is better you should say nothing.*
Il est temps qu'il le **sache**.	*It is time he should know it.*
Il est juste qu'ils **soient** punis.	*It is just that they should be punished.*

Exceptions.—The subjunctive is *not* used, in an *affirmative* sentence, after **il arrive** (= *it happens*), **il résulte** (= *it results*), **il s'ensuit** (= *it follows*), and all impersonal expressions which denote *certainty*, as—

Il est certain, sûr (= *it is certain, sure*);

Il est clair, évident (= *it is clear, evident*);

Il est incontestable (= *it is undeniable*);

Il est visible, vrai (= *it is visible, true*), etc. :

Il arrive parfois qu'il ne **veut** voir personne.	*It sometimes happens that he will not see any one.*
Il s'ensuit que vous **avez** tort.	*It follows that you are wrong.*
Il était clair qu'il s'**était** trompé.	*It was clear that he had made a mistake.*
Il est incontestable que ce malheur n'**aurait** pas eu lieu sans lui.	*It is undeniable that this misfortune would not have taken place without him.*

(See also § 241, *Obs.*)

II.—*Adjectival Clauses.*

§ **245.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is used in adjectival clauses with a concessive force,[1] *i.e.* introduced by—

Quelque (or **si**) . . . **que** (= *however, whatever*) ;
Quel que (= *whoever, whichever*) ;
Qui que, qui que ce soit qui (= *whoever*) ;
Quoi que, quoi que ce soit qui (= *whatever*) :

Quelque glorieuse que **soit** la victoire, j'en redoute les conséquences.	*However glorious the victory may be, I fear its consequences.*
Quels que **soient** vos ordres, je suis prêt.	*Whatever your orders may be, I am ready.*
Qui que vous **soyez,** ne craignez rien.	*Whoever you may be, fear nothing.*
Qui que ce soit qui l'**ait** dit, je ne le crois pas.	*Whoever may have said it, I do not believe it.*
Il est perdu, quoi qu'il **fasse.**	*He is ruined, whatever he may do.*
Quoi que ce soit qui vous **surprenne,** ne dites rien.	*Whatever may surprise you, do not say anything.*

III.—*Adverbial Clauses.*

§ **246.** The SUBJUNCTIVE is used in adverbial clauses introduced by the following conjunctions and conjunctive locutions—

(1) FINAL :

Afin que, pour que (= *in order that*) ;
De crainte que . . . ne, de peur que . . . ne (= *lest*) :

Dieu nous punit pour que nous nous **repentions.**	*God punishes us in order that we should repent.*
Il m'a accompagné, de crainte que je ne **perdisse** mon chemin.	*He has accompanied me, lest I should lose my way.*

(2) CONCESSIVE :

Bien que, quoique, encore que,
Malgré que, nonobstant que, } (= *although*) ;
Pour (or **si**) **peu que** (= *if . . . ever so little*) ;
Si tant est que (= *if it be true that*) :

Bien qu'il **ait** promis de venir, je doute que nous le voyions aujourd'hui.	*Although he has promised to come, I doubt whether we shall see him to-day.*
Pour peu qu'on le **connaisse,** on ne peut s'empêcher de l'aimer.	*If you know him ever so little, you cannot help loving him.*
Nous les verrons demain, si tant est qu'ils **partent** ce soir.	*We shall see them to-morrow, if it be true that they start this evening.*

[1] These clauses are sometimes classed with Adverbial Clauses.

(3) CONDITIONAL :

À moins que . . . ne (=*unless*);
Au (or **en**) **cas que** (=*in case that*);
Pourvu que (=*provided that*);
Sans que (=*without*) [also used with a consecutive or merely descriptive meaning];
Soit que (=*whether, be it that*);
Supposé que (=*supposing that*) :

Vous pouvez compter sur nous, à moins qu'il ne **survienne** quelque chose.	*You may rely upon us, unless something should happen.*
Que tout soit prêt, en cas qu'il **vienne.**	*Let everything be ready, in case he should come.*
Je ne partirai pas sans que vous m'**écriviez.**	*I will not start without your writing to me.*
Soit qu'il le **voulût** ou non, il donna sa démission.	*Whether he wished it or not, he gave in his resignation.*
Supposé qu'il vous le **dise,** que répondrez-vous?	*Supposing that he says it to you, what will you answer?*

(4) TEMPORAL :

Avant que (=*before*);
En attendant que, jusqu'à ce que [1] (=*until*) :

La victoire était certaine avant que la bataille **eût** commencé.	*The victory was certain before the battle had begun.*
Allons au jardin en attendant qu'il **ait** fini sa lettre.	*Let us go to the garden until he has finished his letter.*

(5) NEGATIVE :

Loin que (=*far from*);
Non que, non pas que (=*not that*) :

Loin qu'il vous **nuise,** soyez certain qu'il vous aidera.	*Far from injuring you, be sure that he will help you.*
Je vous le répète, non pas que je le **croie,** mais pour que vous sachiez tout.	*I repeat it to you, not that I believe it, but in order that you should know everything.*

§ **247.** Notice that (1) **quoique** is the only conjunction written in one word which always governs the subjunctive; (2) the subjunctive is required after the three conjunctions which are always used with **ne** : **à moins que, de crainte que,** and **de peur que.**

[1] See § 240.

(*d*) INDEPENDENT USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ **248.** The subjunctive is sometimes used independently of any word expressed before, a wish or supposition being generally understood—

(1) With **que**, to express—

[*a*] *Command* :

Qu'il **revienne** demain.	*Let him come back to-morrow.*
Que tout **soit** prêt avant mon retour.	*Let everything be ready before my return.*

[*b*] *Surprise, indignation,* in exclamations :

Lui, si jeune ! qu'il **entreprenne** une tâche si délicate !	*He, so young ! that he should undertake so delicate a task !*
Moi, que je **trahisse** mon pays !	*I, that I should betray my country !*

(2) With or without **que**, to express a *wish, prayer, imprecation, concession, supposition* (generally without **que** in optative sentences) :

Que Dieu **soit** loué ! / Dieu **soit** loué !	*God be praised !*
Ainsi Dieu me **soit** en aide !	*So help me God !*
Ainsi **soit**-il.	*Amen.*
Fasse le ciel qu'il arrive à temps !	*Heaven grant he may arrive in time !*
Plût au ciel qu'il fût ici !	*Would to Heaven he were here !*
À Dieu ne **plaise** !	*God forbid !*
N'en **déplaise** à vos amis.	*With all due deference to your friends.*
Puissent ses efforts être couronnés de succès !	*May his efforts be crowned with success !*
Vive la liberté !	*Liberty for ever !*
Périsse sa mémoire !	*May his memory perish !*
Advienne que pourra.	*Come what may.*
Vaille que vaille.	*At all hazards.*
Coûte que coûte.	*At any cost.*
Le **fasse** qui voudra.	*Let him who likes do it.*
Eh bien ! **soit**.	*Well ! let it be so.*
Que l'ennemi **vienne**, / **Vienne** l'ennemi, } il s'enfuit.	*If the enemy comes, he runs away.*

Obs. Notice the expressions **je ne sache pas, je ne sache personne, je ne sache rien** in which the subjunctive is used without any word being

understood, to give to the statement a less positive shade than the indicative *je sais* :

Je ne **sache** pas qu'il soit parti.	*I have not heard that he is gone.*
Je ne **sache** personne qui l'égale.	*Nobody, as far as I know, equals him.*
Je ne **sache** rien de plus joli.	*I know nothing prettier.*

Notice also :

Que je sache (only used after a negative).	*As far as I know.*
Pas que je sache.	*Not that I know of.*

(*e*) TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ **249.** The tense in which the principal verb stands determines, as a rule, what tense of the subjunctive is to be used, but there are several important exceptions depending on the very nature of the idea the speaker intends to convey.

§ **250.** The *present* indicative and *future* of the principal verb are generally followed by—

(1) The *present* subjunctive, to express a *present* or *future* action or state :

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **soit** coupable.	*I do not believe that he is guilty.*
Je ne **croirai** jamais qu'il **soit** coupable.	*I shall never believe that he is guilty.*
Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **réussisse.**	*I do not believe that he will succeed.*
Je ne **croirai** jamais qu'il **réussisse.**	*I shall never believe that he will succeed.*

(2) The *past* subjunctive, to express a *past* action or state :

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **ait** trahi son pays.	*I do not believe that he has betrayed his country.*
Je ne **croirai** jamais qu'il **ait** trahi son pays.	*I shall never believe that he has betrayed his country.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The *present* and *future* are followed by—

(1) The *imperfect* subjunctive, to express—

[*a*] A *past* action, already begun, but not over when another took place :

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **travaillât** lorsque vous êtes entré.	*I do not believe that he was working when you came in.*

[*b*] A *present* or *future* action depending on a conditional clause with the verb in the imperfect or pluperfect :

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **travaillât** s'il n'y était (*or* avait été) forcé.	*I do not believe that he would be working* (or *would work*) *if he were not* (or *had not been*) *compelled to do so.*

(2) The pluperfect subjunctive, to express—

[*a*] A *past* action, completely over when another took place:

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **eût** fini lorsque vous êtes entré.	*I do not believe that he had finished when you came in.*

[*b*] A *past* action depending on a conditional clause:

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il **eût** fini si vous ne lui aviez parlé.	*I do not believe that he would have finished if you had not spoken to him.*

§ **251.** The *past* tenses of the indicative and the *present and past conditional* of the principal verb are generally followed by—

(1) The *imperfect* subjunctive, to express a *present* or *future* action or state, or one which is *past, but was not over at the time marked by the principal verb*:

Je ne **croyais** pas	*I was not thinking*
Je ne **crus** pas	*I did not think*
Je n'**ai** pas cru	*I have not thought*
Je n'**avais** pas cru	*I had not thought*
Je ne **croirais** pas	*I should not think*
Je n'**aurais** pas cru	*I should not have thought*

qu'il vous **trompât**. { *that he was deceiving you.* / *that he deceived you,* or, / *that he would deceive you.*

EXCEPTIONS. — (1) The *present* subjunctive is used—

[*a*] After **any** tense, to express a *permanent* fact:

Il ne **doutait** pas	*He did not doubt*
Il n'**avait** pas douté	*He had not doubted*
Il ne **douterait** pas (etc.)	*He would not doubt*

que la vertu n'**ait** toujours sa récompense. } *that virtue has always its reward.*

[*b*] Generally after the *past indefinite* followed by **afin que, pour que, bien que, quoique, de crainte que, de peur que**, etc., to express a *present* or *future* action:

Il a retardé son départ pour que je **puisse** le voir.	*He has put off his departure in order that I may see him.*

(2) The pluperfect subjunctive, to express an action or state *already past before the time marked by the principal verb*:

Je ne **croyais** pas	*I was not thinking*
Je ne **crus** pas	*I did not think*
Je n'**ai** pas cru	*I have not thought*
Je n'**avais** pas cru	*I had not thought*
Je ne **croirais** pas	*I should not think*
Je n'**aurais** pas cru	*I should not have thought*

qu'il vous **eût** trompé — *that he had deceived you,* or, *that he would have deceived you.*

[*c*] After the *conditional* used idiomatically instead of the *present*, or expressing a **wish**, *not a condition* (to denote a *present* or *future* action):

Je ne **saurais** croire qu'il vous **trompe.**	*I cannot believe that he deceives you.*
J'**aimerais** que vous lui **parliez.**	*I should like you to speak to him.*

(In the latter case, however, the imperfect is often used, except in the first and second person plural, which are generally avoided.)

(2) The *past* subjunctive is used—

[*a*] Generally after the *past indefinite*, to express an action which took place at a period not determined, or determined, but recent:

J'**ai regretté** qu'il **soit** jamais venu.	*I have regretted he should ever have come.*
J'**ai regretté** qu'il **soit** venu hier.	*I have regretted he should have come yesterday.*

[*b*] After the *conditional* used idiomatically instead of the *present*, to denote a *past* action:

Je ne **saurais** croire qu'il vous **ait** trompé.	*I cannot believe that he has deceived you.*

The Infinitive.

(*a*) FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ **252**. The infinitive is both a verbal noun and a mood.

§ **253**. THE INFINITIVE AS A VERBAL NOUN.—As a verbal noun, the infinitive can fulfil all the functions of an ordinary noun, *i.e.* can be used as subject, direct or indirect object, attributive genitive or dative, etc.:

Aimer, c'est **souffrir.**	*Loving is suffering.*
Nous préférons **lire.**	*We prefer reading.*
Il se préparait à **partir.**	*He was preparing to start.*
Le désir de **briller.**	*The wish to shine.*
Son penchant à **rire.**	*His propensity to laugh.*

Obs. Some infinitives are real nouns, and can be preceded by the article:

Le boire et **le manger,** *Eating and drinking,*

not a few being even used in the plural:

Les **devoirs,** les **pouvoirs,** les **sourires,** etc. *The duties, the powers, the smiles, etc.*

§ **254.** THE INFINITIVE AS A MOOD.—As a mood, the infinitive has—

(1) A passive as well as an active voice:

Aimer, être aimé. *To love, to be loved.*

(2) A past as well as a present tense:

Avoir aimé, avoir été aimé. *To have loved, to have been loved.*

(3) Direct as well as indirect objects:

Haïr **la tyrannie.** *To hate tyranny.*
Obéir **à la loi.** *To obey law.*
Jouir **de la liberté.** *To enjoy liberty.*

§ **255.** TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.—The *present* infinitive is used for—

(1) The present:

Il me semble **rêver.** *It seems to me* **I am dreaming.**

(2) The imperfect:

Il me semblait **rêver.** *It seemed to me* **I was dreaming.**

(3) The future present:

J'espère **partir** demain. *I hope* **I shall start** *to-morrow.*

(4) The conditional present:

J'espérais **partir** demain. *I hoped* **I should start** *to-morrow.*

The *past* infinitive is used for all other tenses, *i.e.*—

(1) The preterite:

Il avoua **avoir tremblé** quand il le vit. *He confessed* **he trembled** *when he saw him.*

(2) The past indefinite:

Il prétend l'**avoir fait.** *He pretends* **he has done** *it.*

(3) The pluperfect:

Il prétendait l'**avoir fait.** *He pretended* **he had done** *it.*

(4) The past anterior :

Aussitôt après l'**avoir fait** . . .	*Directly after having done it.*

(5) The future past :

J'espère **être parti** avant son retour.	*I hope* **I shall be gone** *before his return.*

(6) The conditional past :

J'espérais **être parti** avant son retour.	*I hoped* **I should be gone** *before his return.*

Obs. 1. When the infinitive stands for the future or conditional, it must sometimes be preceded by the verb **devoir**, which prevents any possible ambiguity :

La catastrophe que je crois **devoir** arriver.	*The catastrophe which, I think, will happen.*
La catastrophe que je croyais **devoir** arriver.	*The catastrophe which, I thought, would happen.*

Obs. 2. The preposition **après** requires the past infinitive :

Après avoir écouté.	*After listening.* / *After having listened.*

Exceptions. — The present is used with a few infinitives which are verbal nouns rather than verbs :

Après déjeuner, après dîner.	*After breakfast, after dinner.*

Obs. 3. The past infinitive is also required generally after **pour** used in the sense of *because* :

Il fut battu **pour avoir ri.**	*He was beaten for laughing.*

(*b*) THE INFINITIVE USED IN FRENCH, BUT NOT IN ENGLISH.

§ **256.** Besides frequently corresponding to the English gerund-form in *-ing* standing as subject, direct object, or complement of the predicate (see § 253), the French infinitive, and not the present participle, must be used after a preposition :

Il joue **au lieu de travailler.**	*He plays instead of working.*
Je ne puis le regarder **sans rire.**	*I cannot look at him without laughing.*

Exception.—The preposition **en** is the only one which takes the present participle :

C'est **en écrivant** qu'on apprend à écrire.	*It is by writing that we learn how to write.*

Obs. 1. The present participle is also generally replaced by the infinitive after verbs of *perceiving* (**voir, entendre, sentir,** etc.), when the subject of the dependent verb is also the object of the principal :

Nous avons vu **passer** les soldats.	*We have seen the soldiers passing.*
J'entends **aboyer** le chien.	*I hear the dog barking.*
Il sentait **couler** ses larmes.	*He felt his tears flowing.*

Notice that the infinitive, in such a case, is usually placed *directly* after the verb of perception.

§ **257.** The infinitive is also used, for the sake of conciseness, instead of the indicative, conditional, or subjunctive, in substantival, adjectival, and adverbial clauses—

In Substantival Clauses generally when the subject of the dependent verb and the subject of the principal designate the same person:

Il croyait **rêver.**	**He** *thought* **he** *was dreaming.*
Je déclare m'**être trompé.**	**I** *declare* **I** *was mistaken.*
Je voudrais bien **pouvoir** vous accompagner.	**I** *wish* **I** *could accompany you.*
Je me figure l'**avoir** déjà **vu** quelque part.	**I** *fancy* **I** *have already seen him somewhere.*

Obs. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the infinitive of the verb **être** is often elegantly understood :

Il se disait partout médecin.	*He said everywhere that he was a doctor.*
Nous nous croyions condamnés à périr.	*We thought we were condemned to perish.*

Exceptions.—The infinitive is not used—

(1) When its use might give rise to ambiguity as to the time of the action :

Je suis sûr **que je tombe.**	*I am sure* **I am falling.**
But Je suis sûr **de tomber.**	*I am sure* **I shall fall.**
Je crois **que je le ferai.**	*I think* **I shall do it.**
But Je crois **le faire.**	*I think* **I am doing it.**
Il a déclaré **qu'il travaillerait.**	*He has declared* that **he would work.**
But Il a déclaré **travailler.**	*He has declared* **that he was working.**

(2) Sometimes for the sake of emphasis :

Je vous ai déjà dit **que je l'ai fait.**	*I told you already that I have done it.*
Il me semble **que je l'ai fait!**	*I have done it,* **I should think!**
But Il me semble **l'avoir fait.**	**I believe** *I have done it.*

(3) Generally after the verbs **répliquer, repartir, riposter, répondre,** and **dire** used in the same sense :

Il répliqua (repartit, riposta, répondit) **qu'il ne s'en souciait pas.**	*He replied that he did not care for it.*

Obs. Notice, further, that the rule is far from being strictly observed in familiar conversation :

J'espère que j'irai,	*instead of*	J'espère y aller.
Il a promis qu'il viendrait,	*instead of*	Il a promis de venir.

§ **258.** In Adjectival Clauses, after a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, when the infinitive may be regarded as the object of that verb—

[*a*] With the relative pronoun **que** standing as *subject* of the infinitive :

La reine, qu'on croyait ne rien **savoir** . . .	*The queen who, they thought, knew nothing . . .*

Obs. A finite verb with **qui** is often used instead of the infinitive with **que**, as :

La reine, **qui**, croyait-on, ne **savait** rien . . .

[*b*] With the relative pronoun **que** standing as *object* of the infinitive :

La ville, que l'ennemi s'imaginait **prendre** sans coup férir . . .	*The town, which the enemy imagined they would take without striking a blow . . .*

§ **259.** In Adverbial Clauses, when the subject of the dependent clause and the subject of the principal sentence designate the same person, after—

Afin de	*used instead of*	Afin que.
À moins de		À moins que . . . ne.
Après		Après que.
Avant de		Avant que.
De crainte de		De crainte que . . . ne.
De peur de		De peur que . . . ne.
De façon à		De façon que.
De manière à		De manière que.
En attendant de		En attendant que.
Pour		Pour que.
Sans		Sans que.

Je ne le croirai pas **à moins de le voir.**	*I shall not believe it* **unless I see it.**
Après avoir lu la lettre, il me la donna.	**After he had read** *the letter, he gave it to me.*
Je ne le ferai pas, **de peur de lui déplaire.**	*I will not do it,* **lest I should displease him.**
Il faut que je lui parle **avant de partir.**	*I must speak to him* **before I go.**

Note.—The infinitive thus used corresponds not only to a personal mood, but also, in some cases, to the English infinitive or participle.

§ **260.** The infinitive is further used sometimes—

(1) Instead of the indicative—

[*a*] After **de**, in a narrative (historical infinitive) :

Je lui racontai ma mésaventure, et lui **de rire.**	*I related to him my mishap, and* **he began** *to laugh.*
Ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs **d'applaudir.**	*So spoke the fox, and flatterers* **applauded.**

[*b*] After **pour**, merely denoting posteriority :

Il conquit presque toute l'Europe **pour s'en aller mourir** sur un rocher désert.	*He conquered nearly the whole of Europe* **and died** *on a lonely rock.*

(2) Instead of the imperative, in official style, documents, notes, etc. (see § 232, Exc.) :

Voir chapitre trois, page vingt-cinq.	**See** *chapter three, page twenty-five.*

Obs. Notice, besides, that the elliptic use of the infinitive in questions and exclamations is much more frequent in French than in English :

Où **aller**?	*Where am I to go?*
Que **dire**?	*What am I to say?*
Que **faire**?	*What is to be done?*

(*c*) THE ACTIVE INFINITIVE USED IN FRENCH TO TRANSLATE AN ENGLISH PASSIVE VERB.

§ **261.** The active infinitive is used in French to translate an English passive verb after verbs of *perceiving* (**voir, entendre, écouter,** etc.), and after **faire** and **laisser** :

J'ai vu **bâtir** toute cette rue.	*I have seen all this street* **being built.**
Où avez-vous vu **jouer** cette pièce?	*Where did you see that play* **performed**?

C'est la romance que j'ai entendu **chanter** hier soir.	*It is the song I heard* **(sung)** *yesterday evening.*
Il fit **ouvrir** toutes les portes.	*He had all the gates* **opened.**
Quand le ferez-vous **faire**?	*When will you have it* **done**?
Ne vous laissez pas **effrayer.**	*Do not let yourself* **be frightened.**
L'ennemi s'était laissé **envelopper** de toutes parts.	*The enemy had let themselves* **be hemmed** *in on all sides.*

Obs. 1. Notice that the infinitive is generally placed directly after **voir, entendre, faire,** etc., and when it governs a conjunctive personal pronoun, that pronoun stands before the first verb :

Je **le lui ferai faire.**	*I will make him do it.*

Obs. 2. When the infinitive has a direct object, the name of the agent stands in the dative in French :

J'ai fait réciter sa leçon **à Henri.**	*I made Henry recite his lesson.*
Avez-vous jamais entendu dire pareille chose **à votre frère**?	*Have you ever heard your brother say such a thing?*

Other prepositions than **à** may sometimes be used, chiefly **de** and **par,** when the corresponding prepositions are used in English :

Avez-vous vu jouer Hamlet **par** cet acteur?	*Have you seen Hamlet played* **by** *this actor?*

EXCEPTION.—After verbs of *perceiving* and **laisser** (but not after *faire*), the agent may be placed before the infinitive, and in that case no preposition is used :

Avez-vous jamais entendu **votre frère** dire pareille chose?	*Have you ever heard your brother say such a thing?*
Avez-vous vu **cet acteur** jouer Hamlet?	*Have you seen this actor play Hamlet?*

Obs. 3. The French active corresponding, in such constructions, both to the English passive and active, there may sometimes arise some ambiguity apart from the context. Thus :

Je le ferai écrire	*may mean*	*I will make him write.* *I will have it written.*
Je le lui ai fait dire	,, ,,	*I have made him say it.* *I have had it said to him.*
L'homme que j'ai vu peindre	,, ,,	*The man whom I saw painting.* *The man whom I saw being painted.*

Obs. 4. Reflexive verbs used after **faire** lose their reflexive pronoun :

Votre arrivée fera **évanouir** toutes ses craintes.	*Your arrival will make all his fears vanish.*
Faites-le **taire.**	*Make him keep silent.*

§ **262.** The active infinitive is also used in French to translate an English passive verb after the preposition **à** denoting *aptness, fitness, destination, distinctive feature,* and preceded immediately by—

(1) A noun :

Une maison **à vendre.**	*A house* **to be let.**
Une chapitre **à relire.**	*A chapter* **to be read again.**
Une chose **à voir.**	*A thing* **to be seen.**
Un point **à ne pas négliger.**	*A point* **not to be neglected.**

(2) A verb expressing *manner of being* (**être, devenir, rester, se trouver, sembler, paraître,** etc.), or a verb of *saying* or *thinking* :

Ils sont Ils restent Ils semblent Je les déclare Je les crois } fort **à plaindre.**	*They are* *They remain* *They seem to be* *I declare them to be* *I think them to be* } *much* **to be pitied.**
Il est **à espérer** que la guerre sera bientôt finie.	*It is* **to be hoped** *that the war will soon be over.*
C'est **à savoir.**	*That remains* **to be seen.**

Obs. 1. The active infinitive corresponds also to the English passive after **c'est** followed by an adjective governing the preposition **à** :

C'est facile **à apprendre.**	*It is easily* **learnt.**

Obs. 2. The English passive infinitive is often rendered by the reflexive form :

Cela ne peut **se faire.**	*That cannot* **be done.**

(*d*) THE INFINITIVE USED IN ENGLISH, BUT NOT IN FRENCH.

§ **263.** The English infinitive is rendered in French by the conjunction **que** with a personal mood after verbs of *saying, thinking, supposing, knowing, wishing,* when the direct object of those verbs—or their subject if they are in the passive—is the subject of the infinitive :

L'espion déclara **que l'ennemi avait abandonné** son camp.	*The spy declared the enemy to have abandoned their camp.*

On dit **que la reine fut emprisonnée** dans cette chambre (*or* La reine, dit-on, fut . . .).	*The queen is said to have been imprisoned in that room.*
Je croyais / Je savais **qu'ils étaient partis.**	*I thought / I knew them to be gone.*
Supposons **que la chose soit** vraie.	*Let us suppose the thing to be true.*
Il désire / Il souhaite / Il veut **que vous alliez** avec lui.	*He wishes you to go with him.*

Obs. 1. After the same verbs, the English infinitive *to be* is often unexpressed in French :

On les dit / croit / sait / suppose fort riches. — *They are said / thought / known / supposed* **to be** *very rich.*

Obs. 2. Notice also the difference of construction between English and French in the following sentences :

Je ne puis rien trouver **qui justifie** ces infâmes accusations.	*I cannot find anything to justify these infamous accusations.*
Le privilège avait si peu de valeur **qu'il était** presque négligé.	*The privilege had so little value as to be almost neglected.*
Il est inutile **que vous essayiez.**	*It is useless for you to try.*
C'était un endroit fait exprès **pour l'apparition** d'un revenant.	*It was a most proper spot for a ghost to appear in.*
Il n'est pas assez puissant **pour que nous ayons** rien à redouter de sa colère.	*He is not powerful enough for us to have anything to fear from his wrath.*
Il était trop inconstant **pour qu'aucun de nous se fût** à lui.	*He was too fickle for any of us to trust him.*
C'en était plus **qu'il n'en pouvait** supporter.	*This was too much for him to bear.*

(e) THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT ANY PREPOSITION.

§ **264.** The infinitive is used without any preposition—

(1) As subject:

Mourir pour la patrie, c'est le sort le plus beau.	*To die for one's country is the most glorious fate.*
Penser à vous, vous **écrire**, ce sera là ma seule consolation.	*To think of you, to write to you, will be my only consolation.*
Renoncer à ce projet lui semblait impossible.	*To give up this project seemed impossible to him.*

EXCEPTION.—The preposition **de** is generally used before the infinitive-subject in inverted sentences beginning with **ce** followed by the verb **être** and the conjunction **que**:

C'est se tromper que **de** le croire.	*To believe it is to be mistaken.*

Obs. When **c'est** is not followed by the conjunction **que**, the use of **de** is imperative:

C'est une moquerie **de** parler ainsi.	*To speak thus is a mockery.*

(See also § 271 (1).)

(2) After **paraître, sembler,** the impersonal verbs **il fait, il faut, il vaut autant, il vaut mieux,** and **c'est** preceded by an infinitive-subject, or introducing one in inverted sentences:

Vous paraissez / Vous semblez **vous amuser** beaucoup.	*You seem to enjoy yourself much.*
Il fait bon **lire** au coin du feu.	*It is pleasant to read by the fireside.*
Il me faut **partir.**	*I must start.*
Il vaut mieux tout lui **dire.**	*It is better to tell him everything.*
Le croire, c'est **se tromper.** / C'est **se tromper** que de le croire.	*To believe it is to be mistaken.*

(3) After the modal verbs **devoir, pouvoir, savoir, vouloir, faire, laisser, oser,** after verbs of *declaring, perceiving, preferring, wishing,* and generally after verbs of *motion* (see Appendix):

Il doit / Il peut / Il veut **venir** demain.	*He is to / He can / He wishes to come to-morrow.*
Saurez-vous / Oserez-vous le **faire**?	*Will you know how / Will you dare to do it?*
Je l'ai fait / Je l'ai laissé / Je l'ai vu / Je l'ai entendu **sortir.**	*I have made / I have let / I have seen / I have heard him go out.*
Il aima mieux / Il préféra **se taire.**	*He preferred to keep silent.*
Nous allâmes / Nous courûmes / Nous revînmes les **chercher.**	*We went / We ran / We came back to fetch them.*

(4) When standing in apposition to a direct object:

Je n'aurai qu'une consolation, **penser** à vous et vous **écrire.**	*I shall only have one consolation, to think of you and to write to you.*

(5) When used elliptically in questions or exclamations, or instead of an imperative:

Que **faire**?	*What is to be done?*
Lui, vous **abandonner**!	*He, forsake you!*
Écrire le verbe *aimer.*	*Write the verb* aimer.

(6) After **que**, meaning *what*:

Dites-moi que **faire.**	*Tell me what to do.*

(*f*) THE INFINITIVE PRECEDED BY A PREPOSITION.

I.—*Preliminary Remarks.*

§ **265**. Most transitive verbs, though governing a noun without a preposition, require one (generally **de**) when their direct object is an infinitive:

Il craint **d'échouer.**	*He fears he will fail.*
Je regrette **de refuser.**	*I regret to refuse.*
N'aimez-vous pas **à lire**?	*Do you not like reading?*

§ **266**. Many verbs, especially *impersonal* verbs and verbs of *commanding* and *advising*, require **de** before the following infinitive, though they take **à** before a noun:

Il convient **aux** enfants **d'être** modestes.	*It becomes children to be modest.*
J'avais dit **à** cet homme **de revenir.**	*I had told that man to come back.*
Le médecin **lui** a conseillé **de voyager.**	*The doctor has advised him to travel.*
Avez-vous promis **à** vos amis **d'y aller**?	*Did you promise your friends you would go?*

§ **267**. After a few verbs the infinitive is sometimes used with a preposition, sometimes without, or with different prepositions, the meaning changing in some cases, and in others remaining the same (see list in Appendix):

Je désire / Je souhaite (**de**) le faire.	*I wish to do it.*
Continuez à (or **de**) travailler.	*Continue to work.*
On les força à (or **de**) s'exiler.	*They were compelled to go into exile.*
Elle prétend **gouverner.**	*She pretends to govern.*
Elle prétend à **gouverner.**	*She aspires to govern.*
Il ne fait que **sortir.**	*He is always out.*
Il ne fait que **de sortir.**	*He has just gone out.*
Je viens lui **parler.**	*I have come to speak to him.*
Je viens **de** lui **parler.**	*I have just spoken to him.*
Je viens **pour** lui **parler.**	*I have come in order to speak to him.*
Si je viens à lui **parler.**	*If I happen to speak to him.*

Obs. Verbs of motion, which take no preposition before an infinitive when denoting the result of the action [§ 264 (3)], generally take **pour** to express an intention:

J'irai le **voir.**	*I will go and see him.*
J'irai **pour** le **voir.**	*I will go in order to see him.*

§ **268**. The infinitive is also used with different prepositions—

(1) After nouns, according to the sense in which they are taken:

Je n'ai pas le temps **de** lire.	*I have no time to read.*
Je n'ai pas de temps **à** perdre.	*I have no time to lose.*
Il a eu la gloire **de** vaincre.	*He had the glory of conquering.*
Il n'a pas eu de gloire **à** vaincre.	*He had no glory in conquering.*
Prenez la peine **de** vous asseoir.	*Take the trouble to sit down.*
Vous n'avez pas pris de peine **à** le faire.	*You have taken no trouble in doing it.*

(2) After adjectives, especially those which generally require **à**, the preposition **de** being required after them when they are used impersonally:

C'est / Cela paraît, facile **à** arranger.		*It is* / *It appears* *easy to arrange that.*
But Il est / Il paraît facile **d'**arranger cela.		

II.—*The Infinitive preceded by* à.

§ **269.** The infinitive is preceded by **à** when it stands—

(1) As direct object after **aimer, apprendre, enseigner, montrer, donner, chercher, trouver,** and a few more transitive verbs (see list in Appendix) :

Il aime / Il apprend } à dessiner.	*He likes / He learns } drawing.*
Je cherche à me rappeler ce qu'il nous a dit.	*I am trying to remember what he said to us.*
Que trouvez-vous à admirer dans cet ouvrage ?	*What do you find to admire in that work?*

Obs. Notice especially the use of **à** after **avoir** :

J'ai beaucoup **à** faire.	*I have much to do.*

(2) As indirect object after verbs denoting *aim, purpose, inclination, exhortation, employment, habit,* etc. (see list in Appendix) :

Il aspire / Il vise } à gouverner.	*He aspires to govern.*
Songez / Travaillez } à vous corriger.	*Think of correcting / Strive to correct } yourself.*
Il les encouragea / Il les excita / Il les poussa / Il les exhorta } à se révolter.	*He encouraged / He excited / He urged / He exhorted } them to revolt.*
Accoutumez-vous / Habituez vous } à vous lever de bonne heure.	*Accustom yourself to get up early.*

(3) As complement after most nouns and adjectives which, according to §§ 28 and 47, require **à** before a noun, chiefly to express *aptness, fitness, qualification, tendency, purpose, use* (see, however, § 268) :

Votre promptitude **à** me répondre.	*Your promptness in answering me.*
La tendance à tout exagérer.	*The tendency to exaggerate everything.*
Le penchant **à** rimer.	*The inclination to rhyme.*
Des cartes **à** jouer.	*Playing cards.*
Je suis prêt **à** partir.	*I am ready to start.*
Il est enclin **à** se vanter.	*He is given to boasting.*
Nous sommes tous sujets **à** nous tromper.	*We are all liable to error.*

§ **270.** The infinitive is also used with **à**—

(1) After **être**, meaning *to be in the act of . . ., in the midst of . . .*:

Je suis **à** travailler.	*I am working.*
Il était **à** lire le journal.	*He was reading the newspaper.*

(2) When it has a passive meaning (see § 262):

Une chose **à** voir.	*A thing to be seen.*
Ils sont **à** plaindre.	*They are to be pitied.*
C'est facile **à** apprendre.	*It is easily learnt.*

EXCEPTION.—No preposition is used after **faire, laisser,** and verbs of *perceiving*:

Il fit **fermer** toutes les portes.	*He had all the gates closed.*

(3) When it stands instead of an adverb, the preposition **à** having the force of *enough*:

Il gèle **à** pierre fendre (*i.e.* enough to split stones).	*It is freezing very hard.*
On applaudit **à** tout rompre (*i.e.* enough to break everything).	*They applauded enthusiastically.*
Elle est mise **à** ravir.	*She is dressed admirably.*
Il écrit **à** faire pitié.	*He writes pitifully.*

Obs. Notice also the use of **à** in the sense of *enough* in such sentences as—

C'est **à** en mourir de honte.	*It is enough to make one die with shame.*
Je vis alors un spectacle **à** attendrir un cœur de roche.	*I then saw a spectacle sad enough to move a heart of stone.*

(4) Often instead of a present participle with **en,** chiefly to express *means, manner, employment, supposition*:

Il s'est ruiné **à** bâtir ce palais.	*He ruined himself in building this palace.*
Nous avons eu beaucoup de plaisir **à** le revoir.	*We have had great pleasure in seeing him again.*
J'ai passé toute la matinée **à** écrire.	*I have spent all the morning in writing.*
On deviendrait bientôt égoïste **à** vivre ainsi.	*One would soon become selfish in living thus.*
À en juger d'après les apparences . . .	*To judge from appearances . . .*
À l'entendre . . .	*According to his account . . .*
À tout prendre . . .	*Upon the whole . . .*
À bien prendre les choses . . .	*If you consider the matter in the right light . . .*

III.—*The Infinitive preceded by* de.

§ **271**. The infinitive is preceded by **de** when it stands—

(1) In apposition to the grammatical subject of impersonal verbs and expressions [see, however, § 264 (2)]:

Il ne me convient pas **d'**obéir.	*It does not suit me to obey.*
Il importe **d'**être vigilant.	*It is important to be watchful.*
Il est difficile **de** vaincre ses passions.	*It is difficult to conquer one's passions.*

(2) As direct object after by far the greater part of transitive verbs, especially those expressing *feelings of the mind*, *blame* or *praise*, *permission* or *refusal*, *promise*, *prayer*, *advice*, *command* (see list in Appendix):

Je crains **de** lui déplaire.	*I am afraid of displeasing him.*
On le blâma / On le loua } **de** s'être tu.	*He was blamed / He was praised* } *for having kept silent.*
Je vous permets / Je vous prie / Je vous conseille / Je vous ordonne } **de** le faire.	*I allow / I beg / I advise / I order* } *you to do it.*

(3) As indirect object of most of the verbs which, according to § 215, require **de** before a noun (see list in Appendix):

Ne parle-t-il pas **d'**aller en Amérique?	*Does he not speak of going to America?*
La reine le remercia **d'**avoir si bien travaillé.	*The queen thanked him for having worked so well.*
Je me réjouis **de** le revoir.	*I rejoice to see him again.*
Il se pique / Il se vante } **de** mieux faire.	*He prides himself on / He boasts of* } *doing better.*

(4) As complement of most nouns and adjectives which, according to §§ 29 and 48, require **de** before a noun:

Le désir **de** briller.	*The wish to shine.*
L'impossibilité **de** fuir.	*The impossibility to flee.*
Le talent **de** plaire.	*The talent of pleasing.*
Il était { digne / fier / las } **de** commander.	*He was* { *worthy / proud / weary* } *of commanding.*

(5) In the second term of a comparison after **aimer mieux, valoir mieux,** and generally after **plutôt que** :

J'aime mieux } partir que **d'**atten-	*I prefer* } *to start than to wait.*
Il vaut mieux } dre.	*It is better* }
Il donna sa démission plutôt que **d'**obéir.	*He resigned rather than obey.*

(6) Instead of the past definite in a narrative (historical infinitive) :

Ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs **d'**applaudir.	*So spoke the fox, and flatterers applauded.*

IV.—*The Infinitive preceded by* **pour.**

§ **272.** **Pour** is used before an infinitive (see § 259) in the sense of—

(1) *In order to* :

J'irai **pour** vous faire plaisir.	*I will go to please you.*
Il faut manger **pour** vivre, et non pas vivre **pour** manger.	*We must eat to live, not live to eat.*

(2) *For, because* :

Il fut mis à mort **pour** avoir mutilé un crucifix.	*He was put to death for having mutilated a crucifix.*

(3) *Enough to, wherewith* :

Voilà **pour** le mettre en colère.	*That's enough to make him angry.*

(4) *Though, although* :

Pour être pauvre, il n'en est pas moins honnête.	*Poor though he be, he is none the less honest.*

§ **273.** **Pour** is further used before an infinitive to denote—

(1) *Proportion,* especially after **assez** and **trop** :

Je ne suis pas assez sot **pour** le croire.	*I am not foolish enough to believe it.*
Ils sont trop loin **pour** nous entendre.	*They are too far to hear us.*

(2) *Posteriority* :

Il s'en alla **pour** revenir quelques minutes après.	*He went away and came back a few minutes after.*

Obs. Notice also the idiomatic use of **pour** preceded and followed by the same infinitive to denote comparison :

Périr **pour** périr, il vaut mieux périr vainqueurs.	*If we must perish, it is better to perish victorious.*

The Participle.

(*a*) PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

§ **274.** The participle (present or past) must always clearly refer to some noun or pronoun distinctly expressed, either in the participial clause or in the rest of the sentence :

Espérant vous voir demain, **je** ne vous écris que quelques lignes.	*As I hope to see you to-morrow, I will only write you a few lines.*

Obs. In the writings of the seventeenth century, the participle not unfrequently refers to a personal pronoun virtually understood in a possessive adjective, but such a sylleptical construction should be avoided now. Do not say, for instance—

Espérant vous voir demain, ma lettre sera fort courte.	*As I hope to see you to-morrow, my letter will be very short.*
But **Comme j'espère** vous voir demain, ma lettre sera fort courte.	

§ **275.** When the noun or pronoun to which the participle refers does not stand in the participial clause, it must be the subject of the sentence :

Arrivés le matin, **nous** repartîmes dans la soirée.	*Having arrived in the morning, we started again in the evening.*

Obs. Formerly the participle was frequently used in connection with a direct or indirect object, but this irregular construction should be avoided now. Do not say, for instance—

Étant tombé par terre, ils me prirent,	*Having fallen down, I was caught.*
But Étant tombé par terre, **je fus pris.**	

§ **276.** When the participle refers to the subject of the sentence, and is preceded by it, a personal pronoun subject is sometimes placed before

the following verb, but this pleonasm had better be avoided. Do not say, for instance—

L'ennemi nous ayant aperçus, il se retira,
But L'ennemi, nous ayant aperçus, **se retira.**
} *The enemy, having perceived us, retired.*

§ **277.** Both the present and past participles may be used absolutely with a noun or pronoun :

Le cas échéant.	*The case occurring.*
Leur geôlier s'étant endormi, ils s'échappèrent.	*Their gaoler having fallen asleep, they escaped.*
La paix signée, tout fut oublié.	*Peace once signed, everything was forgotten.*

§ **278.** Both the present and past participles—the latter especially—have formed masculine and feminine nouns :

Des **arrivants** ; des **brisants** ; des **combattants.**	*Comers ; rocks* or *breakers ; combatants.*
Une **débitante** ; une **figurante** ; des **variantes.**	*A retailer ; a ballet-dancer ; different readings.*
Des **conjurés** ; des **reçus** ; des **produits.**	*Conspirators ; receipts ; products.*
Une **battue** ; une **pensée** ; une **vue,** etc.	*A battue ; a thought ; a view, etc.*

Obs. 1. The nouns thus formed are not always spelt like the corresponding participles, although the pronunciation remains the same :[1]

PARTICIPLES.		NOUNS.	
Extravaguant.	*Raving, talking wildly.*	Un extravagant.	*An extravagant man.*
Fabriquant.	*Manufacturing ; forging.*	Un fabricant.	*A manufacturer.*
Intriguant.	*Perplexing ; intriguing.*	Un intrigant.	*An intriguer.*

Obs. 2. Both participles have also formed prepositions and conjunctions, as **durant, moyennant, nonobstant, pendant, suivant, touchant, excepté, hormis, vu, attendu que, pendant que, pourvu que,** etc.

[1] Several nouns come directly from *Latin* participles, as *accident, incident, manant, objet, pente, perte, quête, trait,* etc.

(*b*) THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

I.—*Differences between the Present Participle and the Verbal Adjective.*

§ **279.** The present participle, being *always invariable* in modern French, should be carefully distinguished from the verbal adjective, which, like any other adjective, agrees in gender and number with its noun :

Des îles **flottant** vers le rivage.	*Islands floating towards the shore.*
But Des îles **flottantes.**	*Floating islands.*

§ **280.** General Rule.—The present participle expresses an *action*, whilst the verbal adjective denotes a *state* or *quality* :

Des enfants **aimant** leur mère.	*Children loving their mother.*
But Des enfants **aimants.**	*Loving (affectionate) children.*

§ **281.** Special Rules.—According to the general rule, the word in **-ant** is a present participle, and consequently remains invariable—

(1) When it has a direct object :

Ce sont des hommes généreux, **obligeant tout le monde.**	*They are generous men, obliging everybody.*

Exceptions. — The participle **ayant** takes the mark of the plural in the following legal expressions, in which it is used substantively :

Les **ayants** cause.	*The assigns.*
Les **ayants** droit.	*The claimants.*

(2) When it is preceded by the negative **ne** :

Des visages **ne souriant** que d'un air moqueur.	*Faces which only smile scornfully.*

(3) When it is—or may be—preceded by the preposition **en** (unless it be a noun) :

Nous avons visité la ville **en courant.**	*We visited the town hurriedly.*
But La côte abonde en **courants** dangereux.	*The coast abounds in dangerous currents.*

(4) When it may be replaced by an adverbial clause introduced by **comme, parce que, puisque, quoique, si,** etc. :

Sachant(*i.e.* comme nous savions) que vous viendriez bientôt, nous ne vous avons pas écrit.	*Knowing that you would come soon, we have not written to you.*
Pourquoi le guide, **voyant** (*i.e.* puisqu'il voyait) le danger, ne s'est-il pas arrêté?	*Why, seeing the danger, did not the guide stop?*

(5) Generally when it may be replaced by the relative pronoun **qui** with another verb than **être** :

La mer, **mugissant** (*i.e.* qui mugissait) à nos pieds, couvrait le bruit de nos voix.	*The sea, which roared at our feet, was drowning the sound of our voices.*

(6) Generally when it is *followed* by an adverb, the adverb being, as a rule, placed after the verb :

Des plaisirs **renaissant** constamment.	*Pleasures ever renewed.*

§ **282.** The word in **-ant** is, on the contrary, a verbal adjective, and consequently agrees—

(1) When it may be replaced by a qualificative adjective :

Ce sont des personnes **obligeantes** (*i.e.* serviables).	*They are obliging people.*

(2) When it is construed with **être** or a verb denoting manner of being, as **devenir, paraître, sembler** :

Tous les visages étaient **souriants.**	*Every face was smiling.*
Elle semblait **mourante.**	*She seemed to be dying.*

(3) When it might be construed with **être** preceded by the relative pronoun **qui,** *i.e.* when it is a mere epithet :

La mer **mugissante** (*i.e.* qui était mugissante) couvrait le bruit de nos voix.	*The roaring sea was drowning the sound of our voices.*

(4) Generally when it is *preceded* by an adverb, the adverb always standing before the adjective it modifies :

Des plaisirs sans cesse **renaissants.**	*Ever renewed pleasures.*
Ses récits, toujours **amusants,** nous charmaient.	*His tales, always amusing, delighted us.*

Exceptions. — Some adverbs, chiefly adverbs of time and place, may precede the present participle (see § 304, Exc.) :

Nous la trouvâmes toujours **amusant** les enfants.	*We found her still amusing the children.*

(5) When it has a passive sense :

Payer à beaux deniers **comptants** (*i.e.* comptés immédiatement).	*To pay cash down.*
Des couleurs **voyantes** (*i.e.* vues trop aisément).	*Gaudy colours.*

Obs. The distinction between the present participle and the verbal adjective is sometimes so subtle that the nature of the word in **-ant** depends altogether on the intention of the writer. If it is meant to denote a momentary action, an accidental circumstance, it is a present participle ; if, on the contrary, the action is continuous, the circumstance habitual, it is a verbal adjective.

§ **283.** Verbal adjectives are not always spelt like the corresponding participles :

PARTICIPLES.		ADJECTIVES.	
Adhérant.	*Adhering.*	Adhérent.	*Adherent.*
Affluant.	*Flowing into ; crowding.*	Affluent.	*Affluent, tributary.*
Différant.	*Differing.*	Différent.	*Different.*
Équivalant.	*Being equivalent.*	Équivalent.	*Equivalent.*
Excellant.	*Excelling.*	Excellent.	*Excellent.*
Précédant.	*Preceding.*	Précédent.	*Preceding, previous.*
Convainquant.	*Convincing ; convicting.*	Convaincant.	*Convincing.*
Provoquant.	*Provoking, urging.*	Provocant.	*Provoking.*
Suffoquant.	*Suffocating.*	Suffocant.	*Suffocating.*
Vaquant (à)	*Being vacant ; attending (to).*	Vacant.	*Vacant, empty.*
Extravaguant.	*Raving, talking wildly.*	Extravagant.	*Extravagant, wild.*
Fatiguant.	*Fatiguing.*	Fatigant.	*Fatiguing, tiresome.*
Intriguant.	*Intriguing.*	Intrigant.	*Intriguing, meddling.*
Négligeant.	*Neglecting.*	Négligent.	*Neglectful.*

II.—*The Gerund.*

§ **284.** The gerund, *i.e.* the present participle preceded by the preposition **en**, is chiefly used to express *simultaneousness, means, concession,* or *supposition* :

Ne vous battez pas, même **en jouant.**	*Do not fight, even whilst playing.*
Il s'est enrichi **en** les **ruinant.**	*He enriched himself by ruining them.*
Tout en parlant beaucoup, il ne dit rien.	*Though he speaks much, he says nothing.*
En le **faisant,** vous me rendrez un grand service.	*If you do it, you will render me a great service.*

Obs. 1. The gerund must, as a rule, refer to the subject of the principal sentence :

Je les verrai **en arrivant.**	*I shall see them on arriving.*

EXCEPTIONS.— Sometimes, however, it may refer to the object or even to a noun understood, if there is no ambiguity :

L'appétit vient **en mangeant.**	*The more one gets, the more one wants.*

Obs. 2. The preposition **en** is sometimes understood, especially after the verb **aller** used to express the progress of an action :

Généralement parlant.	*Generally speaking.*
Sa renommée **allait** (en) **grandissant.**	*His fame went on increasing.*

III.—*Cases in which the Present Participle should not be used.*

§ **285.** The English word in **-ing** should be rendered by a noun, when it has neither verbal nor adjectival force :

Les **déchirements** de la faim.	*The* **gnawings** *of hunger.*
La **chasse** aux ours.	*Bear* **hunting.**

§ **286.** When it has a verbal force, it should be translated, as a rule—

(1) By an infinitive alone, if used—

[*a*] As subject or complement of the predicate :

Voir, c'est **croire.**	**Seeing** *is* **believing.**

[*b*] Directly after a preposition :

Elle était près **de s'évanouir.**	*She was on the point* **of fainting.**
Il partit **sans** rien **dire** à personne.	*He started* **without saying** *anything to any one.*

EXCEPTION.—When the English preposition is rendered by **en,** the present participle is used :

Je les verrai **en arrivant.**	*I shall see them on arriving.*

(2) By an infinitive preceded by the preposition **à,** when used to denote *purpose* :

Une machine **à coudre.**	*A* **sewing-***machine.*
Une salle **à manger.**	*A* **dining-***room.*
But Une salle **de danse.**	*A* **dancing-***room.*

(3) By an infinitive or a dependent clause, when it follows a possessive adjective or a noun or pronoun in the possessive case :

Il fut banni par le sénat **pour avoir agi** ainsi.	*The senate banished him* **on account of his having acted** *thus.*
N'êtes-vous pas surpris **qu'il ait réussi ?**	*Are you not surprised* **at his having succeeded ?**
Voilà ce qui arrive, **lorsqu'un enfant n'obéit pas** à ses parents.	*Such are the consequences* **of a child's not obeying** *his parents.*
S'ils le désirent, ce n'est pas une raison **pour que vous le fassiez.**	**Their wishing it** *is no reason* **for your doing it.**

Obs. 1. It is also rendered by an infinitive or an adjectival clause after verbs of perception (**entendre, sentir, voir,** etc.) :

Je l'ai vu **passer** ce matin.	*I saw him* **passing** *this morning.*
Je les ai entendus **qui chantaient.**	*I heard them* **singing.**

Obs. 2. It is rendered by the indicative when it is governed by the temporal conjunctions *when, whilst, since* :

Pendant que **j'étais** à Rome . . .	*Whilst* **staying** *at Rome* . . .

287. In the above cases, and even when the use of the present participle would be perfectly correct, it is often elegant to translate the verb by a noun :

Pendant **mon séjour** à Rome . . .	*Whilst* **staying** *at Rome* . . .
À sa vue . . .	*On* **seeing** *him* . . .

(*c*) THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

I.—*Preliminary Observation.*

§ **288.** The past participle is in some cases variable, in others invariable, and when it does agree, the agreement takes place sometimes with the subject, sometimes with the direct object, but **never** with the *indirect.*

II.—*The Past Participle without any Auxiliary.*

§ **289.** The past participle used without any auxiliary agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the noun or pronoun it qualifies :

Un livre **relié.**	*A bound book.*
Des livres **reliés.**	*Bound books.*
Une rue **plantée** d'arbres.	*A street planted with trees.*

Obs. This rule applies to all past participles accompanied by such verbs as **devenir, paraître, rester, sembler, se trouver,** etc. :

Elles paraissaient (*or* semblaient) **émues.**	*They seemed to be moved.*
Ils restèrent longtemps **divisés.**	*They long remained divided.*
L'armée se trouvait **enfermée** dans un étroit défilé.	*The army found itself shut up in a narrow defile.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) The past participle is invariable when it *precedes* the noun or pronoun, and the auxiliary **avoir** is understood :

Écrit trois lettres.	*Written three letters.*

(2) **Approuvé, attendu, non compris, y compris, entendu, excepté, ouï, passé, supposé, vu,** used as prepositions *before* a noun or pronoun, are invariable :

Attendu sa jeunesse.	*On account of his youth.*
Excepté eux.	*Except them.*
But Eux **exceptés.**	*They excepted.*

(3) The compound participles **ci-inclus** (=*enclosed*), and **ci-joint** (=*annexed*) are invariable—

[*a*] At the beginning of the sentence :

Ci-joint (*or* **ci-inclus**), vous trouverez la copie de cette lettre.	*Enclosed you will find the copy of that letter.*

[*b*] When the following noun is not preceded by any determinative word :

Vous trouverez **ci-inclus** (*or* **ci-joint**) copie de cette lettre.	*You will find enclosed a copy of that letter.*
But Vous trouverez **ci-incluse** (*or* **ci-jointe**) **une** copie de cette lettre.	

III.—*The Past Participle conjugated with* être.

§ **290.** The past participle conjugated with **être** agrees with the subject, whatever its place may be :

Les Romains furent **vaincus.**	*The Romans were defeated.*
Vos frères sont-ils **partis** ?	*Have your brothers started ?*
Que sont **devenus** mes livres ?	*What has become of my books ?*

Exception.—**Être** having in the conjugation of reflexive verbs the meaning of **avoir,** the past participle of a reflexive verb follows the same rule as if it were conjugated with **avoir,** and consequently **never** agrees with the subject (see § 298).

Obs. It follows that the past participles of *impersonal* verbs conjugated with **être** agree with the grammatical subject **il,** and accordingly remain invariable :

Il leur est **arrivé** de grands malheurs.	*Great misfortunes have happened to them.*

IV.—*The Past Participle conjugated with* avoir.

§ **291.** The past participle conjugated with **avoir** agrees with the *direct* object, when that direct object **precedes** it :

Les journaux que vous avez **reçus.**	*The newspapers you have received.*
Combien de journaux avez-vous **reçus** ?	*How many newspapers have you received ?*
But Avez-vous **reçu** les journaux ?	*Have you received the newspapers ?*

Exceptions.—The only exceptions are the participles **échappé, manqué,** which remain invariable in the idioms—

L'avoir **échappé** belle.	*To have had a narrow escape.*
L'avoir **manqué** belle.	*To have missed a fine opportunity.*

Obs. 1. It follows that the past participles of *impersonal* and *neuter* verbs conjugated with **avoir** always remain invariable, even when preceded by **que,** since those verbs cannot have a direct object :

Les fortes gelées qu'il a **fait.**	*The hard frosts we have had.*
Les vingt ans qu'elle a **régné** (*or* **vécu**).	*The twenty years she has reigned* (or *lived*).
Les six mois qu'a **duré** la guerre.	*The six months that the war lasted.*
Les trois heures que nous avions **dormi.**	*The three hours* (*during which*) *we had slept.*

Obs. 2. Some verbs conjugated with **avoir,** like **pardonner, courir, parler, peser, servir,** etc., may be used both transitively and intransitively,

and in both cases their participles follow the foregoing rules, *i.e.* agree with the preceding direct object when they are transitive, and remain invariable when they are intransitive :

Les deux lieues qu'il a **couru.**	*The two leagues he ran.*
But Les périls qu'il a **courus.**	*The perils he ran.*
Les cent livres que ma malle a **pesé.**	*The hundred pounds my trunk weighed.*
But La malle que j'ai **pesée.**	*The trunk I weighed.*
Vos notes nous ont bien **servi.**	*Your notes have been of great use to us.*
But Ce domestique nous a bien **servis.**	*This servant has served us well.*

Obs. 3. The participles **coûté, valu,** are only used transitively—and accordingly can only agree—when taken in the figurative sense of *to cause, to procure* :

La peine que ce livre m'a **coûtée.**	*The trouble this book has given me.*
But Les six francs que ce livre m'a **coût**	*The six francs this book has cost me.*
Les éloges que son discours lui a **valus.**	*The praises his speech has obtained for him.*
But Les mille francs que ce bijou a **valu.**	*The thousand francs this jewel was worth.*

(Some authors, however, make **coûté** always agree ; others, on the contrary, leave it always invariable.)

§ **292.** Although there is no exception to the rule beyond the two idiomatic locutions already mentioned, its application may present some difficulty in a few special cases :

A.—Past Participle followed by an Infinitive.

§ **293.** The past participle followed by an infinitive is always invariable—having no direct object to agree with—when the direct object depends, not on the participle, but on the infinitive or on the participle and infinitive taken together :

Les discours que j'ai **entendu** prononcer par ces orateurs.	*The speeches I have heard those orators pronounce.*
But Les orateurs que j'ai **entendus** parler.	*The orators I have heard speak.*

Obs. 1. The rule holds good—

(*a*) When there is a preposition between the participle and the infinitive :

Les acteurs qu'il avait **priés** de jouer.	*The actors he had asked to play.*
But Les acteurs que j'aurais **aimé** d'applaudir.	*The actors I should have liked to applaud.*

(*b*) When the infinitive is understood, after such participles as **dû, pu, voulu, désiré, permis :**

Il a fait tous les efforts qu'il a **pu** (faire).	*He has made every effort he could* (*make*).
Nous avons lu les livres que nous avons **voulu** (lire).	*We have read whatever books we wished* (*to read*).

Obs. 2. The past participle **fait** is always invariable when followed by an infinitive, because it forms with the infinitive an inseparable verbal phrase :

Les arbres que j'ai **fait** tailler.	*The trees I have had pruned.*
Pourquoi les avez-vous **fait** rester ?	*Why did you make them stay ?*

B.—Past Participle followed by a Subordinate Clause.

§ **294.** Likewise the past participle followed by a subordinate clause is always invariable—having no direct object to agree with—when the direct object depends, not on the participle, but on the verb which follows :

Les obstacles que j'avais **prévu** qu'il surmonterait.	*The obstacles which I had foreseen he would overcome.*
But Les enfants, que j'ai **avertis** que vous reviendriez ce soir.	*The children, whom I warned that you would come back this evening.*

(Such constructions, being very inelegant, had better be avoided.)

Obs. The rule holds good when the subordinate clause is understood, after such participles as **dû, pu, voulu, désiré, permis :**

Nous avons lu les livres qu'il a **voulu** (que nous lisions).	*We have read whatever books he wished* (*us to read*).

C.—Past Participle preceded by the Pronoun l'.

§ **295.** The past participle preceded by the pronoun l' (**le**) is invariable when that pronoun stands for a whole clause :

La résistance fut plus grande qu'on ne l'avait **supposé** (*i.e.* qu'on n'avait supposé qu'elle serait).	*The resistance was greater than had been anticipated.*

D.—Past Participle preceded by the Pronoun **en**.

§ **296.** The past participle preceded by the pronoun **en** never agrees with it, **en** being an indirect object; but if it is at the same time preceded by a direct object, it agrees with that direct object according to the general rule:

Je vous ai donné sa lettre, en avez-vous **fait** une copie?	*I gave you his letter, did you make a copy of it?*
But Voici sa lettre et la copie **que** j'en ai **faite**.	*Here is his letter and the copy I made of it.*

Obs. The direct object may be an adverb of quantity preceding **en** in the same member of the sentence, and in that case the participle agrees with the noun represented by the adverb:

Combien j'en ai **vus** qui l'ignorent!	*How many I have seen who do not know it!*
Plus il a reçu de lettres, moins il en a **écrites**.	*The more letters he received, the fewer he wrote.*
But Il a écrit plus de lettres qu'il n'en a **reçu**.	*He has written more letters than he has received.*

Exceptions.—The participle remains invariable—

(1) When the adverb of quantity refers to a *following* noun:

Combien j'en ai **connu**, de ces ambitieux!	*How many of those ambitious men I have known!*

(2) After **autant**:

Autant il a rencontré d'obstacles, autant il en a **surmonté**.	*He has overcome as many obstacles as he has met with.*

(Some authors, however, make the participle agree in the latter case.)

E.—Past Participle preceded by a Collective Noun.

§ **297.** When the past participle is preceded by a collective noun followed by another noun in the genitive, it agrees with the term on which the greater stress is laid (see § 199):

La foule de rebelles qu'il avait **rencontrée**.	*The crowd of rebels he had met with.*
La plupart des hommes que j'ai **connus**.	*Most of the men I have known.*

Obs. According to the general rule, the past participle preceded by **le peu de** agrees with that locution, and consequently remains unchanged,

when stress is laid upon it, *i.e.* when it means an *insufficient* quantity ; but when it implies a small, but *sufficient* quantity, the agreement takes place with the following noun :

Le peu d'énergie qu'il a **déployé** a causé sa perte.	*The little energy he displayed* (i.e. *his lack of energy*) *caused his ruin.*
Le peu d'énergie qu'il a **déployée** a suffi pour assurer son succès.	*The little energy he displayed sufficed to ensure his success.*

V.—*The Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.*

§ **298.** **Être** having in the conjugation of reflexive (and reciprocal) verbs the meaning of **avoir**, the past participle of those verbs follows the same rule as if it were conjugated with **avoir**, *i.e.* agrees with its preceding direct object :

Elle s'est **coupée.**	*She has cut herself.*
Ils se sont **vus.**	*They have seen each other.*
But Elle s'est **coupé** le doigt.	*She has cut her finger.*
Ils se sont **écrit.**	*They have written to each other.*

(In the first two examples, the participle agrees with **se**, because **se** is the direct object ; in the last two, **se** being an indirect object, the participle remains invariable.)

Les lettres qu'ils se sont **écrites.**	*The letters they have written to each other.*

(The participle agrees, not with **se**, which is the indirect object, but with the direct object **que**, which precedes it.)

Obs. 1. The reflexive pronoun being always the direct object in *essentially* reflexive verbs, the past participle of such verbs always agrees with it :

Les ennemis s'étaient **enfuis.**	*The enemy had fled.*
L'ambition s'est **emparée** de son âme.	*Ambition has taken possession of his soul.*
Ne s'étaient-ils pas **repentis** ?	*Had they not repented ?*

EXCEPTION.—The only exception is the verb **s'arroger** :

Ils se sont **arrogé** des droits qui ne leur appartenaient pas.	*They have arrogated to themselves rights which did not belong to them.*

S'arroger can, however, be preceded by the direct object **que**, and in that case its past participle agrees with it, according to the general rule :

Les droits **qu'**ils se sont **arrogés.**	*The rights they have arrogated to themselves.*

Obs. 2. The same rule applies to most verbs, used reflexively, the meaning of which changes when they become reflexive, as *douter* (= *to doubt*), **se douter** (= *to suspect*), *attendre* (= *to wait*), **s'attendre** (= *to expect*), *battre* (= *to beat*), **se battre** (= *to fight*), *plaindre* (= *to pity*), **se plaindre** (= *to complain*), *prévaloir* (= *to prevail*), **se prévaloir de** (= *to take advantage of*), *servir* (= *to serve*), **se servir de** (= *to make use of*), *taire* (= *to keep secret*), **se taire** (= *to keep silent*), etc. :

Nous ne nous en étions pas **doutés.**	*We had not suspected it.*
Ils se sont vaillamment **battus.**	*They have fought valiantly.*
S'est-elle **servie** de mes livres ?	*Did she make use of my books?*
Nous ne nous serions pas **tus.**	*We would not have kept silent.*

Obs. 3. Neuter verbs never having a direct object, their past participle always remains invariable when they are used reflexively :

Elle s'est **nui** par cette imprudence.	*She has injured herself by that imprudence.*
Ils s'étaient toujours **plu** à le croire.	*They had always been pleased to believe it.*
Que d'accidents se sont **succédé** !	*How many accidents have followed each other !*

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

A.—*PRELIMINARY REMARKS.*

§ **299.** Many adverbs may be preceded by a preposition, and a few even by the article:

À bientôt.	*Good-bye, till by and by.*
C'est **à peu près** exact.	*It is pretty exact.*
Je ne le ferai jamais, **au grand jamais.**	*Never, never will I do it.*
Nous les voyons **de loin en loin.**	*We see them at long intervals.*
Partez **dès demain.**	*Start not later than to-morrow.*
Il arrivera **sous peu.**	*He will arrive shortly.*
Au plus tard; au plus tôt.	*At the latest; at the soonest.*

§ **300.** A few adverbs, thus preceded by a preposition, form prepositive locutions governing their complements—

(1) Either directly:

Il passera { **par de dans** (*or* **par dehors**) la ville. / **par-dessus** (*or* **par-dessous**) la barrière.	*He will pass* { *through* (*or outside*) *the town.* / *over* (*or under*) *the fence.*
Descendez **de dessus** cette chaise.	*Get down from that chair.*
Sortez **de dessous** la table.	*Get out from under the table.*

(2) Or with the help of a preposition:

L'aigle plane **au-dessus des** nuages.	*The eagle hovers above the clouds.*
Il regarde cela comme **au-dessous de** lui.	*He considers that as beneath him.*
Au dedans de la ville.	*Inside the town.*

§ **301.** Adverbs properly so called cannot, as a rule, have complements.

It is, therefore, important to distinguish the adverbs **alentour, auparavant, dedans, dehors, dessus, dessous,** from the corresponding prepositions **autour de, avant, dans, hors, sur, sous:**

Il était debout, les autres étaient assis **alentour.**	*He was standing, the others were seated all around.*
Les autres étaient assis **autour de lui.**	*The others were seated round him.*
Un mois **auparavant.**	*A month before.*
Avant un mois.	*Before a month.*
Était-il **hors de la maison?** — Non, il était **dedans.**	*Was he outside the house?—No, he was inside.*
Ne le mettez pas **sur la table,** mettez-le **dessous.**	*Do not put it upon the table, put it under.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) A few adverbs derived from adjectives governing the prepositions *à* or *de* have complements preceded by the same prepositions:

Antérieurement (*or* **postérieurement**) **à cette époque.**	*Before* (or *after*) *that time.*
Conformément à vos ordres.	*Conformably to your orders.*
Relativement à leur volume.	*In proportion to their volume.*
Différemment des autres.	*Differently from the others.*
Indépendamment du reste.	*Independently from the rest.*

(2) The following may be directly followed by a complement, without any intermediate preposition:

[*a*] **À part:**

Je dis **à part moi...** *I said to myself...*

[*b*] **Dedans, dehors, dessus, dessous,** only when used two by two with the conjunction *et*:

Dedans et dehors la ville.	*Inside and outside the town.*
Dessus et dessous la table.	*Upon and under the table.*

Dedans et dehors is but little used in that way.

Obs. **Aussitôt** may be used elliptically with a noun followed by a past participle:

Aussitôt la nouvelle arrivée...	*As soon as the news had arrived...*

§ **302.** A few adverbs, such as **apparemment, heureusement, peut-être, sans doute,** may be used at the beginning of a sentence with the conjunction **que**:

Heureusement (*i.e.* il arrive heureusement) **que** ce n'est pas vrai.	*Happily it is not true.*
Peut-être (*i.e.* il peut être) **que** nous irons.	*Perhaps we will go.*

B.—*PLACE OF THE ADVERB.*

§ **303.** Adverbs precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs and phrases they modify:

Il est **vraiment** roi.	*He is truly a king.*
Voici une histoire **infiniment** curieuse.	*Here is an exceedingly curious story.*
Vous marchez **trop** lentement.	*You walk too slowly.*
Nous arrivâmes **tout à fait** à l'improviste, — **juste** à point.	*We arrived quite unexpectedly,—just in time.*

Exceptions.—(1) Most adverbs of *time* and *place* may, and a few must, follow adjectives or participles used adjectively:

Fameux **aujourd'hui,** oublié **demain.**	*Famous to-day, forgotten to-morrow.*
Blanc **devant,** noir **derrière.**	*White in front, black behind.*

(2) Most adverbs of manner in **-ment** may follow past participles used adjectively:

Des paroles prononcées **lentement** (*or* lentement prononcées) . . .	*Words slowly pronounced . . .*

(3) **Autant,** when modifying an adjective or participle used adjectively, must always follow it:

Il est généreux **autant** que riche.	*He is as generous as he is rich.*

Obs. 1. **Assez,** contrary to its English equivalent *enough,* follows the rule:

Les chemins n'étaient pas **assez** sûrs.	*The roads were not safe enough.*
Nous les voyons **assez** souvent.	*We see them pretty often.*

Obs. 2. Adverbs modifying a whole sentence may be placed in the body of the sentence or at the end, as well as at the beginning (see, however § 304, Exc. 1):

Sans doute vous partirez avec eux.	*Doubtless you will start with them.*
Vous partirez **sans doute** avec eux.	
Vous partirez avec eux, **sans doute.**	

Obs. 3. In correlative comparisons the adverbs **plus, moins,** are placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Plus le danger est grand, **plus** la victoire sera glorieuse.	*The greater the peril is, the more glorious the victory will be.*

§ **304.** Adverbs modifying a verb are usually placed after it, if it is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if in a compound tense:

J'aime **beaucoup** ce livre.	*I like this book very much.*
Ils se sont **vaillamment** battus.	*They have fought valiantly.*

Obs. Adverbs are never placed between a conjunctive personal pronoun and its verb:

Nous les voyons **souvent.**	*We often see them.*
Il sort **fort rarement.**	*He very seldom goes out.*

The only exception is the negative **ne** [see EXCEPTIONS, (6)].

EXCEPTIONS. — (1) *Exclamative* and *interrogative* adverbs (**combien, comment, où, pourquoi, quand, tant, tellement,** etc.)—like the adverbs **plus, moins,** in correlative comparisons—are placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Comment expliquez-vous cela?	*How do you explain that?*
Tant on peut se tromper quand on se fie aux apparences!	*So mistaken may we be when we trust to appearances!*

(2) Most adverbs of *time* and *place*, and many adverbs of *manner*, may also be placed at the beginning of the sentence, for the sake of emphasis:

Aujourd'hui tout est changé.	*To-day everything is changed.*
Partout régnait le silence.	*Silence reigned everywhere.*
Ainsi mourut César.	*Thus died Caesar.*

(3) The adverbs **bien, mieux, mal, pis, toujours,** and most adverbs of *quantity*, are generally placed before the verb when it is in the present infinitive:

Bien observer, c'est savoir.	*To observe well is know.*
Tant voyager est fatigant.	*To travel so much is tiring.*

Obs. 1. Many other adverbs may precede the present infinitive for the sake of euphony or emphasis, but in any doubtful case it is safer to adhere to the rule.

Obs. 2. **Mal parler** means *to speak evil, to slander* ; **parler mal,** *to speak incorrectly.*

(4) Most adverbs of *time* and *place*—unless standing emphatically at the beginning of the sentence,—adverbs accompanied by a *complement,* and *adverbial phrases,* usually follow the participle:

Ils sont partis **hier.**	*They left yesterday.*
Nous avons agi **conformément à vos ordres.**	*We have acted conformably to your orders.*
Il avait parlé **à la légère.**	*He had spoken thoughtlessly.*

(5) For the sake of euphony, **long** adverbs of *manner* often follow **short** participles:

Il a dit **éloquemment** ce que nous pensions tous.	*He has eloquently said what we all thought.*

(6) In a negative sentence, **ne** always precedes the verb, and the second part of the negative is placed according to the general rule:

Je **ne** l'aurais **jamais** cru.	*I should never have believed it.*

With a present infinitive, however, **pas, point, plus, guère, jamais, rien,** usually come immediately after **ne,** whilst with a past infinitive their position is optional:

Vous m'aviez promis de **ne jamais** le faire.	*You had promised me never to do it.*
Je crains de **ne pas** avoir (*or* de **n'avoir pas**) compris.	*I fear I have not understood.*

C.—*REPETITION OF THE ADVERB.*

§ **305.** The same adverb may modify several nouns or verbs :

Il vous faudra **beaucoup de courage et de prudence.**	*You will require a good deal of courage and prudence.*
Elle **dessine et peint admirablement.**	*She draws and paints admirably.*

But if two or more adjectives, participles, or adverbs are placed in succession, the adverb which precedes the first must, as a rule, be repeated before each of the others :

Il est **si** habile ou **si** heureux que tout lui réussit.	*He is so clever or lucky that he succeeds in everything.*
Ce plan, **froidement** conçu et **froidement** exécuté . . .	*This plan, coldly conceived and executed . . .*
Il développa ses raisons **fort** habilement et **fort** éloquemment.	*He expounded his reasons very skilfully and eloquently.*

D.—*ADVERBS OF MANNER.*

§ **306.** **Bien** is often used as an adverb of quantity, in the sense of **beaucoup**, and in that case requires the article after it :

Bien des gens en sont convaincus.	*Many people are convinced of it.*

EXCEPTION.—**Bien** does not require the article before **autre :**

Bien d'autres l'ont fait avant lui.	*Many others have done it before him.*

§ **307.** **Bien** is used in many idioms :

On est **bien** ici.	*One is quite comfortable here.*
Il est **bie** en cour.	*He is in favour with the king.*
Il est **bien.**	*He is good-looking.*
Il est **bien** (impers.) . . .	*It is proper . . .*
Nous sommes **bien** ensemble.	*We are on good terms with each other.*
Tout va **bien.**	*All is right.*
Voilà **bien** les enfants !	*That's the way with children !*
Vous voilà **bien !**	*You are in a pretty strait !*
Bien entendu.	*Of course.*
Il l'a **bien** promis, mais . . .	*He certainly promised it, but . . .*

Il y a **bien** trois mois qu'il est parti.	*He started about three months ago.*
Je le veux **bien.**	*I have no objection.*
Voulez-vous **bien** . . . ?	*Will you be so good as to . . . ?*
Il aurait **bien** pu venir.	*He surely might have come.*
Nous le pensions **bien.**	*We thought as much.*
Ferez-vous **bien** cela?	*Will you really do that?*
Nous verrons **bien.**	*We shall see.*
Ou **bien.**	*Or else.*
Si **bien** que, etc.	*So that, etc.*

§ **308.** **Mal** is also used in several idioms :

On est **mal** ici.	*One is not comfortable here.*
Il est **mal** en cour.	*He is out of favour.*
Nous sommes **mal** ensemble.	*We are on bad terms with each other.*
Les choses vont de **mal** en pis.	*Things grow worse and worse.*
Il ne s'en porte pas plus **mal.**	*He is none the worse for it.*
Il a **mal** pris la chose.	*He took the thing amiss.*
Elle s'est trouvée **mal.**	*She has fainted.*
Vous vous en trouverez **mal.**	*You will suffer for it.*
Il est au plus **mal.**	*He is in a hopeless state.*
Il n'y avait pas **mal** de monde, etc.	*There were a good many people, etc.*

Obs. In the two following idioms, **mal** is a real adjective :

Bon an, **mal** an.	*One year with another.*
Bon gré **mal** gré.	*Willing or unwilling.*

§ **309.** The comparatives **mieux** and **pis** are likewise found in a good many idiomatic expressions, in several of which they are used adjectively or substantively :

Elle est **mieux.**	*She is better (in health); handsomer; improved.*
Ses affaires vont de **mieux** en **mieux.**	*His affairs are improving.*
À qui **mieux mieux.**	*Vying with each other.*
Tant **mieux.**	*So much the better.*
Il vaut **mieux** (impers.) . . .	*It is better . . .*
Faute de **mieux.**	*For want of anything better.*
Donnez-moi ce que vous avez de **mieux.**	*Give me the best you have.*
Faites de votre **mieux.**	*Do your best.*
Au **mieux;** le **mieux** du monde.	*As well as can be.*
Il travaille des **mieux.**	*He is one of the best workers.*
Le **mieux** est l'ennemi du bien, etc.	*Let well alone, etc.*

[Continued on next page.

De **pis** en **pis** ; de mal en **pis**.	*Worse and worse ; from bad to worse.*
Tant **pis**.	*So much the worse.*
C'est **pis** que jamais.	*It is worse than ever.*
Qui **pis** est.	*What is worse.*
Le **pis** qui puisse arriver.	*The worst that may happen.*
Il a fait du **pis** qu'il a pu.	*He has done his worst.*
Mettre quelqu'un au **pis**, au **pis** faire.	*To bid some one do his worst.*
À mettre (*or* à prendre) les choses au **pis**.	*To suppose the worst.*
Au **pis** aller.	*At the very worst.*
C'est son **pis** aller, etc.	*It is his last shift, etc.*

§ **310.** **Comme** is both an adverb and a conjunction, whilst **comment** is only an adverb. As an adverb of manner, **comme** is used—

(1) To express comparison, in the sense of *as, like* :

Dur **comme** du fer.	*As hard as iron.*
Lui **comme** tant d'autres.	*He like so many others.*
La lumière est **comme** l'âme des couleurs.	*Light is, as it were, the soul of colours.*

Obs. After **aussi, autant,** etc., **que** must always be used instead of **comme** to connect the two terms of a comparison (see § 53).

(2) Exclamatively, in the sense of *how much, how* :

Comme c'est agréable !	*How very pleasant it is !*
Comme vous l'aimez !	*How much you like him !*
Comme vous êtes beau !	*How handsome you are !*
Voyez **comme** il s'amuse !	*See how much he enjoys himself !*

(3) Like **comment**, in the sense of *how, in what way* ; but, contrary to **comment**, not at the beginning of an interrogative sentence :

Voici **comme** la chose se passa.	*This is how the thing happened.*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Un homme **comme il faut.**	*A gentleman.*
Je n'ai pas encore fini mon travail, mais **c'est tout comme.**	*I have not yet finished my work, but it is as good as done.*
Comme cela.	*So so.*
Il est **comme cela.**	*That is just like him.*
Elle l'a fait **comme** malgré elle.	*She has done it, so to speak, in spite of herself.*
Comme pour (before an infin.), etc.	*As if to, etc.*

§ **311.** **Comment** never denotes comparison or intensity, like **comme**, but is used—

(1) In direct and indirect questions, in the sense of *in what way, how, why, what ?*

Comment vous portez-vous ?	*How do you do ?*
Comment êtes-vous venu ?	*How did you come ?*
Comment ne me l'avez-vous pas dit ?	*Why did you not tell me so ?*
Nous ne savons **comment** nous y prendre.	*We do not know how to set about it.*
Comment avez-vous dit ?	*What did you say ?*

(2) Alone, in exclamations, meaning *what ! indeed !*

Comment ! vous n'êtes pas parti !	*What ! you are not gone !*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Comment cela ?	*How is it ?*
Comment faire ?	*What 's to be done ?*
Savoir le pourquoi et le **comment** d'une chose.	*To know the why and the wherefore of a thing.*

§ **312.** **Seulement**, which forms with **non** the adverbial locution **non-seulement** (= *not only*), has often, with **ne . . . pas**, the meaning of *not even* :

Il **ne** m'a **pas seulement** regardé.	*He has* **not even** *looked at me.*

E.—*ADVERBS OF TIME.*

§ **313.** **Actuellement** means only *now, at the present time.*—The French equivalents of the English *actually* are **en effet, en réalité, effectivement, réellement, même**, etc., and sometimes a verb like **finir, réussir** :

Il est **actuellement** à Paris.	*He is* **now** *in Paris.*
Ce qu'il fit **effectivement** (*or* **bel et bien**).	*Which he* **actually** *did.*
Est-il **réellement** parti ?	*Is he* **actually** *gone ?*
Il travailla tant qu'il **finit par** (*or* **réussit à**) le faire.	*He worked so hard that he* **actually** *did it.*

§ **314.** **Alors** means *then, now, at that time, in that case* :

Jusqu'**alors** j'en avais douté.	*Until then I had doubted it.*
Les mœurs d'**alors.**	*The manners of that time.*
Alors nous refusons.	*In that case we refuse.*

Obs. Notice that *then,* used in the sense of *therefore,* or marking surprise, should be rendered by **donc** :

Vous voyez **donc** bien que cela èst impossible.	*You see then plainly that it is impossible.*
Vous n'avez **donc** pas reçu ma lettre	*You have not, then, received my letter?*

§ **315.** **À présent, maintenant,** are only used in speaking of the present time. *Now,* in a narrative, should therefore be rendered by **alors** :

À présent (*or* **maintenant**) je n'y pense plus.	*Now I no longer think of it.*
But Il comprit **alors** que tout était fini.	*He understood now that all was over.*

§ **316.** **Encore,** in the sense of *even then,* requires the pronoun-subject to be placed after the verb ; if the subject is a noun, it preserves its usual place, but is repeated after the verb in the form of a pronoun :

Je ne vois qu'un moyen, **encore** n'**est-il** pas facile.	*I only see one means, even then it is not an easy one.*
Encore ce moyen n'**est-il** pas facile.	*Even then that means is not easy.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **encore** :

Non-seulement . . ., mais **encore** . . .	*Not only . . ., but also* (or *even*) . . .
Encore une question.	*One more question.*
On lui donna des vêtements et de l'argent **encore.**	*He was given clothes and money besides.*
Encore s'il disait pourquoi !	*If he would but say why !*
Passe **encor**[1] de bâtir, mais planter à cet âge	*Building might be excused, but planting at such a time of life !*

[1] **Encor** may be used in poetry instead of **encore,** which is trisyllabic.

§ **317. Tard**, contrary to most adverbs of time, cannot, as a rule, begin the sentence. It is often used adjectively and substantively, as will be seen in some of the following examples :

Il vaut mieux **tard** que jamais.	*Better late than never.*
Pas plus **tard** que demain.	*Very soon.*
Tôt ou **tard.**	*Sooner or later.*
Il se fait **tard.**	*It is getting late.*
Il est bien **tard** pour le faire.	*It is very late to do it.*
Sur le **tard.**	*Late in the evening ; rather late.*
Il est **tard.**	It *is late.*
But Il est **en retard.**	He *is late.*

§ **318. Tôt**, not preceded by another adverb, is chiefly used—

(1) In the expression **tôt ou tard** (see § 317).

(2) In familiar style :

Faites **tôt.**	*Be quick.*
Vite et **tôt.**	*Quick and soon.*

In the comparative and superlative, and after **assez** and **trop**, its use is very frequent :

Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venu **plus tôt**	*Why did you not come earlier?*
Le plus tôt sera e mieux.	*The sooner the better.*
Au plus tôt.	*As soon as possible.*
Il n'est pas **aussi tôt** que vous le pensez.	*It is not so early as you think.*
Ils étaient arrivés **trop tôt.**	*They had arrived too early.*

§ **319. Tôt** forms with other adverbs the following compounds—

(1) **Aussitôt :**

Il arriva **aussitôt** (*or* **tout aussitôt**).	*He arrived directly.*
Aussitôt après son départ.	*Immediately after his departure*
Aussitôt dit, **aussitôt** fait.	*No sooner said than done.*

(2) **Bientôt :**

J'aurai **bientôt** fini.	*I shall soon have done.*
Cela est **bientôt** dit.	*It is easier said than done.*
À **bientôt.**	*Good-bye, till by and by.*

(3) **Plutôt** (= *rather, sooner*), which must not be confounded with **plus tôt** (only used in speaking of time):

C'est une erreur, ou **plutôt** . . .	*It is an error, or rather . . .*
Je mourrais **plutôt**.	*I would rather die.*
Venez **plutôt** que d'attendre.	*Come* **rather** *than wait.*
But Venez **plus tôt**.	*Come* **earlier**.

(4) **Sitôt**:

Il ne réussira pas de **sitôt**.	*He will not succeed for some time to come.*

Obs. In a comparative sentence with **que**, it seems preferable to use **si tôt** (in two words):

Il ne réussira pas **si tôt** que vous.	*He will not succeed so soon as you.*

(5) **Tantôt**:

Mon travail est **tantôt** achevé.	*My work is almost done, will soon be done.*
Il y a **tantôt** un an que nous ne l'avons vu.	*We have not seen him for about a year.*
À **tantôt**.	*Good-bye, till by and by.*
Sur le **tantôt**.	*This afternoon.*
Je l'ai vu **tantôt**.	*I saw him just now.*
Je le verrai **tantôt**.	*I shall see him presently.*
Tantôt il rit, **tantôt** il pleure.	*Now he laughs, now he cries.*
Tantôt plus, **tantôt** moins.	*Sometimes more, sometimes less.*

§ **320. Toujours**, when it begins a principal sentence in the sense of *however, at least, at any rate*, requires the same construction as **encore** meaning *even then* (see § 316):

S'il ne l'a pas fait, **toujours a-t-il** essayé.	*If he has not done it, at least he has tried.*
Que j'aie eu tort, soit; **toujours est-il** qu'il n'avait pas raison non plus.	*That I was wrong, I will admit; it is none the less a fact that he was not right either.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **toujours**:

À **toujours**; pour **toujours**.	*For ever.*
Il pleut **toujours**.	*It always rains.* / *It is raining still.*
Laissez-les dire, écrivez **toujours**.	*Let them say what they like, go on writing.*

§ **321.** **Tout à coup**, which means *suddenly*, must not be confounded with **tout d'un coup**, which means *with one blow, at a single stroke* :

Tout à coup la terre trembla.	**Suddenly** *the earth trembled.*
Il perdit sa fortune **tout d'un coup.**	*He lost his fortune* **at a single stroke.**

Obs. 1. **Tout d'un coup**, however, is also frequently used in the sense of *suddenly* :

Il est mort **tout d'un coup.**	*He died* **suddenly.**

Obs. 2. Notice the following locutions, also formed with **coup** :

Après coup.	*Afterwards, when too late.*
À tous coups.	*At every moment.*
Coup sur coup.	*One after another.*

§ **322.** **Tout de suite**, which generally means *directly, at once*, has also sometimes the meaning of *successively, at a stretch*, and may therefore be used instead of **de suite** :

Partez **tout de suite.**	*Start* **at once.**
J'ai lu l'ouvrage entier **tout de suite.**	*I read the whole work* **at a stretch.**

But **de suite** only means *one after another, at a stretch, without interruption*, and should not therefore be used instead of **tout de suite** :

Faites-les marcher **de suite.**	*Make them walk* **one after another.**

F.—*ADVERBS OF PLACE.*

§ **323.** **Ailleurs** means *elsewhere, somewhere else, anywhere else* :

Il est mieux ici qu'**ailleurs.**	*He is better here than elsewhere.*
Cherchez **ailleurs.**	*Look somewhere else.*
Vous ne le trouverez pas **ailleurs.**	*You will not find it anywhere else.*
Partout **ailleurs.**	*Everywhere else.*
Nulle part **ailleurs.**	*Nowhere else.*

D'ailleurs is used in the same sense after a word requiring the preposition **de** after it :

On pensait qu'il viendrait de France, il est venu **d'ailleurs.**	*It was thought that he would come from France, he came from somewhere else.*

But **d'ailleurs** means also *besides, moreover, in other respects, after all*:

Il lui promit **d'ailleurs** de ne rien dire.	*He promised him* **moreover** *not to say anything.*
Lui, **d'ailleurs** si raisonnable...	*He, so sensible* **in other respects**...
D'ailleurs, si vous ne le croyez pas...	**After all**, *if you do not believe it*...

§ **324.** **Ci** is no longer used separately, but always joined by a hyphen to the preceding or following word.

EXCEPTION.—**Ci**, however, is used separately in book-keeping, before a sum carried out:

Trois livres à 6 francs, **ci**... 18 francs.	*Three pounds at 6 francs* = 18 *francs.*

§ **325.** The use of **ci** after a noun preceded by **ce, cet, cette, ces,** after **celui, celle,** etc., and before **inclus** and **joint,** has been already noticed. **Ci** is also used—

(1) Interrogatively, after **ce**:

Qu'est-**ce-ci**?	*What means this? What is the matter?*
But Qu'est **ceci**?	*What is this?*

(2) In the locutions **ci-après** (= *hereafter*), **ci-contre** (= *opposite*), **ci-dessous** (= *below, hereafter*), **ci-dessus** (= *above*), **ci-devant** (= *formerly, ex*), **ci-gît** (= *here lies*), **de-ci de-là** (= *here and there*), **par-ci, par-là** (= *here and there, now and then*), etc.:

Vous le trouverez à la page **ci-contre.**	*You will find it on the opposite page.*
Ce qui a été mentionné **ci-dessus.**	*Which has been above mentioned.*
Un **ci-devant.**	*An ex-noble.*

§ **326.** **Ici** is sometimes used in speaking of time:

Jusqu'**ici** tout le monde est content de lui.	*Hitherto every one is satisfied with him.*
D'**ici** là tout sera terminé.	*By that time all will be completed.*

Obs. Notice the following locutions:

Ici!	*Come here (to a dog)!*
Hors d'**ici!**	*Out with you!*
Par **ici.**	*This way.*
Ici-bas; les choses d'**ici-bas.**	*Here below; the things of this world.*

§ **327.** **Là**, which has been already seen, like **ci**, joined to **celui** and to a noun preceded by **ce**, **cet**, etc., forms besides several compounds, as : **là-bas** (= *down there, yonder*), **là-haut** (= *up there, yonder*), **là-dedans** (= *in there*), **là-dessus** (= *thereupon, upon that, over that*), **là-dessous** (= *under there, underneath*), **jusque-là** (= *as far as that, so far, till then*).

Obs. 1. **Là** is often used redundantly for the sake of emphasis, especially after **ce** :

Est-ce **là** tout ?	*Is that all ?*
Sont-ce **là** vos promesses ?	*Is that what you promised ?*
Ce n'est pas **là** ce que je veux dire.	*That is not what I mean.*
Que dites-vous **là** ?	*What do you say ?*
Voyons, **là**, parlez franc.	*Come now, speak frankly.*

Obs. 2. Notice the following locutions :

Demeurons-en **là**.	*Let us stop there.*
Il faut en passer par **là**.	*One must submit to that.*
Tenez-vous-en **là**.	*Be content with that.*
Il a planté **là** tous ses projets.	*He has given up all his plans.*
À quelques jours de **là**.	*A few days after.*
Que concluez-vous de **là** ?	*What do you conclude from that ?*
Qu'entendez-vous par **là** ?	*What do you mean by that ?*
Par **là** nous triompherons.	*By that means we shall triumph.*
Çà et **là**.	*Here and there, to and fro.*

§ **328.** **Où**, which should not be confounded with the conjunction **ou** (= *or*), is used in direct and indirect questions, often taking the place of a relative pronoun governed by a preposition (see § 171) :

Où allez-vous ?	*Where are you going ?*
Je ne sais **où** aller.	*I do not know whither to go.*
Où tend tout cela ?	*What is the aim of all that ?*
Par **où** est-il venu ?	*What way did he come ?*
Le but **où** il aspire.	*The aim to which he aspires.*

Obs. 1. Notice especially the use of **où** after a noun expressing *time*, in the sense of *when, in which, on which* :

Le jour **où** cela se passa . . .	*The day on which that happened . . .*
Au moment **où** il allait partir.	*At the moment when he was going to start.*

Obs. 2. Notice also the following locutions :

Où en sommes-nous restés ?	*Where did we leave off ?*
Où en est-il réduit !	*To what extremity is he reduced !*
Où que j'aille, / Partout **où** je vais, } je le rencontre.	*Wherever I go, I meet him.*
D'**où** vient cela ?	*How is that ?*

G.—*ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.*

§ **329.** **Assez** always precedes the word it modifies (see § 303, *Obs.* 1) :

Il est **assez** simple pour le croire.	*He is simple enough to believe it.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **assez** :

En voilà **assez**.	*That will do.*
Est-il **assez** maladroit !	*How clumsy he is !*
Elle est **assez** bien.	*She is* { *pretty well.* / *rather good-looking.*
C'est **assez** l'usage.	*It is a pretty general custom.*
Je croirais **assez** que . . .	*I am rather inclined to think that . . .*

§ **330.** **Aussi, si, autant, tant,** having been already dealt with (see § 53), it will be enough to mention here the following idioms :

Il n'est pas **si** aveugle **qu'il ne puisse** voir cela.	*He is not so blind as not to be able to see that.*
Si grand **que fût** le péril . . .	*However great the peril was . . .*
Pourriez-vous en faire **autant** ?	*Could you do the same ?*
C'est **autant de** gagné.	*It is so much gained.*
Il est ruiné, ou **autant vaut.**	*He is ruined, or as good as ruined.*
Autant vaudrait le tuer tout de suite.	*You might as well kill him at once.*
Autant ne rien dire.	*It is as well not to say anything.*
Il était généreux **autant** que brave.[1]	*He was as generous as brave.*
Autant je l'aimais autrefois, **autant** je le méprise aujourd'hui.	*I despise him now as much as I loved him formerly.*
Autant de têtes, **autant** d'avis.	*So many men, so many minds.*
Autant qu'il a pu comprendre . . .	*As far as he was able to understand . . .*
Je le regrette **d'autant plus que** c'est ma faute.	*I regret it the more as it is my fault.*
Combien de livres avez-vous ?—J'en ai **tant et plus.**	*How many books have you ?—I have a great many.*
Je lui ai promis **tant.**	*I have promised him so much.*
On lui donna vingt **et tant** de francs.	*They gave him twenty odd francs.*

[1] **Autant** may be used with an adjective instead of **aussi**, but only if the adjective precedes.

Tous **tant que** nous sommes.	*All of us.*
Tant vous **que** moi.	*Both you and I.*
Tant que vous resterez ici . . .	*As long as you stay here . . .*
Tant son honneur lui était cher!	*So dear was his honour to him!*
Si je fais tant que d'y aller . . .	*If I ever do go, if I make up my mind to go . . .*

§ **331. Beaucoup,** modifying a comparative, may either precede it with or without **de,** or follow it with **de,** the preposition giving it more emphasis :

Il est **beaucoup** plus jeune que moi.	*He is much younger than I.*
Il est **de beaucoup** plus jeune que moi. Il est plus jeune que moi **de beaucoup.**	*He is by far younger than I.*

De beaucoup may also be used with superlatives and verbs denoting comparison :

Il est le plus jeune **de beaucoup.** Il est **de beaucoup** le plus jeune.	*He is by far the youngest.*
Vous les surpassez **de beaucoup.**	*You surpass them by far.*

Obs. 1. Contrary to the English *much*, **beaucoup** cannot be modified by an adverb :

Cela vous plaît-il?—Oui, **beaucoup.**	*Does that please you?—Yes,* **very** *much.*

Obs. 2. Notice the following uses of **beaucoup** :

C'est **beaucoup.**	*It is a great thing.*
C'est **beaucoup** s'il vous écoute.	*It is a wonder if he ever listens to you.*
Son frère n'est pas aussi aimable, **à beaucoup près.** **Il s'en faut de beaucoup que** son frère soit aussi aimable.	*His brother is not nearly so amiable.*

§ **332. Bien,** the only adverb of quantity which requires the article before a noun, often expresses, together with quantity, a feeling of pleasure, surprise, or admiration :

Vous avez eu **bien du** bonheur!	*You have been very lucky!*

Obs. Contrary to *beaucoup,* **bien** can modify adjectives in the positive, and, when it modifies a comparative, must always precede it :

Il est **bien** jeune.	*He is very young.*
Il est **bien** plus jeune que moi.	*He is much younger than I.*

§ **333.** **Combien** is used in direct and indirect questions and in exclamations, and when it modifies an adjective, that adjective generally comes after the verb :

Combien de chevaux a-t-il ? **Combien** a-t-il de chevaux ?	*How many horses has he ?*
Vous comprenez **combien** cette idée est **fausse.**	*You understand* **how false** *that idea is.*
Combien (de gens) vous envient !	*How many people envy you !*

Obs. 1. **Combien** is often replaced by **que** in direct questions and exclamations :

Combien (*or* **que**) vaut cela ?	*What is that worth ?*
Combien (*or* **que**) de peine il se donne !	*How much trouble he is taking !*

But **combien** alone can be used *interrogatively* before a noun :

Combien (*not* **que**) d'argent avez-vous ?	*How much money have you ?*

Obs. 2. Notice the following uses of **combien** :

De combien est-il plus grand que vous ?	*How much taller is he than you ?*
Combien (de temps) resterez-vous ?	*How long will you remain ?*
Dans combien de temps reviendra-t-il d'Italie ?	*How long will it be before he comes back from Italy ?*
Combien y a-t-il que vous ne l'avez vu ?	*How long is it since you saw him ?*
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Londres ?	*How far is it from here to London ?*

§ **334.** Both **davantage** and **plus** are comparative adverbs, but **plus** may stand before (*a*) an adjective, (*b*) a complement preceded by **de**, (*c*) **que** followed by the second term of comparison, whilst **davantage** cannot :

Je ne puis vous en dire **davantage.**	*I cannot tell you any more.*
Ne tardez pas **davantage.**	*Do not delay any longer.*
J'ai appris vingt vers.—J'en ai appris **davantage.**	*I have learnt twenty lines.—I have learnt more.*
Si vous êtes embarrassé, je le suis bien **davantage.**	*If you are embarrassed, I am much more so.*
But J'ai appris **plus de** vingt vers.	*I have learnt more than twenty lines.*
Je suis **plus embarrassé** que vous.	*I am more embarrassed than you.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **plus** (see also § 346) :

Il me faut dix francs **de plus.**	*I want ten francs more.*
Nous **n'en pouvons plus.**	*We are exhausted.*
Il est **on ne peut plus** obligeant.	*He is as obliging as can be.*
Au plus; tout au plus.	*At most; at the utmost.*
De plus, vous saurez . . .	*Besides, you must know . . .*
De plus en plus difficile.	*More and more difficult.*
Bien plus, il y a plus . . .	*More than that . . .*
Qui plus est . . .	*What is more . . .*
Quoi qu'il fasse, **il n'en sera ni plus ni moins.**	*Whatever he may do, it will be all the same.*

§ **335. Moins,** which is used in opposition to **plus,** and follows the same rules, forms with **rien** a locution which has sometimes a negative, and sometimes an affirmative meaning:

Cette pièce n'est **rien moins** qu'un chef-d'œuvre. } *This play is* { **anything but** / *or* / **nothing less than** } *a masterpiece.*

☞ **Rien de moins,** however, is always affirmative, unless it precedes an adjective :

Il ne songeait à **rien de moins** qu'à s'emparer du trône.	*He was thinking of no less a thing than taking possession of the throne.*
But Il n'y a **rien de moins** certain que cela.	*There is nothing less certain than that.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **moins** :

Quoique ce ne soit pas ma faute, je **n'en** suis **pas moins** bien fâché.	*Although it is not my fault, I am* **none the less** *very sorry* **for it.**
Cela vous gêne-t-il ?—**Pas le moins du monde.**	*Does that inconvenience you?—Not in the least.*
C'est **moins** que rien.	*It is next to nothing.*
Deux heures **moins** dix.	*Ten minutes to two.*
Vous ne l'aurez pas **à moins.**	*You shall not get it for less.*
Je ne le ferai pas **à moins** d'un ordre de la cour.	*I will not do it without an order from the court.*
Vous ne refuserez pas **au moins** (*or* **du moins**) de m'écouter.	*You will not at any rate refuse to listen to me.*
Ne l'oubliez **pas au moins.**	*Be sure you do not forget it.*

§ **336.** **Peu**, which is opposed to **beaucoup**, may likewise be used with **de** after **il s'en faut**:

Il s'en fallut **peu** (*or* **de peu**) qu'il ne le fît.	*He nearly did it.*

But when it precedes the verb, **de** cannot be used:

J'ai fini ou **peu** s'en faut.	*I have done, or very nearly.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **peu**:

Il n'y a que **peu ou point** d'espoir.	*There is but little if any hope.*
C'est **peu de chose.**	*It is a trifle.*
C'est un homme **de peu.**	*He is a common sort of a man.*
Dites-moi **un peu** . . .	*Just tell me* . . .
Peu à peu vous vous y habituerez.	*Little by little you will get accustomed to it.*
C'est **à peu près** (*or* **à peu de chose près**) ce que je pensais.	*It is about what I thought.*
Nous vous verrons **avant peu (dans peu, sous peu).**	*We will see you before long.*
Ils sont arrivés **depuis peu.**	*They arrived a short time since.*
Nous avons été **quelque peu** surpris.	*We have been somewhat surprised.*
Il est **tant soit peu** fatigant.	*He is a little tiresome.*

§ **337.** **Très**, contrary to the English *very*, never stands alone:

Est-ce une belle pièce?—Oui, **très-belle.**	*Is it a fine play?—Yes,* **very.**
N'êtes-vous pas content?—Pas **beaucoup.**	*Are you not pleased?—Not* **very.**

Obs. **Très** is often joined to the following adjective or adverb by a hyphen, but no hyphen is used when it modifies an adverbial phrase:

Je vous écris **très à la hâte.**	*I am writing in a great hurry.*

§ **338.** **Trop** may be preceded by **par**, which makes it more emphatic:

C'est **par trop** difficile.	*It is far too difficult.*

It requires, like **assez**, the preposition **pour** before the following infinitive, to denote proportion:

Il est **trop** simple **pour** ne pas le croire.	*He is too simple not to believe it.*

Obs. Notice the following uses of **trop**:

Son **trop** de prudence l'empêchera de réussir.	*His excess of prudence will prevent him from succeeding.*
Arrêtez, c'en est **trop.**	*Stop, it is too much.*
Je ne sais **trop** que faire.	*I do not exactly know what to do.*
Ce mot est **de trop.**	*This word is superfluous.*
Nous sommes deux **de trop.**	*We are two too many.*
Suis-je **de trop**?	*Am I in the way?*

H.—*ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION.*

§ **339.** The principal adverbs of affirmation, **oui** and **si**, are often used after **que** to translate an English auxiliary verb, in answer to a question:

Le fera-t-il?—Je crois **que oui.**	*Will he do it?—I think he will.*
Ne l'a-t-il pas fait?—Il m'a dit **que si.**	*Has he not done it?—He told me he had.*

Obs. Even when corresponding to the English *yes*, they may be preceded, for the sake of emphasis, by **que**, whether they are accompanied by a verb or stand alone in exclamations:

Je dis **que oui.**	*I say yes.*
Oh! **que oui! que si!**	*Oh! yes! yes, indeed!*

§ **340.** **Si** is only used in opposition to a negative:

Viendrez-vous?—**Oui.**	*Will you come?—Yes.*
But **Ne** viendrez-vous **pas**?—**Si; si fait; si vraiment.**	*Will you not come?—Yes; yes, indeed.*

I.—*ADVERBS OF NEGATION.*

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **341.** **Ne**, which is *never* used without a verb, must *always* be used to give to a verb a negative meaning:

Ne répondez pas.	*Do not answer.*
Il vaut mieux **ne** rien dire.	*It is better not to say anything.*

EXCEPTION.—Before a past participle without any auxiliary, **non**, or sometimes, but less correctly, **pas**, **point**, **nullement**, are used without **ne**:

Élu ou **non** élu, c'est lui qui gouvernera.	*Whether he is elected or not, it is he who will govern.*
Ils étaient battus, mais **point** (or, better, **non**) abattus.	*They were defeated, but not dejected.*

Obs. In very familiar style, and in poetry, **ne** is sometimes omitted with **pas** or **point**, when the sentence is interrogative:

Fit-il **pas** mieux que de se plaindre?	*Was it not wiser than to complain?*

§ **342.** Strictly speaking, there are but three negative adverbs in French, **ne**, **non**, and **nullement**; but several adverbs, etymologically affirmative (like the pronouns **aucun**, **personne**, **rien**), being usually accompanied by **ne**, have in certain cases, especially in answer to a question, assumed a negative meaning, even when standing without **ne**. Such are **aucunement**, **guère**, **jamais**, **plus**, **pas**, and **point**.

II.—*Aucunement, guère, jamais, plus.*

§ **343.** **Aucunement** is used—

(1) Sometimes without **ne**, in the sense of *in any degree, at all*, in dubitative and interrogative sentences:

S'il est **aucunement** possible de réussir . . .	*If it is at all possible to succeed . . .*
Est-il **aucunement** possible de le faire?	*Is it at all possible to do it?*

(2) Generally in the sense of *by no means, in no wise, not at all*—

[*a*] *With* **ne** *and a verb*:

Je **ne** le désire **aucunement.**	*I do not wish it by any means.*

[*b*] *Without* **ne**, *standing alone*:

Le croyez-vous?—**Aucunement.**	*Do you believe it?—Not in the least.*

§ **344.** **Guère** (in old French = *much*) is always used now in the sense of *not much, hardly*—

[*a*] *With* **ne** *and a verb*:

Je **n'**aime **guère** ce livre.	*I do not much care for that book.*

[*b*] *Without* **ne**, *standing alone*, only in answer to a question:

Aimez-vous ce livre?—**Guère.**	*Do you like that book?—Not much.*

Obs. It is sometimes spelt **guères** in poetry.

§ **345.** **Jamais** is used—

(1) In the sense of *ever*, without **ne**—

[*a*] In affirmative sentences expressing a comparison, and in the locutions **à jamais, à tout jamais, pour jamais**:

C'est la plus belle ville que j'aie **jamais** vue.	*It is the finest town I have ever seen.*
Il pleut plus que **jamais.**	*It is raining more than ever.*
Soyez **à jamais** heureux.	*Be for ever happy.*

[*b*] In dubitative and interrogative sentences:

Si **jamais** je le vois . . .	*If I ever see him . . .*
L'avez-vous **jamais** vu?	*Did you ever see him?*

(2) In the sense of *never*—

[*a*] When it is accompanied by **ne**:

Je **ne** l'ai **jamais** vu.	*I have never seen him.*

NOTICE, however, that **jamais** must be rendered by *ever* after **presque**:

Nous **ne** le voyons **presque jamais,**	*We hardly ever see him,*

and may be so rendered sometimes when **ne** is accompanied by another negative:

Personne ne l'a **jamais** cru.	*No one ever believed it.*

[*b*] Elliptically without **ne**, either standing alone, or followed by **encore, plus,** etc., or a noun with **de**:

Le ferez-vous?—**Jamais.—Jamais plus.**	*Will you do it?—Never.—Never more.*
Jamais de plaintes, **jamais de** murmures.	*Never any complaints, never any murmurings.*

Obs. **Jamais** is used substantively, with a negative meaning, in the locution **au grand jamais**:

Jamais, au grand jamais.	*Never, never.*

§ **346.** **Plus** is used in the sense of *no longer, no more*—

(1) *With* **ne**:

Je **ne** le ferai **plus.**	*I will not do it again.*
Ils **ne** sont **plus.**	*They are no more.*

(2) Elliptically *without* **ne**, followed by **du tout, jamais,** etc., or a noun with **de**:

Le ferez-vous?—**Plus du tout.**	*Will you do it?—Never more.*
Plus de plaintes, **plus de** murmures.	*No more complaints, no more murmurings.*

III.—*Pas* and *point.*

§ **347.** **Pas** and **point**, which are generally accompanied by **ne**, may be used without it in elliptical sentences, the verb being understood—

(1) In the case mentioned in § 341, Exc.

Obs. **Pas vrai ?** may, in familiar style, stand instead of **n'est-il pas vrai ?**

Vous viendrez, **pas vrai**?	*You will come, won't you ?*

(2) In answer to a question or with reference to a previous statement, **pas** being always followed by some word or words, generally an adverb or a numeral, whilst **point**, as a rule, stands alone (or followed by **du tout**) :

Aimez-vous ce tableau ?— **Pas beaucoup.** / **Pas plus que l'autre.** / **Point ; point du tout.**	*Do you like this picture ?—* *Not much.* / *Not more than the other.* / *No ; not at all.*
Il viendra, mais **pas aujourd'hui.**	*He will come, but not to-day.*

(3) Even without reference to a previous statement, when followed by **de** and a noun, in the sense of the English adjective *no* :

Pas (*or* **point**) **de plaintes.**	*No complaints.*

Obs. 1. **Du tout** (= *at all*) can be used by itself, like **point**, in a negative sense, with reference to a previous question or statement :

Aimez-vous ce tableau ? — **Du tout.**	*Do you like this picture ?—Not at all.*
Je viendrai demain.—**Du tout du tout,** venez aujourd'hui.	*I will come to-morrow.—No, no, come to-day.*

Obs. 2. Notice the popular expression **un pas grand'chose** :

C'est **un pas grand'chose,**	*He is not worth much,*

and the locution **il n'est pas que** (= *doubtless*), followed by **ne** and the *subjunctive* :

Il n'est pas que vous **ne** le **sachiez.**	*You must surely know it.*

§ **348.** DIFFERENCES BETWEEN **pas** AND **point.**—Besides the differences already mentioned, it should be observed that—

(1) **Pas**, from Latin *passus* (= *a step*), is less emphatic than **point**, from Latin *punctum* (= *a point*) :

Il ne lit **pas.**	*He is* **not** *reading; he does* **not** *read.*
Il ne lit **point.**	*He does* **not** *read* **at all**; *he* **never** *reads.*

(2) Consequently, **pas** is always used in preference to **point** before numerals (even before **un**), **beaucoup**, and adverbs of comparison, and generally before other adverbs and expressions which limit the force of the negative :

Il n'est **pas aussi** (*or* **moins, plus**) sérieux que vous.	*He is not so* (or *less, more*) *serious as* (or *than*) *you.*
Je n'ai **pas** compris **un** seul mot.	*I have not understood one word.*
Je n'ai **pas bien** compris.	*I have not well understood.*

(3) **Pas**, in questions, may sometimes imply affirmation, whilst **point** implies doubt :

N'avez-vous **pas** fini?	**You have done, have you not?**
N'avez-vous **point** fini?	**Have you not done?**

(4) **Pas** is often preceded by **non**; **point**, not usually so.

(See § 364 (2) for **pas** used with **non**, and §§ 351-353 for the omission of **pas** and **point.**)

IV.—*Ne.*

§ **349.** Contrary to the adverbs just mentioned, **ne** (from Latin *non*) is etymologically negative; but it is nevertheless used in several cases without any negative meaning.

(*a*) *NE* WITH A NEGATIVE MEANING.

§ **350.** When **ne** has a negative meaning, it is most often accompanied by **pas** or **point**; but **pas** and **point** in some cases *may*, in others *must*, be omitted.

Cases in which the omission of **pas** *and* **point** *is optional.*

§ **351.** **Pas** and **point** may be omitted or not—

(1) Before **autre** followed by **que** :

Je **n'**ai (pas) d'autre ami que vous.	*I have no other friend than you.*

Obs. In sentences of the kind, **autre** may be understood; but in that case **ne . . . que** alone should be used:

Je **n'**ai d'ami que vous.	*I have no other friend than you.*

(2) With the verbs **bouger, cesser, importer** used impersonally,[1] **oser, pouvoir**:

Ne bougez (pas).	*Do not stir.*
Il **n'**osera (pas) le dire.	*He will not dare to say it.*

Obs. The use of **pas** and **point**, which is generally more emphatic, may sometimes alter the meaning:

Il **ne** cesse de pleuvoir.	*It is always raining.*
Il **ne** cesse **pas** de pleuvoir.	*It is raining still.*

(3) With **savoir** in the sense of *to be uncertain*:

Je **ne** sais (pas) s'ils viendront.	*I do not know whether they will come.*

Obs. 1. The omission is usual when **savoir** is followed by **qui, que, quoi, quel**:

Nous **ne** savions **que** faire.	*We did not know what to do.*
Je **ne** sais **quel** parti prendre.	*I do not know what course to follow.*

Obs. 2. The omission does not take place when **savoir** means *to have learnt*:

Vous ne savez **pas** votre leçon.	*You do not know your lesson.*

Obs. 3. Notice the difference between—

Il **ne** sait ce qu'il dit,	*He has lost his senses,*

and

Il **ne** sait **pas** ce qu'il dit.	*He does not know what he is talking about.*

(4) With **qui, que, quel**, used *exclamatively* at the beginning of a question:

Qui **ne** comprendrait cela?	*Who could not understand that?*
Que **ne** ferait-il pour vous plaire?	*What would he not do to please you?*

Obs. If the sentence is *purely interrogative*, **pas** and **point** *must* be used:

Qui **n'**a **pas** compris?	*Who has not understood?*

Cases in which the omission of **pas** *and* **point** *is usual.*

§ **352.** **Pas** and **point** are omitted, as a rule, but not necessarily—

(1) With **n'avoir garde**:

Il **n'**aura garde de l'oublier.	*He will be sure not to forget it.*

[1] See, however, § 353 (11).

(2) With numerals preceded by **de**, in speaking of time :

Nous **ne** partirons de huit jours.	*We will not start for a week.*

(3) With **si**, in the sense of *unless* :

Je n'irai pas si vous **ne** m'accompagnez.	*I will not go unless you accompany me.*

Cases in which the omission of **pas** *and* **point** *is necessary.*

§ **353.** **Pas** and **point** must be omitted and **ne** used alone—

(1) With **aucun, aucunement, guère, jamais, personne, rien, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit, âme qui vive, de ma vie,** standing in the same member of the sentence as the verb preceded by **ne** :

Il **ne** fait attention à { **rien.** / **quoi que ce soit.** }	*He pays attention to nothing.*
Nous **n'**avons trouvé { **personne.** / **qui que ce soit.** / **âme qui vive.** }	*We found no one whatever.*
Je **n'**ai vu **de ma vie** pareille chose.	*I never in my life saw such a thing.*

Obs. 1. If **aucun, jamais, personne,** etc., depend on another verb than the one preceded by **ne,** and are separated from the latter, **pas** may be used when **ne** may be considered indifferently to bear or not to bear upon **aucun, jamais,** etc. :

Ne comptez (pas) trouver personne.	*Do not reckon upon finding any one.*
Vous n'avez (pas) lieu de rien craindre.	*You have no reason to fear anything.*

Obs. 2. It stands to reason that—

[*a*] If the negative does not bear upon **aucun, jamais,** etc., **pas** or **point** must be used with the first verb and **ne** omitted with the second :

Nous **ne** pensions **pas** qu'il le fît **jamais.**	*We did not think that he would ever do it.*
Nous **n'**espérons **pas** qu'il fasse **rien.**	*We do not hope that he will do anything.*

[*b*] If the two verbs are to have a negative meaning, **pas** or **point** must be used with the first, and **ne** alone with the second :

Ne comptez **pas ne** trouver **personne.**	*Do not reckon upon finding no one.*
Nous **n'**espérons **pas** qu'il **ne** fasse **rien.**	*We do not hope that he will do nothing.*

(2) With **nul**, in the sense of *no, no one*, and **nullement** :

Nul ne le croira.	*No one will believe it.*
Vous **n'**avez lieu de craindre **nul** danger.	*You have no reason to fear any danger.*
Vous **n'**avez **nullement** lieu de craindre.	*You have no reason whatever to fear.*

(3) With **goutte, mot,** in the expressions **n'entendre goutte, ne voir goutte, ne dire mot, ne sonner mot, ne souffler mot** :

Je **n'entends goutte** à ce qu'il dit.	*I do not understand anything of what he says.*
Ne dites, ne sonnez, ne soufflez mot.	*Do not say a word.*

(4) With **plus** in the sense of *no longer* :

Nous **ne** le verrons **plus.**	*We shall see him no longer.*

(5) With **que,** in the sense of—

[*a*] *Only, nothing but* :

Vous **n'**avez **qu'**à parler.	*You have only to speak.*

Obs. Notice that, as **que** must precede the word excepted, the use of **faire** is sometimes necessary :

Il **n'**a joué **que** ce matin.	*He played this morning only.*
But Il **n'a fait que** jouer ce matin.	*He did nothing but play this morning.*

[*b*] *Without* :

Je ne puis parler **qu'**il **ne** me contredise.	*I cannot speak without his contradicting me.*

[*c*] *Why . . . not, would that,* at the beginning of an interrogative or exclamative sentence :

Que ne me l'avez-vous dit plus tôt?	*Why did you not say it to me sooner?*
Que n'est-il ici !	*Would that he were here!*

(6) With **savoir,** in the sense of **pouvoir** :

Je **ne saurais** le faire.	*I cannot possibly do it.*

Obs. Notice that when **savoir** means *to have learnt,* **pas** or **point** must be expressed, even if *can* is used in English :

Je **ne** sais **pas** danser.	*I cannot dance.*

(7) After **depuis que**, and **il y a . . . que** used in speaking of time, when the verb is in a compound tense :

Il a beaucoup grandi **depuis que vous ne l'avez vu.**	*He has grown a good deal since you saw him last.*
Il y avait trois semaines **que je ne lui avais parlé.**	*It was three weeks since I had spoken to him.*
Combien **y a-t-il que vous n'êtes allé** à Paris?	*How long is it since you last went to Paris?*
Il y a deux ans **que je n'y suis allé.**	*I have not been there for the last two years.*

(8) After a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive—

[*a*] When the principal sentence, though interrogative in form, has really a negative meaning :

Y a-t-il quelqu'un (*i.e.* il n'y a personne) d'entre vous **qui ne** comprenne cela?	*Surely there is no one among you who does not understand that!*

Obs. If the sentence is interrogative in its meaning as well as in its form, **pas** or **point** is expressed :

Y a-t-il quelqu'un d'entre vous **qui ne** comprenne **pas**?	*Is there any one among you who does not understand?*

[*b*] When the principal sentence is negative :

Il **n'y** a **personne qui ne** comprenne cela.	*There is no one who does not understand that.*

(9) After **tellement** and **si** in the sense of **tellement**, when the prinoipal sentence is interrogative or negative, and after **il n'est pas que, ce n'est pas que, non (pas) que** :

Il n'est pas **tellement** (*or* **si**) ignorant qu'il **ne** le sache.	*He is not so ignorant as not to know it.*
Ce n'est pas / **Non pas** } **qu'il ne** s'en repente.	*Not but that he repents of it.*

(10) After **garder, prendre garde,** followed by **que** and the subjunctive in the sense of *to take care lest* :

Gardez (*or* **prenez garde**) qu'il **ne** le **fasse.**	*Take care lest he should do it.*

Obs. 1. **Prendre garde que,** in the sense of *to notice, to observe,* takes the indicative without **ne** :

Prenez garde que **c'est** là ce qu'il veut dire.	*Observe that that is what he means.*

Obs. 2. **Prendre garde à** with an infinitive is construed with **ne pas** or **ne point** in the sense of *to take care not to*; **prendre garde de**, with or without **ne pas** or **ne point**, and **se garder de** without :

Prenez garde { **à ne pas le faire.** / **de ne pas le faire.** / **de le faire.** }	*Take care* **not to do it.**
Gardez-vous **de le faire.**	
But Prenez garde **à le faire.**	*Take care* **to do it.**

(11) In the following idioms :

À Dieu **ne** plaise !	*God forbid !*
N'en déplaise à . . .	*With all due deference to . . .*
N'avoir que faire de . . .	*To have no need whatever of . . .*
Ne faire que de . . .	*To have but just . . .*
Je n'en puis mais.	*I cannot help it.*
Je n'en puis plus.	*I am worn out.*
N'importe.	*Never mind.*
Qu'à cela **ne** tienne.	*Let not that be any objection.*
Si ce **n'**est . . ., si ce **n'**était . . .	*Except, unless, were it not . . .*
N'était . . ., n'eût été . . .	*Were it not, had it not been, but for . . .*

(*b*) *NE* USED WITHOUT A NEGATIVE MEANING.

§ **354.** **Ne** is used without a negative meaning after certain verbs and expressions followed by **que** and the subjunctive, after certain comparative expressions and after certain conjunctions.

AFTER CERTAIN VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS.—

§ **355.** **Ne** is used without a negative meaning—

(1) After verbs and expressions denoting *fear* followed by **que** and the subjunctive—

[*a*] When the sentence is *affirmative* :

J'ai peur, j'appréhende, je crains, je redoute, je tremble	qu'il **ne** vienne.	*I am afraid · I fear, I tremble*	*that he will come.*
La crainte, la peur (que nous avions), l'appréhension (où nous étions)	qu'il **ne** vînt.	*The fear The apprehension*	*that he would come.*

[*b*] When the sentence is interrogative, if it really expresses *doubt* :

Qui craignait qu'il **ne** vînt ?	*Who feared that he would come ?*

[*c*] When the sentence is *interrogative-negative*:

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il **ne** vienne?	*Do you not fear that he will come?*

(In the last case, however, **ne** is sometimes omitted.)

Obs. 1. **Ne** is *not* used when the sentence is negative without interrogation, nor when it is interrogative, if it has really a negative meaning:

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	*I do not fear that he will come.*
Est-il possible (*i.e.* il n'est pas possible) de craindre qu'il nous trahisse?	*Surely it is impossible to fear that he will betray us.*

Obs. 2. **Ne** is also omitted when the expression of fear is preceded by **sans, sans que**, which imply negation; when it is preceded by **si**, the use of **ne** is optional:

Restez ici sans crainte qu'il ose vous y poursuivre.	*Stay here without any fear that he will pursue you.*
Si je crains qu'il (ne) vienne . . .	*If I fear that he will come . . .*

Obs. 3. It stands to reason that, if the dependent clause is negative, **ne . . . pas** or **ne . . . point** must be used in all cases:

Je crains	qu'il[1] ne vienne pas. (?)	*I fear*	*that he will not come.(?)*
Je ne crains pas		*I do not fear*	
Craignez-vous		*Do you fear*	
Ne craignez-vous pas		*Do you not fear*	

§ **356.** (2) After **empêcher**, followed by **que** and the subjunctive, when the sentence is *affirmative*:

J'empêcherai qu'il **ne** vienne.	*I will prevent him from coming.*

Obs. 1. The use of **ne** is optional when the sentence is negative or interrogative:

Je n'empêche pas qu'il (ne) vienne.	*I do not prevent*	*him from coming. (?)*
Empêchez-vous qu'il (ne) vienne?	*Do you prevent*	

Obs. 2. **Ne** may be omitted, even when the principal sentence is affirmative, if **personne, rien**, or some such word, is used in the dependent clause:

J'empêcherai que personne (ne) vienne.	*I will prevent any one from coming.*

Obs. 3. **Éviter que** and **prévenir que**, used with the subjunctive, generally follow the same rules; but even when the sentence is affirmative, **ne** is not absolutely necessary after them:

J'éviterai / Je préviendrai qu'il **ne** lui en parle.	*I will see he does not speak of it to him.* / *I will prevent his speaking of it to him.*
Éviterez-vous / Préviendrez-vous qu'il (ne) lui en parle?	*Will you see that he does not speak of it to him?* / *Will you prevent his speaking of it to him?*

357. (3) When the sentence is either *negative* or *interrogative*, after verbs and expressions of *doubt* and *denial* followed by **que** and the subjunctive, as **douter, mettre en doute, nul doute**, etc., **nier, contester, disconvenir, disputer, désespérer**:

Je ne doute pas qu'il **n'**ait raison.	*I have no doubt he is right.*
Nous ne nions pas / Nous ne contestons pas / Nous ne disconvenons pas / Nous ne disputons pas / Nous ne désespérons pas — qu'il **ne** puisse réussir.	*We do not deny* / *We do not contest* / *We do not disown* / *We do not dispute* / *We do not despair* — *that he may succeed.*
Doutez-vous / Mettez-vous en doute / Niez-vous — qu'il **n'**ait réussi?	*Do you doubt* / *Do you question* / *Do you deny* — *that he has succeeded?*

Obs. It is, however, preferable to omit **ne** when stating a fact which is evidently beyond doubt:

Je ne doute pas que Dieu accomplisse toutes ses promesses.	*I have no doubt that God will accomplish all his promises.*

§ **358.** (4) After **ne pas dissimuler, ne pas se dissimuler**, followed by **que** and the subjunctive:

Je ne dissimule pas qu'il **ne** me l'**ait** dit.	*I do not conceal that he said it to me.*
Je ne me dissimule pas que mes raisons **ne puissent** vous paraître étranges.	*I do not conceal from myself that my reasons may seem strange to you.*

Obs. The indicative without **ne** is more frequent:

Je ne dissimule pas qu'il me l'a dit.

Je ne me dissimule pas que mes raisons **peuvent** vous paraître étranges.

§ **359.** (5) After the impersonal verbs **il s'en faut, il tient,** followed by **que** and the subjunctive, when they are accompanied by a *negative* or a word assimilated to a negative like *peu,* or when the sentence is *interrogative* :

Il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup Il s'en faut peu Peu s'en faut	que je **ne** le fasse.	*I am not far from doing it.*	
S'en fallait-il de beaucoup	que la somme **n'**y fût?	*Was much wanting*	*to make up the sum?*
De combien s'en fallait-il		*How much was wanting*	
Il ne tient pas à lui Il ne tient à presque rien Il tient à peu de chose	qu'il **n'**en soit ainsi.	*It does not depend on him* *It depends on a trifle* *It depends on little*	*that it should be so.*

After certain Comparative Expressions.—

§ **360.** **Ne** is used without any negative meaning after **meilleur, mieux, moindre, moins, pire, pis, plus, plutôt,** followed by **que** and a verb in the indicative (or conditional)—

(1) When the first member of the sentence is *affirmative* :

Il nous faut toujours travailler à nous rendre meilleurs que nous **ne** sommes.	*We must always endeavour to make ourselves better than we are.*
Je vous comprends mieux que vous **ne** pensez.	*I understand you better than you think.*
La ville est plus (*or* moins) grande qu'elle **ne** paraît.	*The town is larger* (or *smaller*) *than it appears.*

(2) When the first member of the sentence is *interrogative-negative* :

Ne nous faut-il pas toujours travailler à nous rendre meilleurs que nous **ne** sommes?	*Must we not always endeavour to make ourselves better than we are?*
La ville n'est-elle pas plus (*or* moins) grande qu'elle **ne** paraît?	*Is not the town larger* (or *smaller*) *than it appears?*

(3) Even when the first member of the sentence is negative, if the second has also a negative meaning, or interrogative, if a negative answer is expected :

Nous n'irons pas plus que vous **n'**irez vous-même (*i.e.* vous n'irez pas plus que nous).	*We shall not go any more than you will.*
Sera-t-il plus jeune alors qu'il **ne** l'est aujourd'hui?	*Will he be younger then than he is today?*

In any other case, **ne** should be omitted :

Il n'est pas moins généreux qu'il est riche.	*He is not less generous than he is rich.*
Est-il plus raisonnable qu'il l'était autrefois ?	*Is he more reasonable than he used to be ?*

§ **361.** The same rules are observed with **autre** and **autrement** :

Il est tout autre qu'il **n'**était.	*He is quite different from what he used to be.*
N'est-il pas tout autre qu'il **n'**était?	*Is he not quite different from what he used to be ?*
Il agit autrement qu'il **ne** parle.	*He acts otherwise than he speaks.*
N'agit-il pas autrement qu'il **ne** parle ?	*Does he not act otherwise than he speaks?*

Notice, however, that **ne** is never used after **autre** and **autrement**, when the principal sentence is *negative* without interrogation :

Il n'est pas autre qu'il était.	*He is not different from what he used to be.*
Il n'agit pas autrement qu'il parle.	*He does not act otherwise than he speaks.*

After certain Conjunctions.—

§ **362.** As might be expected from the above rules, **ne** is used after—

(1) **De crainte que,**
(2) **De peur que,** } both expressing fear :

Ne le lui montrez pas, de crainte (*or* de peur) qu'il **ne** vous le prenne.	*Do not show it to him, lest he should take it from you.*

(3) **À moins que,** formed with a comparative :

Je n'irai pas, à moins que vous **ne** m'accompagniez.	*I will not go unless you accompany me.*

Obs. **Ne** is sometimes found after **avant que,** especially when the fact expressed is doubtful, but its omission is preferable.

V.—*Non.*

§ **363.** **Non** is used as an absolute negation corresponding to the English *no* :

Irez-vous?—**Non.**	*Will you go?—No.*
Non, non, c'est impossible.	*No, no, it is impossible.*

§ **364.** **Non,** thus used, may be—

(1) Preceded by **que** after a declarative verb, or in exclamations (see § 339) :

Si vous répondez **que non.**	*If you answer no.*
Que non !—oh ! **que non** !	*No ! oh ! no.*

Obs. **Non** may also be preceded by **que,** as an elliptical negative sentence corresponding to the English auxiliary with *not* after declarative verbs, and to *not* with or without an auxiliary after the adverbs mentioned in § 302 :

Viendra-t-il?—Je vous ai déjà dit **que non.**	*Will he come?—I told you already that he would not.*
Ne viendrez-vous pas?—Peut-être **que non.**	*Will you not come?—Perhaps not.*

(2) Joined to **pas, assurément, certes, certainement, sans doute, vraiment,** and other expressions of affirmation or negation :

Irez-vous?—**Non pas; non vraiment.**	*Will you go?—No; no indeed.*
Ne le saviez-vous pas?	*Did you not know it?*
Non certainement. / **Certainement non.**	*No, certainly not.*
L'avez-vous vu?—**Non, jamais.**	*Did you see him?—No, never.*
Vous a-t-il promis quelque chose? —**Non, rien.**	*Did he promise you anything?—No, nothing.*

§ **365.** **Non** is moreover used, independently of any previous question—

(1) Instead of a noun, an adjective, or a whole proposition understood :

Folie ou **non,** il l'a fait.	*Madness or not, he has done it.*
Nobles ou **non,** riches ou **non.**	*Noble or not, rich or not.*
Les uns sont heureux, les autres **non.**	*Some are happy, others not.*
Qu'il y consente ou **non,** il faut que je le fasse.	*Whether he consents to it or not, I must do it.*

(2) In opposition to an affirmative statement, in which case it is often joined to **pas**, and preceded by **et** or followed by **mais** :

Il l'a fait **non** par malice, **mais** par étourderie.	*He has done it, not out of malice, but out of thoughtlessness.*
Il l'a fait par étourderie, **et non** par malice.	*He has done it out of thoughtlessness, not out of malice.*
Commandez que je meure, **et non pas** que je fuie.	*Command that I should die, and not that I should flee.*

(3) Before **loin** and **sans**, and before adjectives and past participles used adjectively :

Non loin de là se trouve une source.	*Not far from that spot there is a spring.*
Il est vexé, **non sans** cause.	*He is vexed, not without good reason.*
Une injure **non pardonnée.**	*An unforgiven insult.*
Une maison **non meublée.**	*An unfurnished house.*
Des troupes **non aguerries.**	*Inexperienced, raw troops.*
Tout homme **non solvable.**	*Every insolvent man.*

(4) In the locutions—

[*a*] **Non que, non pas que,** which are followed by the subjunctive :

Non que je veuille l'accuser.	*Not that I wish to accuse him.*
Non pas que ce soit impossible.	*Not that it is impossible.*

[*b*] **Non plus que,** generally followed by a word not immediately connected with a verb :

La cour, **non plus que** la ville, ne goûta ses premières comédies.	*The court did not, any more than the town, appreciate his first comedies.*
Je n'écrirai pas, **non plus que** lui.	*I will not write any more than he.*

[*c*] **Ni . . . non plus,** with a noun or pronoun, **ne . . . pas non plus,** with a verb :

Ni moi **non plus.**	*Nor I either.*
Je **n'**écrirai **pas non plus.**	*I will not write either.*

Obs. Notice—

Je **n'**écrirai **pas plus** que lui.	*I will not write more than he.*
Je **n'**écrirai **plus.**	*I will no longer write.*

(5) In compound words :

Un officier en **non-activité.**	*An officer not in active service.*
Le système de **non-intervention.**	*The system of non-intervention.*
Un discours plein de **non-sens.**	*A speech full of nonsense.*
Non-seulement . . ., mais encore . . .	*Not only . . ., but . . .*

(6) Substantively :

Quel **non** sec !	*What a curt no !*
Il faut entendre le oui et le **non.**	*We must hear both sides.*
Il se fâche pour un oui ou pour un **non.**	*He gets angry for a trifle.*

§ **366.** It should be observed that, in translating negative expressions, recourse must often be had to such equivalents as **mal, peu, moins, sans, sans que, quoique,** or an adjectival clause with **ne . . . pas** :

Les troupes, **mal à l'aise** dans leurs nouveaux quartiers . . .	*The troops, uncomfortable in their new quarters . . .*
Sa propriété, **libre de toute hypothèque . . .**	*His estate, quite unencumbered . . .*
À moins d'un mille de là . . .	*Not a mile from there . . .*
Une pensée exprimée **sans élégance.**	*An inelegantly expressed thought.*
Il passa **sans être aperçu** par personne, *Or* **sans que personne l'aperçut.**	*He passed unperceived by any one.*
Quant à lui, **sans s'effrayer** de leurs menaces . . .	*As for him, undaunted by their threats . . .*
La bataille, **qui n'avait** (*or* **quoiqu'elle n'eût**) **pas** encore commencé, était déjà plus qu'à moitié gagnée.	*The battle, not yet begun, was already more than half won.*

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

I.—Preliminary Remarks.

§ **367.** Prepositions are always placed *before* their complement:

De qui parliez-vous à l'instant?	*Whom were you speaking* **of** *just now?*
Avec quoi pourrez-vous le faire?	*What will you be able to do it* **with**?

EXCEPTION.—The only exception is **durant**, which may sometimes follow its complement:

C'est là qu'il a vécu vingt ans **durant.**	*It was there that he lived for twenty years.*
Sa vie **durant.**	*During his life.*

§ **368.** The prepositions **à, de, en,** are generally repeated before each complement:

Il fut sourd **aux** remontrances et **aux** prières.	*He turned a deaf ear to remonstrances and prayers.*
Dès son enfance il se montra avide **de** louange et **de** gloire.	*From his childhood he showed himself eager for praise and glory.*
L'été prochain nous irons **en** Suisse et **en** Italie.	*Next summer we shall go to Switzerland and Italy.*

§ **369.** The other prepositions are, as a rule, repeated, when the complements have opposite meanings:

Dans les plaisirs et **dans** les larmes.	*In pleasures and in tears.*
Par la douceur ou **par** la force.	*By gentleness or violence.*
Sur terre et **sur** mer.	*By land and by sea.*

In other cases their repetition is optional (depending on emphasis, euphony, etc.):

Nous passâmes par Lyon et Marseille.	*We passed through Lyons and Marseilles.*
Je compte sur vous et votre frère	*I reckon upon you and your brother.*

§ **370.** Several prepositions, the principal of which are **après, avant, contre, depuis, derrière, devant, outre, selon,** may be used adverbially or absolutely :

Tournez d'abord à gauche et **après** à droite.	*Turn first to the left and then to the right.*
Avez-vous écrit votre lettre ?—Je suis **après.**	*Have you written your letter?—I am busy about it.*
Et **après** ?	*What next?*
Ils pénétrèrent fort **avant** dans le pays.	*They penetrated very far into the country.*
C'était bien **avant** dans la nuit.	*It was very late in the night.*
Qui a voté **contre** ?	*Who voted against it?*
Si vous n'avez rien à dire **contre** . . .	*If you have no objection . . .*
Qu'avez-vous fait **depuis** ?	*What have you done since?*
Ils sont restés **derrière.**	*They have remained behind.*
Passez **devant.**	*Go in front.*
Il est pauvre comme **devant.**	*He is as poor as formerly.*
Nous passâmes **outre** sans rien dire.	*We proceeded without saying anything.*
C'est **selon.**	*It depends on circumstances.*

II.—Various Functions of the Principal Prepositions.

§ **371. À.**—The chief functions of the preposition **à** having been studied in various parts of the Syntax (see §§ 28, 47, 214, 262, 269, and 270), it will be sufficient now to supplement what has been already said by the following examples, from which it will be seen that **à** is used to translate—

(1) **According to :**

À mon goût.	**According to** *my taste.*
À ce que l'on m'a dit.	**According to** *what I have been told.*

(2) **As, as a :**

On le leur imputa **à** crime.	*It was imputed to them* **as a** *crime.*

Also, idiomatically :

À votre aise.	(*Do*) **as** *you please.*

(3) **At :**

À Paris ; à trois milles de là.	**At** *Paris* ; **at** *three miles distance.*
À l'ouvrage ; à votre service.	**At** *work* ; **at** *your service.*
À sa demande ; à ses dépens.	**At** *his request* ; **at** *his expense.*
Au galop ; **au** hasard.	**At** *a gallop* ; **at** *random.*
À dix heures ; à la nuit tombante.	**At** *ten o'clock* ; **at** *nightfall.*
À soixante ans ; à la fin.	**At** *sixty* ; **at** *the end.*

(4) **By :**

Peu **à** peu ; deux **à** deux.	*Little* **by** *little* ; *two* **by** *two.*
Vendre **au** poids, **aux** enchères.	*To sell* **by** *weight*, **by** *auction.*
Prendre **à** l'heure, **à** la journée.	*To take* **by** *the hour*, **by** *the day.*
À mes côtés ; **à** force de travail.	**By** *my side* ; **by** *dint of labour.*
Au clair de la lune ; **à** marches forcées.	**By** *moonlight* ; **by** *forced marches.*
Vous ne gagnerez rien **à** cela.	*You will not gain anything* **by** *that.*
Je le devine **à** votre air.	*I guess it* **by** *your look.*

(5) **For :**

Une pension **à** vie.	*A pension* **for** *life.*
À la vie et **à** la mort ; **à** jamais.	**For** *ever.*
Traduisez cela mot **à** mot.	*Translate that word* **for** *word.*
C'est **à** moi de rire.	*It is* **for** *me to laugh.*

(6) **From :**

Vous commencerez **à** cette page.	*You will begin* **from** *that page.*
Nous le comprîmes **à** son silence.	*We understood it* **from** *his silence.*
Il m'a arraché **au** plus grand danger.	*He snatched me* **from** *the greatest danger.*
Les lustres suspendus **au** plafond.	*The chandeliers hanging* **from** *the ceiling.*

(7) **In :**

À Bordeaux ; **aux** Indes.	**In** *Bordeaux* ; **in** *India.*
À la campagne ; **à** la ville.	**In** *the country* ; **in** *town.*
Au jardin ; **au** lit.	**In** *the garden* ; **in** *bed.*
Au printemps ; **au** fort de l'été.	**In** *the spring* ; **in** *the height of summer.*
À l'ombre ; **au** soleil.	**In** *the shade* ; **in** *the sun.*
Au milieu de la nuit.	**In** *the middle of the night.*
À mon avis ; **à** cet égard.	**In** *my opinion* ; **in** *that respect.*
À l'anglaise ; **à** ma guise.	**In** *the English fashion* ; **in** *my own way.*
À la hâte ; **à** l'appui de . . .	**In** *haste* ; **in** *support of* . . .
Êtes-vous arrivé **à** temps ?	*Did you arrive* **in** *time ?*
Il avait les larmes **aux** yeux.	*He had tears* **in** *his eyes.*
Je le trouvai **au** désespoir.	*I found him* **in** *despair.*

(8) **Of :**

Un ami **à** vous.	*A friend* **of** *yours.*
Il a des idées **à** lui.	*He has ideas* **of** *his own.*
C'est bien aimable **à** vous d'être venu.	*It is very kind* **of** *you to have come.*
À quoi pensez-vous ?	*What are you thinking* **of** ?
Prenez garde **à** ces enfants.	*Take care* **of** *these children.*
Il prend garde **à** un sou.	*He is careful* **of** *a halfpenny.*

(9) **On** :

À bord ; **au** bord de la mer.	**On** *board* ; **on** *the sea-shore.*
À genoux ; **à** pied ; **à** cheval.	**On** *his knees* ; **on** *foot* ; **on** *horseback.*
À la surface ; **à** terre.	**On** *the surface* ; **on** *the ground.*
À droite ; **à** gauche.	**On** *the right hand* ; **on** *the left hand.*
L'orgueil **au** front ; la menace **à** la bouche.	*With pride* **on** *his brow* ; *with threats* **on** *his lips.*
Qu'est-ce qui pend **à** cette branche?	*What is hanging* **on** *that branch?*
À mon retour ; **à** son arrivée.	**On** *my return* ; **on** *his arrival.*
À cause de cela ; **à** condition . . .	**On** *account of that* ; **on** *condition* . . .
Au contraire ; **à** crédit.	**On** *the contrary* ; **on** *credit.*
À dessein ; **à** l'épreuve.	**On** *purpose* ; **on** *trial.*

(10) **Till** :

Du matin **au** soir.	*From morning* **till** *evening.*

Notice also :

Au revoir.	*Good-bye* (**till** *we meet again*).

(11) **To** :

Aller **au** théâtre, **à** Paris.	*To go* **to** *the play*, **to** *Paris.*
De temps **à** autre.	*From time* **to** *time.*
De la tête **aux** pieds.	*From head* **to** *foot.*
Corps **à** corps ; dos **à** dos.	*Hand* **to** *hand* ; *back* **to** *back.*
Face **à** face, nez **à** nez.	*Face* **to** *face.*

(12) **With** :

La poule **aux** œufs d'or.	*The hen* **with** *the golden eggs.*
Une table **à** tiroirs.	*A table* **with** *drawers.*
Se battre **à** l'épée.	*To fight* **with** *swords.*
Charger **à** mitraille.	*To load* **with** *grape-shot.*
Il aura affaire **à** moi.	*He will have to deal* **with** *me.*
Je mêlai mes larmes **aux** siennes.	*I mingled my tears* **with** *his.*
À coups redoublés.	**With** *repeated blows.*
À force égale.	**With** *equal strength.*
À grands pas ; **à** grand'peine.	**With** *great strides* ; **with** *great difficulty.*
À pleines voiles ; **à** regret.	**With** *full sails* ; **with** *reluctance.*

(13) **Within** :

À peu de distance.	**Within** *a short distance.*
À portée.	**Within** *reach.*

Obs. The difference in the meaning of the following sentences, according to the preposition used, should be carefully noticed :

Est-il **à** la maison ?	*Is he* **at home** ?
Est-il **dans** la maison ?	*Is he* **in the house** ?
À la campagne.	*In the* **country**.
Dans la campagne.	*In the* **fields**.
En campagne.	*In* **campaign** ; **at work**.
Être **à** la ville.	*To be* **in town** (*opposed to the country*).
Être **dans** la ville.	*To be* **inside** *the town*.
Être **en** ville, dîner **en** ville.	*To be* **out**, *to dine* **out**.
C'est à vous **à** parler.	*It is your* **turn** *to speak*.
C'est à vous **de** parler.	*It is your* **duty**, *it* **becomes** *you, to speak*.

§ **372.** **Après** means—

(1) **After, next to :**

Après dîner ; **après** tout.	**After** *dinner* ; **after** *all*.
Courir **après** la fortune.	*To hunt* **after** *fortune*.
Après vous, c'est lui que je préfère.	**Next to** *you, it is he whom I prefer*.

(2) **Against, at, for, upon :**

Ils se sont mis **après** moi.	*They set themselves* **against** *me*.
Ce chien aboie **après** tout le monde.	*This dog barks* **at** *every one*.
Il soupirait **après** la gloire.	*He was longing* **for** *glory*.
Agir **après** réflexion.	*To act* **upon** *reflection*.

Obs. Notice :

Arriver **après** coup.	*To arrive too late*.
Être **après** quelqu'un.	*To scold, to harass some one*.
Être **après** quelque chose.	*To be engaged with something*.

§ **373.** **D'après** means—

(1) **According to, from, after :**

D'après lui ; **d'après** cela.	**According to** *him* ; **from** *that*.
D'après vos ordres.	**In pursuance of** *your orders*.
D'après nature.	**After** *nature*, **from** *life*.

(2) **Following :**

Le mois **d'après**.	*The* **following** *month*.

§ **374.** Both **à travers** and **au travers de** mean **across, through** ; but the latter is more emphatic :

À travers champs.	**Across** *country*.
À travers la foule.	**Through** *the crowd*.
Nous nous frayâmes un chemin **au travers des** ennemis.	*We cut our way* **through** *the enemy*.

§ **375.** Both **avant** and **devant** mean **before**; but **avant**, the opposite of which is **après**, denotes *time, order*, or *precedence*, whilst **devant**, the opposite of which is **derrière**, is chiefly used of *place*:

(1) J'aurai fini **avant** vous.	*I shall have finished before you.*
Votre rue vient **avant** la nôtre.	*Your street comes before ours.*
L'intérêt public doit passer **avant** tout autre.	*Public interest should pass before any other.*
Avant tout; **avant** toutes choses.	*First of all; above all things.*
(2) Ne vous mettez pas **devant** moi.	*Do not place yourself before me.*
Devant l'église; **devant** la porte.	*Before the church; in front of the door.*
Tout cela s'est passé **devant** lui.	*All that took place in his presence.*

Obs. Notice:

Il était **en avant de** son siècle.	*He was* **in advance of** *his time.*
Allons au-devant d'eux.	**Let us go and meet** *them.*
Tout le monde **allait au-devant de** ses moindres désirs.	*Every one* **anticipated** *his slightest wishes.*
Un acte signé **par-devant** notaire.	*A deed signed* **before** *a notary.*

§ **376.** Besides its ordinary meaning (=*with*), **avec** is sometimes used in the sense of **in spite of, for**:

Avec son air simple, il est fort malin.	**In spite of** *his simple look, he is very shrewd.*
Avec tout cela, je ne puis le supporter.	**For** *all that, I cannot bear him.*

Obs. Notice **d'avec**=**from**:

On peut à peine le distinguer **d'avec** son frère.	*You can hardly distinguish him* **from** *his brother.*

§ **377.** **Chez**, which may be preceded by **de, loin de, auprès de, près de, par**, means—

(1) **In, at,** *or* **to the house of, in, at,** *or* **to the country of**:

Est-il **chez lui**?	*Is he* **at home**?
Je vais **chez moi**.	*I am going* **home**.
Je viens **de chez votre oncle**.	*I come* **from your uncle's**.
Il demeure **tout près de chez nous**.	*He lives* **very near our house**.
Ils voulaient s'en retourner **chez eux**.	*They wanted to return* **to their native country**.

(2) **Among, with**:

Chez nous c'est bien différent.	**Among** *us it is very different.*
C'était une manie **chez** lui.	*It was a mania* **with** *him.*

(3) **In** :

Rien de vulgaire **chez** ce poète.	*Nothing is vulgar* **in** *that poet.*
Le comte, **chez** qui l'orgueil étouffait tout autre sentiment.	*The Count,* **in** *whom pride stifled every other feeling.*

Obs. **Notice** :

Je n'avais pas de **chez moi**.	*I had no* **home.**
Un bon **chez soi**.	*A comfortable* **home.**

§ **378. Contre** means—

(1) **Against, contrary to** :

Je n'ai rien à dire **contre** lui.	*I have nothing to say* **against** *him.*
Il s'est heurté **contre** la table.	*He has knocked himself* **against** *the table.*
C'est agir **contre** vos intérêts.	*That is acting* **contrary to** *your interests.*

(2) **With** :

Il est fâché **contre** vous.	*He is angry* **with** *you.*
Il luttait **contre** son sort.	*He was struggling* **with** *his fate.*

(3) **Near, close to** :

Il y avait un banc **contre** le mur.	*There was a form* **near** *the wall.*
Ma maison est **contre** l'église.	*My house is* **close to** *the church.*

(4) **For, in exchange for, to** :

Voulez-vous changer votre livre **contre** le mien !	*Will you exchange your book* **for** *mine?*
Je parie cent **contre** un.	*I'll bet a hundred* **to** *one.*

§ **379.** Both **dans** and **en** mean **in, into**, but—

(1) **Dans** is used before a noun preceded by a *determinative word*, whilst **en** is not, as a rule, followed by any determinative :

Dans le nord de la France.	*In the north of France.*
Dans l'été de 1887.	*In the summer of* 1887.
Dans un si grand danger.	*In such great danger.*
Dans cette théorie.	*In that theory.*
Tourner **dans un** cercle.	*To turn in a circle.*
But **En** France.	*In France.*
En été.	*In summer.*
En danger.	*In danger.*
En théorie.	*In theory.*
Être assis **en** cercle.	*To be seated in a circle.*

Exceptions.—**En** is sometimes followed by the definite article, especially when the noun begins with a vowel or silent *h* :

En l'absence de . . .	*In the absence of . . .*
En l'air.	*In the air.*
En l'an 1800.	*In the year* 1800.
En l'honneur de . .	*In the honour of . . .*

Its use with the definite article before a noun beginning with a consonant is quite exceptional :

En la chambre du conseil.	*In the council chamber.*
En la présence du roi.	*In the king's presence.*

Obs. The contraction of **en les** has given **ès** :

Bachelier **ès** lettres.	*Bachelor of Arts.*
Saint-Pierre **ès** liens.	*St. Peter in prison.*

(2) **Dans** expresses the time at which a thing is done, whilst **en** generally denotes the time taken in doing it:

Nous traverserons la Manche **dans** une heure et demie.	*We shall cross the English Channel in an hour and a half's time.*
Je le ferai **dans** un mois.	*I shall do it in a month's time.*
But Nous avons traversé la Manche **en** une heure et demie.	*We have crossed the English Channel in an hour and a half.*
Je l'ai fait **en** un mois.	*I have done it in a month.*

(3) **En** is used in preference to **dans** to denote—

[*a*] The **nature** or **condition** of an object:

Dix livres **en** or.	*Ten pounds in gold.*
Elle a gagné **en** grâce.	*She has gained in gracefulness.*
Tout était **en** désordre.	*Everything was in disorder.*
Le peuple est **en** armes.	*The people are up in arms.*

[*b*] The **end** or **motive**:

En considération de sa bonne conduite.	*In consideration of his good conduct.*
En mémoire de vous.	*In remembrance of you.*

[*c*] The **shape** or **costume**:

Un champ **en** triangle.	*A field in the form of a triangle.*
Le bois finit **en** pointe.	*The wood ends in a point.*
Il est toujours **en** noir.	*He is always in black.*
Elle était habillée **en** homme.	*She was dressed in man's clothes.*

[*d*] A **change of state**:

Mon admiration s'est convertie **en** mépris.	*My admiration has been converted into scorn.*
Il fut métamorphosé **en** oiseau.	*He was metamorphosed into a bird.*
Le brouillard s'est résous **en** pluie.	*The fog has turned into rain.*
Traduisez cela **en** allemand.	*Translate that into German.*

[*e*] A **division**:

Ils se partagèrent **en** deux bandes.	*They divided into two bands.*
Le tout fut divisé **en** trois parties.	*The whole was divided into three parts.*
Une comédie **en** cinq actes.	*A comedy in five acts.*

§ **380.** **En** is further used—

(1) With **personal pronouns**:

Je n'ai aucune confiance **en** lui.	*I have no trust in him.*

(2) With **present participles** :

Elle me l'a dit **en** partant.	*She told it me on going away.*

(3) In the sense of **as, like** :

Agir **en** honnête homme.	*To act* **as an** *honest man.*
Mourir **en** chrétien.	*To die* **as a** *Christian.*

(4) In a great many idioms, as :

De mieux **en** mieux.	*Better and better.*
De mal **en** pis.	*From bad to worse.*
De porte **en** porte.	*From door to door.*
En bonne justice ; **en** bonne règle.	*In strict justice ; in due form.*
En plein air ; **en** pleine mer.	*In the open air ; in the open sea.*
En toute vérité, etc.	*In all truth, etc.*

§ **381.** The chief functions of the preposition **de** having been studied in various parts of the Syntax (see §§ 29, 48, 215, 271), it will be sufficient now to supplement what has been already said by the following examples, from which it will be seen that **de** is used to translate—

(1) **As** :

Dans mon métier **de** critique . . .	*In my profession* **as a** *critic . . .*
But On le traita **de** visionnaire.	*He was called a visionary.*

(2) **At** :

Ils étaient tous **de** la noce.	*They all were* **at** *the wedding.*
La maison **du** coin.	*The house* **at** *the corner.*

(3) **By** :

Je suis Romain **de** naissance.	*I am a Roman* **by** *birth.*
Le connaissez-vous **de** vue?	*Do you know him* **by** *sight?*
Ils sont cruels **de** leur nature.	*They are cruel* **by** *nature.*
De jour et **de** nuit.	**By** *day and* **by** *night.*
Il n'était maître que **de** nom.	*He was master only* **by** *name.*

(4) **For** :

Je ne l'ai vu **de** huit jours.	*I have not seen him* **for** *a week.*
Il ne reviendra pas **de** longtemps.	*He will not return* **for** *a long time.*

(5) **From** :

De pied en cap.	**From** *head to foot.*
De lundi à vendredi.	**From** *Monday to Friday.*
Bien des amitiés **de** nous tous.	*Much love* **from** *us all.*
N'attendez rien **de** lui.	*Do not expect anything* **from** *him.*
Souffrez-vous **de** votre blessure?	*Do you suffer* **from** *your wound?*
L'acte est daté **de** Rome.	*The deed is dated* **from** *Rome.*
On ne voit rien **d'**ici.	*You cannot see anything* **from** *here.*

(6) **In** :

De cette manière (*or* façon).	**In** *that way.*
Ne riez pas **de** la sorte.	*Do not laugh* **in** *such a fashion.*
D'un ton sec.	**In** *a dry tone.*
Jamais **de** ma vie.	*Never* **in** *my life.*

(7) **On** :

De la tempérance (as a title).	**On** *temperance.*
De tous côtés.	**On** *all sides.*
De part et d'autre.	**On** *both sides.*
Être **de** garde.	*To be* **on** *duty.*
Être **de** corvée.	*To be* **on** *fatigue-duty.*
Jouer **du** violon.	*To play* **on** *the violin.*
Ne dépendre **de** personne.	*To depend* **on** *no one.*

(8) **Out of** :

De vingt il n'en reste que deux.	**Out of** *twenty, only two remain.*
Il prit le meilleur **de** tous.	*He took the best* **out of** *them all.*

(9) **With** :

Je l'ai payé **de** mon argent.	*I paid for it* **with** *my own money.*
L'usurier était muet **de** colère.	*The usurer was dumb* **with** *anger.*
De tout mon cœur.	**With** *all my heart.*
De toutes mes forces.	**With** *all my might.*

§ **382.** **De** is further used—

(1) Instead of a **possessive adjective**, after a few verbs :

Nous avons changé **d'**avis.	*We have changed* **our** *minds.*
Changez **de** vêtements.	*Change* **your** *clothes.*
Ils redoublèrent **d'**efforts.	*They redoubled* **their** *efforts.*

(2) **Redundantly** :

[*a*] Before an adjective or participle following a noun preceded by a numeral or an adverb of quantity, or referring to the pronoun **en** :

Il y a { vingt / beaucoup d' } hommes **de** blessés.	*There are* { *twenty* / *many* } *men wounded.*
Y en a-t-il **de** tués ?	*Are there any killed ?*

[*b*] After the interrogative pronoun **qui** followed by two nouns or pronouns joined by **ou** :

Qui, **de** vous ou **de** moi, doit le savoir le mieux ?	*Who ought to know it best, you or I ?*

(3) In many idiomatic expressions, as :

De grand matin.	*Very early in the morning.*
De grâce ; **de** nouveau.	*Pray, I beg you ; afresh, again.*
D'habitude ; **de** travers.	*Usually ; askew, awry.*
D'aplomb ; **de** champ.	*Perpendicularly ; edgewise.*
On dirait **d'**un vieillard.	*One would think he is an old man.*
Cela n'est pas **de** mise.	*That will not pass.*
Peste **de** l'étourdi !	*A plague on the madcap !*

§ **383.** Both **durant** and **pendant** mean **during,** but **durant** is chiefly used to denote a long stretch of time without interruption :

C'est là qu'il vécut vingt ans **durant.**	*There he lived for twenty years.*
Durant cette guerre interminable.	*During that endless war.*
Durant toute l'année.	*All the year long.*
Pendant notre visite.	*During our visit.*

§ **384.** **Entre,** which, as a rule, refers to two objects only, means—

(1) **Between :**

Entre vous et lui.	**Between** *you and him.*
Entre la vie et la mort.	**Between** *life and death.*
Un homme **entre** deux âges.	*A middle-aged man.*
Se trouver **entre** deux feux.	*To be* **between** *two fires.*
Entre la poire et le fromage.	*At dessert.*

(2) **In :**

Regarder **entre** les deux yeux.	*To look full* **in** *the face.*
Notre drapeau resta **entre** leurs mains.	*Our standard remained* **in** *their hands.*
Je ne l'ai plus **entre** mes mains.	*I no longer have it* **in** *my possession.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Entre** may refer to an indefinite number to denote *connection, separation, resemblance, repartition, selection, excellence,* and then is generally translated by **among :**

Ils causaient **entre** eux.	*They were talking* **among** *themselves.*
Plusieurs d'**entre** vous.	*Several from* **among** *you.*
Le duc fut retiré d'**entre** les morts.	*The duke was taken from* **among** *the dead.*
Distribuez cette somme **entre** vos pauvres.	*Distribute this sum* **among** *your poor.*
Vous aviez dit, **entre** autres choses . . .	*You had said,* **among** *other things . . .*
Le plus noble **entre** tous.	*The noblest* **among** *all.*

Parmi, contrary to **entre,** generally refers to an indefinite number or a collective noun, and should be used to translate **among** (except in the cases just mentioned) :

Parmi tant de dangers.	**Amidst** *so many perils.*
On le trouva **parmi** la foule.	*He was found* **among** *the crowd.*

§ **385.** **Jusque**, which is always joined to another preposition or to an adverb of time or place, means—

(1) **To, till, as far as, as much as**, etc. :

Allez **jusqu'**au bout.	*Go* **to** *the end.*
Il courut **jusqu'**au village.	*He ran* **as far as** *the village.*
Jusqu'à présent, **jusqu'**ici.	**Till** *now, hitherto.*
Jusqu'où? **Jusqu'**à quand?	*How far? How long?*

2) **Even, very** :

Jusque sous nos fenêtres.	**Even** *under our windows.*
Tous, **jusqu'**aux plus humbles...	*All,* **even** *the humblest . . .*
Il n'est pas **jusqu'**à son frère qui ne le blâme.	*His* **very** *brother blames him.*

Obs. Before a vowel **jusques** is sometimes used instead of **jusque**, especially in poetry :

Jusques au ciel.	*Up to Heaven.*

§ **386.** Besides its ordinary meaning (=**by**), **par** is used in the sense of—

(1) **For** :

Il travaille **par** plaisir.	*He works* **for** *pleasure.*
Par exemple.	**For** *instance.*
Une œuvre remarquable **par** son originalité.	*A work remarkable* **for** *its originality.*

(2) **From** :

À en juger **par** les apparences.	*To judge* **from** *appearances.*
Il s'en chargea **par** pure bonté de cœur.	*He undertook it* **from** *pure kindness of heart.*

(3) **In, into, to** :

Par tous pays.	**In** *all countries.*
Par une pluie battante.	**In** *pouring rain.*
Donner un coup **par** la figure.	*To strike* **in** *the face.*
Classer **par** familles.	*To classify* **into** *families.*
S'en aller **par** lambeaux.	*To fall* **to** *pieces.*

(4) **On** :

Par terre.	**On** *the ground.*
Par une froide matinée.	**On** *a cold morning.*

(5) **Out of :**

Jeter **par** la fenêtre.	*To throw* **out of** *the window.*
Il l'a fait **par** bravade, **par** orgueil.	*He has done it* **out of** *bravado,* **out of** *pride.*

(6) **Over, through :**

Courir **par** monts et **par** vaux.	*To wander* **over** *hill and dale.*
Voyager **par** le monde.	*To travel* **over** *the world.*
Nous avons passé **par** le bois.	*We passed* **through** *the wood.*
Elle l'a dit **par** ignorance.	*She said it* **through** *ignorance.*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Par ici ; **par** là.	*This way ; that way.*
Par conséquent ; **par** suite.	*Consequently.*
Par intervalles.	*At intervals.*
Par mégarde.	*Inadvertently.*
Par provision.	*Provisionally.*
Vingt francs **par** jour, etc.	*Twenty francs a day, etc.*

§ **387.** Besides the cases already mentioned (see §§ 45, *Obs.* 1, 272 and 273), **pour** is used in the sense of—

(1) **For, for the sake of, as for :**

Pour qui sont ces fleurs ?	**For** *whom are these flowers ?*
Quand partez-vous **pour** Paris ?	*When do you start* **for** *Paris ?*
C'est **pour vous** que je le dis.	*It is* **for your sake** *I say it.*
Pour moi, je ne le crois pas.	**As for** *me, I do not believe it.*

(2) **As :**

Il se donne **pour** plus riche qu'il ne l'est.	*He gives himself out* **as** *richer than he is.*
Je compte cela **pour** rien.	*I reckon that* **as** *nothing.*

(3) **On :**

Pour affaires.	**On** *business.*
Pour rien au monde.	**On** *no account.*

(4) **With :**

Pour nous c'est une question de vie ou de mort.	**With** *us it is a question of life or death.*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Pour lors ; et **pour** cause.	*Then ; not without reason.*
Tant **pour** cent.	*So much per cent.*
Jour **pour** jour.	*To a day.*
Ils ont disparu **pour** la plupart.	*Most of them have disappeared.*
Je ne suis pas **pour** le nier.	*I shall certainly not deny it.*
Il en sera **pour** son argent.	*He will lose his money.*
Nous n'y sommes **pour** rien.	*We have nothing to do with it.*

§ **388. Près de**, which refers to time as well as place, and may be followed by an infinitive, is used in the sense of—

(1) **Near, by, about :**

Près de la porte ; **près d'ici.**	**Near** *the door ;* **near** *by.*
Asseyez-vous **tout près de** moi.	*Sit* **close to** *me.*
Il est **près de** midi.	*It is* **near** *twelve o'clock.*
Nous étions **près de** partir.	*We were* **about** *to start.*

(2) **Nearly, almost** (before a numeral, instead of **presque**) :

J'en ai vu **près de** trente.	*I have seen* **nearly** *thirty.*
Il y a **près de** dix ans que nous n'avons entendu parler de lui.	*We have not heard of him for* **nearly** *ten years.*

Obs. **Près** is sometimes used without **de** to denote place :

Vincennes, **près** Paris.	*Vincennes,* **near** *Paris.*

Auprès de, which, contrary to **près de**, does not refer to time, and is never followed by an infinitive, means—

(1) **Near, close to :**

Auprès du théâtre.	**Near** *the theatre.*
Il demeure **auprès de** chez nous.	*He lives* **close to** *our house.*

(2) **In the eyes of, in the opinion of :**

Rien ne trouve grâce **auprès de lui.**	*Nothing finds favour* **in his eyes.**
Ne me desservez pas **auprès d'eux.**	*Do not injure me* **in their opinion.**

(3) **To :**

Il avait libre accès **auprès du** roi.	*He had free access* **to** *the king.*
L'ambassadeur **auprès de** la cour de Russie.	*The ambassador* **to** *the court of Russia.*

(4) **In comparison with :**

La mort n'est rien **auprès du** déshonneur.	*Death is nothing* **in comparison with** *dishonour.*

(5) **With :**

Vous resterez toujours **auprès de** nous.	*You will always remain* **with** *us.*
Pour être bien **auprès des** grands, il faut savoir les flatter.	*In order to be in favour* **with** *the great, you must know how to flatter them.*

Obs. **Proche de** (sometimes **proche**) is also used, but not so frequently, in the sense of **near :**

Proche du village.	*Near the village.*

§ **389. Sous** means—

(1) **Under :**

Sous la table ; **sous** cette pierre.	**Under** *the table ;* **under** *that stone.*
Sous le commandement de . . .	**Under** *the command of . . .*
Sous ces trompeuses apparences . . .	**Under** *this deceiving exterior . . .*
Sous prétexte de le servir . . .	**Under** *pretence of serving him . .*

(2) **In :**

Être **sous** presse.	*To be* **in** *the press.*
Sous tous ces rapports . . .	**In** *all these respects . . .*
Je passai tout cela **sous** silence.	*I passed all that over* **in** *silence.*
Vous nous reverrez **sous** peu.	*You will see us again* **in** *a short time.*
Sous le règne de Louis IX.	**In** *the reign of Louis IX.*

(3) **On :**

Sous quelle condition ?	**On** *what condition ?*
Pouvez-vous l'affirmer **sous** serment?	*Can you affirm it* **upon** *your oath ?*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Un acte **sous** seing privé.	*A private deed.*
Son fils est **sous** les drapeaux.	*His son is in the service.*
Ils se rangèrent **sous** ses drapeaux.	*They sided with him.*
Sous quel nom l'avez-vous connu ?	*By what name did you know him ?*
J'ai tout **sous** la main.	*I have everything ready at hand.*
Quelqu'un l'avait accusé **sous** main.	*Some one had accused him secretly.*

Au-dessous de and **par-dessous**, which are the opposites of **au-dessus de** and **par-dessus** (see § 390), may both be used occasionally to translate **under**; but, as a rule, **au-dessous de** means **below**, and **par-dessous, underneath**:

Tout paquet **au-dessous d'**une livre.	*Every parcel* **under** *one pound.*
Sa chambre est **au-dessous de** la mienne.	*His room is* **under** *mine.*
Cela est **au-dessous de** vous.	*That is* **below** *you.*
Au-dessous du sourcil gauche.	**Below** *the left eyebrow.*
Au-dessous de zéro.	**Below** *zero.*
Passez **par-dessous** cette branche.	*Pass* **underneath** *this branch.*
Il avait un poignard **par-dessous** son manteau.	*He had a dagger* **underneath** *his cloak*

§ **390. Sur** means—

(1) **On, upon**:

Sur l'eau; **sur** la table.	**On** *the water*; **upon** *the table.*
Sur mon honneur.	**Upon** *my honour.*
Il prit tout **sur** lui.	*He took everything* **upon** *himself.*
Vous pouvez compter **sur** moi.	*You can reckon* **upon** *me.*

(2) **About**:

Quelle est votre opinion **sur** sa conduite?	*What is your opinion* **about** *his conduct?*
Il n'a jamais d'argent **sur** lui.	*He has never any money* **about** *him.*
Sur les neuf heures.	**About** *nine o'clock.*

(3) **By**:

Une chambre de vingt-cinq pieds de long **sur** dix-huit de large.	*A room twenty-five feet long* **by** *eighteen wide.*
Il ne faut juger de personne **sur** la mine.	*We must not judge of any one* **by** *his looks.*

(4) **In, into**:

Vous n'avez qu'à marcher **sur** ses traces.	*You have only to tread* **in** *his steps.*
Le salon ouvre **sur** le jardin.	*The drawing-room opens* **into** *the garden.*

(5) **Out of**:

Sur quatre il n'en est venu que deux.	**Out of** *four two only came.*

(6) **Over :**

Il est toujours **sur** ses livres.	*He is always* **over** *his books.*
Qui régnait alors **sur** eux ?	*Who was then reigning* **over** *them ?*
Ces arguments n'eurent aucune influence **sur** lui.	*These arguments had no influence* **over** *him.*
Veillez **sur** cet enfant.	*Watch* **over** *that child.*

(7) **To, towards :**

Tournez **sur** la droite.	*Turn* **to** *the right.*
Ces paroles, chantées **sur** un air lugubre . . .	*Those words, sung* **to** *a lugubrious tune . . .*
Sur le minuit.	**Towards** *midnight.*
Ils se retirèrent **sur** la ville.	*They retired* **towards** *the town.*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Sur ce; **sur-le-champ.**	*Thereupon ; at once.*
Sur toute chose.	*Above all things.*
Il a le cœur **sur** { les lèvres. / la main.	*He is* { *frank.* / *liberal.*
Il ne mâche pas ce qu'il a **sur** le cœur.	*He does not mince matters.*
Revenons **sur** nos pas.	*Let us retrace our steps.*
L'enfant recommença trois fois coup **sur** coup.	*The child began again three times following.*
Il prenait **sur** son sommeil.	*He took from his sleep.*

Au-dessus de means—

(1) **Above, over :**

Les nuages qui passent **au-dessus de** nos têtes.	*The clouds which pass* **over** *our heads.*
Au-dessus de zéro.	**Above** *zero.*
Il n'y a rien **au-dessus de** cela.	*There is nothing* **above** *that.*

(2) **Beyond, out of the reach of :**

Il avait un courage **au-dessus de** son âge.	*He had a courage* **beyond** *his age.*
Mon honneur est **au-dessus de** toutes les imputations.	*My honour is* **beyond the reach of** *all imputation.*

Par-dessus means also **above, over :**

Par-dessus tout.	**Above** *all.*
Sautez **par-dessus** la haie.	*Jump* **over** *the hedge.*
Par-dessus cette enveloppe il y en avait une autre.	**Above** *that envelope there was another.*

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Par-dessus le marché.	*Into the bargain.*
Il a des dettes **par-dessus** la tête.	*He is over head and ears in debt.*
J'en ai **par-dessus** la tête.	*I am sick and tired of it.*

§ **391.** Both **vers** and **envers** mean **towards, to,** but **vers** is used of *time* and *place,* whilst **envers** denotes *feeling* or *disposition* :

Vers (les) neuf heures.	*Towards nine o'clock.*
Nous allâmes **vers** le rivage.	*We went towards the shore.*
But Sa bonté **envers** moi.	*His kindness towards me.*
Soyez charitable **envers** tous.	*Be charitable to all.*

Obs. Notice the expression **envers et contre tous,** *against all comers.*

§ **392.** **Voici** (=*here is, here are, this is, these are*), refers—

(1) To a **near** object :

Voici votre livre, prenez-le.	*Here is your book, take it.*
Lisez la lettre que **voici.**	*Read this letter (here).*
Viennent-ils ?—Oui, les **voici.**	*Are they coming ?—Yes, here they are.*

(2) To a statement **following** :

Voici mon plan, écoutez.	*Here is my plan, listen.*

(3) Generally to the **present** or **future** rather than to the **past** :

Nous **voici** arrivés.	*Here we are at last.*
Voici qui fera notre affaire.	*Here is something that will suit us.*

Obs. Notice the idioms :

En **voici** bien d'une autre.	*Here is another pretty thing !*
Voici venir la nuit.	*Night is coming.*

§ **393.** **Voilà** (=*there is, there are, that is, those are*), refers—

(1) To a **distant** object :

Voici mon livre; **voilà** le vôtre.	**Here** *is my book;* **there** *is yours.*
Où sont-ils ?—Les **voilà** qui s'en vont.	*Where are they ?—There they are going away.*

Voilà is, however, often used instead of **voici** in speaking of a near object, especially in exclamations :

Voilà une belle maison !	*Here is a beautiful house !*
Voilà donc notre libérateur !	*Here then is our liberator !*

(2) To a **preceding** statement :

Voilà tout ce qu'il m'a dit.	*That is all he said to me.*
La bonne idée que **voilà** !	*That is a good idea !*
En **voilà** assez !	*Enough of that !*

(3) Generally to the **past** or **present** rather than to the **future** :

Le **voilà** qui est tombé.	*There, he has fallen down !*
Voilà qui est bien.	*That is right well done.*

Obs. Notice the idioms :

Voilà qu'on vient.	*There is some one coming.*
Comme nous partions, **voilà** qu'on le rappelle.	*As we were going, all at once he was called back.*
Voilà ce que c'est que d'être imprudent.	*That's what you get for being imprudent.*

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A.—*CO-ORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.*

I.—*Et.*

§ **394**. Contrary to the English *and*, which is often repeated before similar parts of the same sentence, the conjunction **et** is, as a rule, used only before the last :

Il était franc, généreux **et** brave.	*He was frank* **and** *generous* **and** *brave.*
Elle courut à lui, le prit par la main **et** l'entraîna vers la maison.	*She ran to him* **and** *took him by the hand* **and** *hurried him on towards the house.*

EXCEPTION.—**Et** is sometimes repeated in the sense of *both . . . and . . .* :

Et le jour **et** la nuit.	*Both by day and by night.*
Et le riche **et** le pauvre sont soumis à la même loi.	*Both rich and poor are subject to the same law.*

Obs. The repetition of **et** is frequent in Biblical style.

§ **395**. *And*, placed between a verb of motion and another verb simply to denote purpose, intention, is not translated, and the second verb is put in the infinitive :

Allez lui parler.	*Go* **and** *speak to him.*
J'irai vous voir demain.	*I will go* **and** *see you to-morrow.*

Obs. In correlative comparisons, **et** is omitted, like *and* in English, at the beginning of the second term :

Plus je le vois, moins je l'aime.	*The more I see him, the less I like him.*

II.—*Ni.*

§ **396**. Besides sometimes connecting two negative propositions, as :

Le prince n'a point d'autre but, **ni** n'en veut connaître,	*The prince has no other end in view, neither wishes to know of any other,*

the conjunction **ni** is used to join—

(1) Two subordinate clauses depending on a negative statement :

Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il soit arrivé, **ni** même qu'il soit parti.	*I am not sure that he has arrived, or even that he has started.*

Exception.—**Et** is used instead of **ni** when the two subordinate clauses are taken as an inseparable whole :

Il n'est pas possible qu'il parte ce matin **et** qu'il arrive ce soir.	*It is not possible for him to start this morning and arrive this evening.*

(2) The similar parts of a negative sentence :

Il n'y a **ni** rime **ni** raison dans son discours.	*There is neither rhyme nor reason in his speech.*
Il ne sait **ni** lire **ni** écrire.	*He can neither read nor write.*

Exceptions.—(1) **Et** must be used when the similar parts are taken as an inseparable whole :

Je n'aime pas la prose **et** les vers mêlés dans la même pièce.	*I do not like prose and poetry mixed up in the same play.*

(2) **Et** may be used when the similar parts precede the negative :

Les femmes **et** les enfants ne furent pas épargnés.	*Women and children were not spared.*

§ **397.** **Ni** is also used after **sans** and **sans que**, provided **sans** be not repeated :

Sans rime **ni** raison.	*Without rhyme or reason.*
Sans qu'il nous voie **ni** qu'il nous entende.	*Without his seeing or hearing us.*

Obs. **Ni** is sometimes found instead of **et** or **ou**, after expressions like **avoir peine à, défendre, se garder,** which imply negation :

Gardez-vous de sortir de la maison **ni** même de votre chambre.	*Mind you don't go out of the house or even out of your room.*

§ **398.** Observations.—

(1) **Ni** is, as a rule, preceded or followed by **ne** :

Je **ne** connais **ni** lui **ni** son frère.	*I know neither him nor his brother.*
Ni lui **ni** son frère **ne** viendront.	*Neither he nor his brother will come.*

Exceptions.—**Ne** is omitted—

(1) When the verb is understood :

Est-il grand ?—**Ni** grand **ni** petit.	*Is he tall ?—Neither tall nor short.*

(2) In the cases mentioned in the preceding paragraph.

(2) **Ni** is generally repeated when it joins other words than finite verbs, and **pas** (or **point**) is omitted:

Je **ne** connais **ni** lui **ni** son frère.
Il **ne** sait **ni** lire **ni** écrire.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Ni** is used once only—

(1) Often with **jamais, nul, personne,** etc.:

Il **ne** sut **jamais** lire **ni** écrire.	*He never could read or write.*
Personne n'est plus loyal **ni** plus généreux.	*No one is more upright or generous.*

(2) Sometimes with nouns not preceded by the article:

Prières **ni** menaces **ne** l'émurent.	*Neither prayers nor threats moved him.*
Honneurs **ni** richesses **ne** nous rendent heureux.	*Neither honours nor wealth make us happy.*

(3) When **ni** joins two finite verbs or two present participles, it is both preceded and followed by **ne** (see, however, § 397), and **pas** (or **point**) is always omitted in modern French after the second verb:

Je **ne** l'aime **ni ne** le hais.	*I neither like nor hate him.*

Obs. **Pas** (or **point**) may be used after the first verb:

Je ne les connais **pas**, ni ne désire les connaître.	*I do not know them, nor do I wish to know them.*

§ **399.** Notice the following ways of translating *neither* or *nor*, when they are not used together:

I will not go.—**Neither** *will I.*	Je n'irai pas.—**Ni** moi **non plus.**
He will **not** *go* **either.**	Il **n'**ira **pas non plus.**
They went away, **nor** *did they come back* **before** *the next day.*	Ils s'en allèrent et **ne** revinrent **que** le lendemain.
I have never done it, **nor** *will I do it now.*	Je ne l'ai jamais fait, **et** je **ne** le ferai **pas** maintenant.
I do not think it is true; **nor** *does it matter* **much** *to me.*	Je ne crois pas que ce soit vrai; **d'ailleurs peu** m'importe.

III.—*Mais; partant, pourtant; toutefois, toutes les fois.*

§ **400.** Care should be taken not to translate *but* by **mais** when it stands instead of *only, just, except, without, if not, unless, that, that + not,*

who (or *which*) + *not*. The following examples will show how to translate it in such cases :

She is **but** *ten.*	Elle **n'a que** dix ans.
If you will **but** *try . . .*	Si vous essayez **seulement . . .**
What you said **but now . . .**	Ce que vous **venez de** dire . . .
He does **nothing but** *laugh.*	Il **ne** fait **que** rire.
None but *the poor . . .*	Les pauvres **seuls . . .**
Who **but** *you can do it?*	Qui peut le faire, **si ce n'est** vous?
But for *him, we should have come.*	**Sans** lui nous serions venus.
Who knows **but** *he may succeed?*	Qui sait **s'il ne** réussira **pas?**
I cannot speak **but** *he interrupts me at once.*	Je ne puis parler **qu'il ne** (*or* **sans qu'**il) m'interrompe aussitôt.
I doubt not **but** *you will do it.*	Je ne doute pas **que** vous ne le fassiez.
There is no one **but** *says so, etc.*	Il n'y a personne **qui ne** le dise, etc.

§ **401.** **Partant** (=*therefore, in consequence*) should not be confounded with **pourtant** (=*yet, however*), nor **toutefois** (=*however, nevertheless, still*) with **toutes les fois** (=*every time*) :

Plus d'amour, **partant** plus de joie.	*No more love,* **hence** *no more joy.*
Je le respecte, et **pourtant** je ne puis l'aimer.	*I respect him, and* **still** *I cannot love him.*
Si **toutefois** la chose est possible.	*If* **however** *the thing is possible.*
Je le rencontrais **toutes les fois.**	*I met him* **every time.**
Toutes les fois que je le rencontrais.	**Whenever** *I met him.*

B.—*SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.*

I.—*Depuis que, puisque.*

§ **402.** **Depuis que** and **puisque** are both rendered by *since*, but **depuis que** denotes time, whilst **puisque** precedes the statement of a reason :

Qu'avez-vous fait **depuis que** vous nous avez quittés?	*What have you been doing since you left us?*
Je lui écrirai, **puisque** vous le voulez.	*I will write to him since you wish it.*

II.—*Jusqu'à ce que.*

§ **403.** **Jusqu'à ce que** should not be confounded with **jusqu'à**, which, being a preposition, cannot govern a finite verb :

Je resterai ici { **jusqu'à ce qu'il revienne.** / **jusqu'à son retour.** } *I will remain here until he comes back.*

Obs. **Jusqu'à ce que** being inelegant, its use should be avoided whenever possible. The following examples will show some other ways of translating *until* :

Wait **until** *I have done.* — Attendez **que** j'aie fini.

I did **not** *see him again* **until ten years had passed.** — Je **ne** le revis **qu'au bout de dix ans.**

They fought valiantly **till night came.** — Ils se battirent vaillamment **jusqu'à la tombée de la nuit.**

He did **not** *give it up* **until he had tried** *several times.* — Il **n'y** renonça **qu'après avoir essayé** plusieurs fois.

She perceived her mistake, but **not until it was** *too late.* — Elle s'aperçut de son erreur, mais **il était déjà** trop tard.

I will go, but **not until I have spoken to him.** — J'irai, mais **non avant de lui avoir parlé.**

He will not do it **until** *you ask him yourself, etc.* — Il ne le fera pas **que** vous **ne** le lui demandiez vous-même, etc.

III.—*Lorsque, quand.*

§ **404.** **Lorsque** and **quand** may, as a rule, be used indifferently in affirmative sentences, but in direct and indirect questions **lorsque**, being only a conjunction, must be replaced by **quand**, which is both a conjunction and an interrogative adverb :

Lorsque (*or* **quand**), je le verrai, je lui en parlerai. — *When I see him, I will speak of it to him.*

But **Quand** (*not* **lorsque**) viendrez-vous nous voir ? — *When will you come to see us?*

Je ne sais pas **quand** (*not* **lorsque**) il doit partir. — *I do not know when he is to start.*

§ **405.** **Lorsque** is sometimes written in two words, **lors** being separated from **que** by **même** or **donc** :

Lors même **qu'**il rit.	*Even when he laughs . . .*

Obs. **Lors même que,** followed by the conditional, may be used, like **quand** or **quand même,** in the sense of *even if, though* :

Lors même qu'il le ferait.	*Even if he were to do it.*

§ **406.** **When** cannot always be rendered by **lorsque** or **quand,** especially after expressions of time. The following examples will show how to translate it :—

Scarcely had I come in, **when** *he went out.*	À peine fus-je entré **qu'**il sortit.
The day **when** *I saw you in London.*	Le jour **où** (*or* **que**) je vous ai vu à Londres.
It is the period **when** *I have suffered most.*	C'est l'époque **où** j'ai le plus souffert.
The moment **when** *you appeared I was thinking of you.*	Au moment **où** vous avez paru, je pensais à vous.
The moment (when) *he appeared, every one rose.*	**Dès qu'**il (*or* **aussitôt qu'**il) parut, tout le monde se leva.
He lived there until 1875, **when** *he settled in Paris.*	Il y demeura jusqu'en 1875, **époque où** il se fixa à Paris.
He remained silent until she arrived, **when** *he began to speak with animation.*	Il garda le silence jusqu'à son arrivée, **et alors** se mit à parler avec animation.
I left them a year ago, since **when** *I have not heard of them.*	Je les ai quittés il y a un an, **et depuis lors** je n'ai pas eu de leurs nouvelles.

Obs. Contrary to *when,* the conjunctions **quand** and **lorsque** must always be followed by a finite verb :

When questioned, *he would not answer.*	**Quand on le questionna,** il ne voulut pas répondre.
I had been told so **when a child.**	On me l'avait dit **quand j'étais enfant** (*or* dans mon enfance).

§ **407.** **Quand** should not be confounded with **quant,** which, followed by **à,** is used in the sense of *as for, with respect to* :

Quant au reste, ne vous en mettez pas en peine.	*As for the rest, do not trouble yourself about it.*
Quant à moi, je ne le crois pas.	*For my part, I do not believe it.*

IV.—*Parce que, par ce que; pendant que, tandis que; quoique, quoi que.*

§ **408.** **Parce que** (in two words) means *because*; **par ce que** (in three) signifies *by what, from what*:

Je ne sors pas, **parce que** j'ai beaucoup à faire.	*I do not go out,* **because** *I have a great deal to do.*
Je suis retenu ici **par ce que** j'ai à faire.	*I am kept here* **by what** *I have to do.*
Êtes-vous rassuré **par ce qu'**il a dit?	*Are you reassured* **by what** *he said?*

§ **409.** Both **pendant que** and **tandis que** mean *while, whilst*; but **pendant que** simply marks simultaneousness, whereas **tandis que** adds to the idea of simultaneousness the idea of contrast:

Pendant que nous l'attendions, il commença à pleuvoir.	**Whilst** *we were waiting for him, it began to rain.*
Son frère est pauvre, **tandis que** lui est fort riche.	*His brother is poor,* **whilst** *he,* **on the contrary,** *is very rich.*

§ **410.** **Quoique** (in one word) means *although*; **quoi que** (in two) signifies *whatever thing, whatever*:

Nul ne le croira, { **quoiqu'**il le dise. **quoi qu'**il dise.	*No one will believe it,* { **although** *he says it.* **whatever** *he may say.*

Obs. Bear in mind that both **quoique** and **quoi que** require the subjunctive.

V.—*Que.*

§ **411.** Contrary to the English conjunction *that*, **que** can never be omitted before a finite verb:

On dit **que** la guerre est finie.	*It is said the war is over.*
Vous savez **que** c'est impossible.	*You know it is impossible.*
Je ne doute pas **qu'**il ne réussisse.	*I have no doubt he will succeed.*

Obs. **Que**, however, is naturally omitted when the dependent verb is itself understood or put in the infinitive (see §§ 257 and 259):

Nous vous croyions sincère.	*We thought that you were sincere.*
J'espère vous voir demain.	*I hope that I shall see you to-morrow.*

§ **412.** Besides corresponding to *that*, **que** is used—

(1) In the sense of *let* with a verb in the subjunctive and in the third person (sometimes also in the first, when the sentence is negative) [see § 248]:

Qu'il meure !	**Let** *him die !*
Que tout votre travail soit fini avant trois heures.	**Let** *all your work be done before three.*
Que je ne tarde pas davantage à vous apprendre la nouvelle.	**Let** *me not delay any longer to tell you the news.*

(2) Instead of **afin que, pour que, de crainte que, de peur que, de façon que, de manière que, de sorte que,** after an imperative :

Parlez plus bas, **qu'**il n'entende pas.	*Speak lower,* **in order that** *he may not hear.*
Allez-vous-en, **qu'**il **ne** vous voie.	*Go away* **lest** *he should see you.*
Donnez-moi la lettre, **que** je la lise.	*Give me the letter,* **so that** *I may read it.*

Obs. When **que** replaces **de crainte que, de peur que,** it is followed, like those conjunctions, by **ne.**

(3) Instead of **à moins que, avant que, sans que,** after a negative statement, in which case it is also followed by **ne** :

Je n'irai pas **qu'**il **ne** me l'ordonne.	*I will not go* **unless** *he orders me to do so.*
Vous ne sortirez pas **que** vous **n'**ayez fini.	*You will not go out* **before** *you have finished.*

(4) Instead of **comme, quand, si,** and all conjunctions formed with **que,** to avoid the repetition of those conjunctions in consecutive dependent clauses :

Comme vous le connaissez et **que** vous répondez de lui . . .	*As you know him and answer for him . . .*
Quand ils reviendront et **que** je les verrai . . .	*When they come back and I see them . . .*
Si vous le lui demandez et **qu'**il n'y consente pas . . .	*If you ask him and he does not consent to it . . .*
Quoiqu'il soit tard et **que** je sois pressé . . .	*Although it is late and I am in a hurry . . .*

Obs. As already stated (§ 239), **que** requires the same mood as the conjunction it replaces, except when it stands instead of **si,** in which case the subjunctive is always used, although **si** is followed by the indicative.

(5) Redundantly, before **si** (cf. L. *quod si*) and in the idiom **si j'étais que de vous** (see also § 413) :

Que s'il refuse . . .	*If* (or *but if*) *he refuses . . .*
Si j'étais **que** de vous . .	*Were I in your place . . .*

§ **413.** The other uses of **que** having been already mentioned in various parts of the Syntax, it will be sufficient here to recapitulate the most important :

L'un est aussi impossible **que** l'autre.	*The one is as impossible as the other.*
La nouvelle était bien autrement grave **qu'**il ne le pensait.	*The news was far more serious than he thought.*
Il est toujours tel **qu'**il était.	*He is still such as he was.*
À peine fut-il parti **que** son frère arriva.	*He had scarcely started when his brother arrived.*
Un soir **que** j'étais seul avec lui . . .	*One evening when I was alone with him . .*
Vous êtes donc pressé, **que** vous courez si vite ?	*You are then in a hurry, since you run so fast ?*
Il y avait trois mois **qu'**il ne m'avait parlé.	*It was three months since he had spoken to me.*
On leur parle encore **qu'**ils sont déjà partis.	*They are already gone before you have finished speaking to them.*
Il y consentirait **que** je n'y consentirais pas, moi !	*Even if he were to consent to it, I would not.*
Qu'on lui parle (*subjunct.*) de ses enfants, aussitôt son visage s'éclaire.	*If you speak to him of his children, his face at once brightens up.*
Il n'a fait **que** jouer.	*He did nothing but play.*
Que pouvais-je faire **qu'**accepter ?	*What could I do but accept ?*
J'eus beau le supplier, l'ingrat **qu'**il est refusa.	*In vain I entreated him, the ungrateful one refused.*
C'est folie **que** d'attendre plus longtemps.	*It is sheer madness to wait any longer.*
Vous ne le ferez pas ?—Oh ! **que** non.	*You will not do it ?—Oh ! dear no.*
Enfant **que** vous êtes !	*How childish you are !*
La belle chose **que** la liberté !	*What a beautiful thing liberty is !*

APPENDIX.

List of Verbal Phrases without the Article.

Accuser réception de, *to acknowledge the receipt of.*
ajouter foi à, *to give credit to, to believe.*
avoir besoin de, *to want.*
avoir chaud, *to be warm.*
avoir compassion de, / avoir pitié de, } *to pity.*
avoir connaissance de, *to be aware of.*
avoir dessein de, *to intend.*
avoir envie de, *to have a mind to, to wish.*
avoir faim, *to be hungry.*
avoir froid, *to be cold.*
avoir honte (de), *to be ashamed.*
avoir lieu, *to take place; to have good ground.*
avoir patience, *to be patient.*
avoir peur (de), *to be afraid.*
avoir raison (de), *to be right.*
avoir soif (de), *to be thirsty; to long for.*
avoir soin (de), *to take care.*
avoir sommeil, *to be sleepy.*
avoir tort (de), *to be wrong.*
baisser pavillon, *to strike the colours, to give in.*
chercher fortune, *to seek one's fortune.*
chercher noise (à), / chercher querelle (à), } *to pick a quarrel.*
chercher malheur, *to court misfortune.*
conter fleurettes, *to talk gallantry.*
couper bras et jambes, *to dumfound.*
crier famine, *to cry famine.*
crier merci, *to cry out for mercy.*
crier misère, *to complain of poverty.*
crier vengeance, *to cry for vengeance.*
donner assignation à, *to summon.*
donner avis de, / donner connaissance de, } *to let know.*
donner caution, *to give bail.*
donner envie de, *to give a desire for.*
donner lieu à, *to give cause to.*
donner parole, *to give one's word.*
donner prise à, *to give a hold to.*
donner quittance, *to give a receipt.*
entendre finesse à, / entendre malice à, } *to give a malicious construction to.*
entendre raillerie, *to know how to take a joke.*
entendre raison, *to listen to reason.*
faire attention (à), *to pay attention.*
faire autorité, *to be an authority.*
faire bon accueil à, *to welcome.*
faire bonne contenance, *to put a good face on the matter.*
faire bonne mine à, / faire bon visage à, } *to look sweet on.*
faire cas de, *to value.*
faire connaissance, *to get acquainted.*
faire école, *to found a school (of writers, etc.).*
faire époque, *to mark an era.*
faire explosion, *to explode.*
faire face à, *to face.*
faire faction, *to mount guard.*
faire faillite, *to jail, to be bankrupt.*
faire feu, *to fire.*

faire figure, *to make a figure.*
faire foi, *to prove.*
faire fortune, *to get rich.*
faire gloire (*or* vanité) de, *to glory in.*
faire honneur, *to do honour.*
faire honte, *to put to shame.*
faire horreur, *to horrify.*
faire mal à, *to hurt.*
faire mauvaise mine à, } *to look coldly on.*
faire mauvais visage à, }
faire naufrage, *to be shipwrecked.*
faire parade (de), *to make a show.*
faire part de, *to acquaint with.*
faire patte de velours, *to draw in one's claws.*
faire peur (à), *to frighten.*
faire pitié (à), *to excite pity.*
faire plaisir (à), *to please.*
faire profession de, *to make a profession of.*
faire provision de, *to lay in a supply of.*
faire raison, *to give satisfaction.*
faire saillie, *to jut out.*
faire semblant, *to pretend.*
faire signe, *to beckon.*
faire silence, *to be silent, to be hushed.*
faire tort à, *to wrong.*
faire usage de, *to use.*
faire voile (pour), *to set sail (for).*
fausser compagnie à, *to give the slip to.*
imposer silence à, *to silence.*
interjeter appel, *to lodge an appeal.*
jeter feu et flamme, *to fret and fume.*
lâcher pied, *to lose ground.*
lâcher prise, *to let go, to give in.*
lever boutique, *to set up a shop.*
mettre fin à, *to put an end to.*
mettre obstacle à, *to put an obstacle in the way.*
mettre pied à terre, *to alight.*
mettre vent en poupe, *to sail before the wind.*
mettre à exécution, *to put into execution.*
mettre à feu et à sang, *to lay waste with fire and sword.*
mettre à flot, *to set afloat.*
mettre à mort, *to put to death.*
mettre à prix, *to set a price on.*
mettre à profit, *to turn to account.*
nouer alliance, amitié, *to form an alliance, a friendship.*
parler musique, etc., *to speak of music.*
perdre connaissance, *to swoon.*
perdre courage, *to lose courage.*
plier bagage, *to march off; to die* (pop.).
porter affection à, } *to bear love, friend-*
porter amitié à, } *ship to.*
porter bonheur (à), *to bring good luck.*
porter envie à, *to bear envy to.*
porter honneur, respect à, *to give honour, respect to.*
porter guignon, malheur (à), *to bring bad luck.*
porter perruque, *to wear a wig.*
porter plainte, *to make a complaint.*
porter témoignage, *to bear witness.*
prendre connaissance de, *to look into.*
prendre courage, *to take courage.*
prendre femme, *to marry.*
prendre feu, *to catch fire.*
prendre garde, *to take care.*
prendre haleine, *to take breath.*
prendre note de, *to take note of.*
prendre part à, *to take part in.*
prendre patience, *to take patience.*
prendre plaisir à, *to delight in.*
prendre racine, *to take root.*
prendre à partie, *to sue; to lay blame on.*
prendre à témoin, *to take to witness.*
prêter serment, *to take an oath.*
rebrousser chemin, *to retrace one's steps.*
recouvrer connaissance, *to recover one's senses.*
refuser obéissance, *to refuse obedience.*
remuer ciel et terre, *to move heaven and earth.*
rendre compte de, *to give an account of.*
rendre gloire à, *to give glory to.*
rendre grâce à, *to return thanks to.*
rendre hommage à, *to render homage to.*
rendre justice à, *to do justice to.*
rendre obéissance à, *to render obedience to.*

rendre raison à, *to give satisfaction to.*
rendre réponse à, *to return an answer to.*
rendre visite à, *to pay a visit to.*
renouer amitié (avec), *to renew friendship.*
renouer connaissance, *to renew acquaintances.*
savoir gré à, *to be grateful to.*
tenir auberge, boutique, etc., *to keep an inn, a shop,* etc.
tenir compagnie à, *to keep company with.*
tenir compte de, *to take into account.*
tenir lieu de, *to stand instead of.*
tenir registre de, *to make a record of.*
tenir table, *to give dinners.*
tenir tête à, *to cope with.*
tourner bride, *to turn back.*
tourner casaque, *to change sides, to be a turncoat,* etc.

List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition *à*.

Accessible, *accessible (to).*
accoutumé, *accustomed (to).*
adonné, *addicted (to).*
adroit, *clever (at).*
agile, *nimble (at).*
agréable, *pleasant (to).*
antérieur, *anterior (to).*
âpre, *eager (for).*
ardent, *ardent (in).*
assidu, *assiduous (to).*
attentif, *attentive (to).*
bon, *good, fit (for).*
cher, *dear (to).*
commun, *common (to).*
comparable, *comparable (to).*
conforme, *conformable (to).*
contraire, *contrary (to).*
convenable, *suitable (to).*
désagréable, *disagreeable (to).*
défavorable, *unfavourable (to).*
docile, *docile (to).*
doux, *soft, sweet (to).*
dur, *hard, inured (to).*
égal, *equal (to).*
enclin, *inclined (to).*
endurci, *hardened, inured (to).*
étranger, *foreign (to).*
exact, *exact (in).*
fatal, *fatal (to).*
favorable, *favourable (to).*
fidèle, *faithful (to).*
formidable, *formidable (to).*
fort, *clever (at).*
funeste, *fatal (to).*
habile, *clever (at).*
hardi, *bold (in).*
impénétrable, *impervious (to).*
importun, *importunate (to).*
impropre, *unfit (for).*
inabordable, inaccessible } *inaccessible (to).*
inattentif, *inattentive (to).*
incommode, *inconvenient (to).*
indifférent, *indifferent (to).*
indocile, *indocile (to).*
infatigable, *indefatigable (in).*
inférieur, *inferior (to).*
infidèle, *unfaithful (to).*
injurieux, *injurious (to).*
insensible, *insensible (to).*
inutile, *useless (to).*
lent, *slow (to).*
naturel, *natural (to).*
nécessaire, *necessary (to).*
nuisible, *hurtful (to).*
odieux, *hateful (to).*
opposé, *opposed (to).*
pareil, *similar (to).*
porté, *inclined (to).*
postérieur, *posterior (to).*
précieux, *precious (to).*
préférable, *preferable (to).*
préjudiciable, *injurious (to).*
prêt, *ready (to).*
prompt, *prompt (in).*
propice, *propitious (to).*
propre, *fit (for).*
rebelle, *rebellious (to).*
redevable, *indebted (to).*
redoutable, *formidable (to).*
responsable, *responsible (to).*
semblable, *similar (to).*
sensible, *feeling (for), alive (to).*
sourd, *deaf (to).*
sujet, *liable (to).*
supérieur, *superior (to).*
terrible, *terrible (to).*
utile, *useful (to),* etc.

Notice—

Assidu **auprès de** quelqu'un. *Attentive to some one.*

Bon, Doux, Dur } **envers** or **pour** les pauvres. *Kind, Gentle, Hard* } *to the poor.*

Bon **pour** les nerfs.	*Good for the nerves.*
Fort **de** sa conscience.	*Strong in the support of one's conscience.*
Fort **en** artillerie.	*Strong in artillery.*
Fort **en** histoire.	*Clever in history.*
Injurieux **pour** la santé.	*Bad for health.*
Redevable **de** sa liberté.	*Indebted for one's liberty.*
Responsable **de** tout.	*Responsible for everything.*

List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition *de.*

Abasourdi, *thunderstruck* (*at*).
abreuvé, *overwhelmed* (*with*).
abrité, *sheltered* (*from*).
absent, *absent* (*from*).
accablé, *overwhelmed* (*with*).
accompagné, *accompanied* (*by*).
accusé, *accused* (*of*).
admiré, *admired* (*by*).
adoré, *adored* (*by*).
affamé, *thirsting* (*for*).
affligé, *grieved* (*at*).
affranchi, *freed* (*from*).
aise, *glad* (*of*).
alarmé, *alarmed* (*at*).
altéré, *thirsting* (*for*).
ambitieux, *ambitious* (*of*).
ami, *friendly* (*to*).
amoureux, *fond* (*of*).
approchant, *near akin* (*to*).
avide, *greedy* (*of*).
béni, *blessed* (*by*).
bouillant, *hot* (*with*).
brodé, *embroidered* (*with*).
capable, *capable* (*of*).
certain, *certain* (*of*).
chargé, *loaded* (*with*).
charmé, *delighted* (*with*).
chéri, *beloved* (*by*).
comblé, *overwhelmed* (*with*).
complice, *privy* (*to*).
confus, *confused* (*at*).
connu, *known* (*to*).
consterné, *amazed* (*at*).
content, *pleased* (*with*).
contrarié, *vexed* (*with*).
coupable, *guilty* (*of*).
couronné, *crowned* (*with*).
couvert, *covered* (*with*).
curieux, *curious, fond* (*of*).
débarrassé, *freed* (*from*).
délivré, *delivered* (*from*).
dénué, *destitute* (*of*).
dépourvu, *devoid* (*of*).
désireux, *desirous* (*of*).
différent, *different* (*from*).
digne, *worthy* (*of*).
éloigné, *distant* (*from*).
embarrassé, *embarrassed* (*with*).
enchanté, *delighted* (*with*).
encombré, *cumbered* (*with*).
ennemi, *adverse* (*to*).
ennuyé, *weary* (*of*).
enorgueilli, *puffed up* (*with*).
entêté, *infatuated* (*with*).
entouré, *surrounded* (*by*).
envieux, *envious* (*of*).
esclave, *a slave* (*to*).
étonné, *astonished* (*at*).
exempt, *exempt* (*from*).
fâché, *sorry* (*for*).
fatigué, *tired* (*with*).
fier, *proud* (*of*).
fou, *mad* (*with*).
frais, *fresh* (*from*).
furieux, *furious* (*at*).
gai, *merry* (*with*).
garni, *lined, provided* (*with*).
glorieux, *proud* (*of*).
gonflé, *puffed up* (*with*).
gros, *big* (*with*).
haï, *hated* (*by*).
hérissé, *bristling* (*with*).
heureux, *glad* (*of*).
honteux, *ashamed* (*of*).
humide, *damp* (*with*).
humilié, *humbled* (*by*).
idolâtre, *extremely fond* (*of*).
ignorant, *ignorant* (*of*).
impatient, *impatient* (*of*).
incapable, *incapable* (*of*).
incertain, *uncertain* (*of*).
inconnu, *unknown* (*to*).
inconsolable, *inconsolable* (*at*).
indépendant, *independent* (*of*).
indigne, *unworthy* (*of*).
inondé, *overflowed* (*with*).
inquiet, *uneasy* (*about*).
inséparable, *inseparable* (*from*).
irrité, *angered* (*by*).
ivre, *intoxicated* (*with*).
jaloux, *jealous* (*of*).
joyeux, *glad* (*of*).
las, *weary* (*of*).
léger, *ready* (*with*), *low* (*in*).

libre, *free* (*from*).
lourd, *heavy* (*with*).
malheureux, *unhappy* (*at*).
mécontent, *dissatisfied* (*with*).
mêlé, *mixed* (*with*).
méprisé; *despised* (*by*).
mourant, *dying* (*with*).
offensé, *offended* (*at*).
orgueilleux, *proud* (*of*).
orné, paré, } *adorned with.*
pauvre, *poor* (*in*).
plein, *full* (*of*).
pourvu, *provided* (*with*).
précédé, *preceded* (*by*).
privé, *deprived* (*of*).
prodigue, *lavish* (*of*).
protégé, *protected* (*from*).
ravi, *delighted* (*with*).
reconnaissant, *grateful* (*for*).
redevable, *indebted* (*for*).
rempli, *filled* (*with*).
responsable, *responsible* (*for*).
riche, *rich* (*in*).
satisfait, *satisfied* (*with*).
soigneux, *careful* (*of*).
soucieux, *anxious* (*about*).
souillé, *stained* (*with*).
soupçonné, *suspected* (*of*).
sûr, *sure* (*of*).
surpris, *surprised* (*at*).
taché, *stained* (*with*).
tapissé, *carpeted* (*with*).
tourmenté, *tormented* (*with*).
trempé, *bathing* (*in*), *streaming* (*with*).
tributaire, *tributary* (*of*).
triste, *sad* (*on account of*).
vain, *puffed up* (*with*).
vexé, *vexed* (*at*).
victime, *a victim* (*of*).
victorieux, *victorious* (*over*).
vide, *void* (*of*).
voisin, *bordering* (*on*), etc.

Noticé—

Accablé **par** le nombre.	*Overcome by number.*
Embarrassé **par** cette question.	*Embarrassed by that question.*
Fâché **contre** quelqu'un.	*Angry with some one.*
Ignorant **en** mathématiques.	*Ignorant in mathematics.*
Son visage ne **m'**est pas inconnu.	*His face is not unknown to me.*
Léger **à** la course.	*Swift of foot.*
Riche **en** espérance.	*Rich in hope.*

List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition *en.*

Abondant, *abounding* (*with*).
expert, *expert* (*in*).
fécond, *fruitful* (*in*).
fertile, *fertile* (*in*).
fort,[1] *strong*, *well up* (*in*).
ignorant,[1] *ignorant* (*in*).
riche,[1] *rich* (*in*).
savant, *learned* (*in*), etc.

List of Adjectives requiring the Preposition *envers.*

Affable, *affable.*
bon,[1] *kind.*
charitable, *charitable.*
civil, *civil.*
clément, *merciful.*
coupable,[1] *guilty.*
cruel, *cruel.*
dur,[1] *hard.*
généreux, *generous.*
grossier, *rude.*
honnête, *polite.*
impoli, *impolite.*
incivil, *uncivil.*
indulgent, *indulgent.*
ingrat, *ungrateful.*
injuste, *unjust.*
insolent, *insolent.*
juste, *just.*
libéral, *liberal.*
malhonnête, *rude.*
méchant, *wicked.*
miséricordieux, *merciful.*
officieux, *officious.*
poli, *polite.*
prodigue,[1] *lavish.*
reconnaissant,[1] *grateful.*
respectueux, *respectful.*
responsable,[1] *responsible.*
rigoureux, *stern.*
sévère, *severe*, etc.

[1] See the preceding lists.

List of Adjectives with different meanings according to their place before or after the Noun.

ANCIEN.	Un ancien ami, *a former friend.*	Un ami ancien, *an old friend.*
	L'ancienne histoire, *the old story.*	L'histoire ancienne, *ancient history.*
BON.	Il a bon air, *he looks gentlemanly.*	Il a l'air bon, *he looks kind.*
	Un bon homme, *a simple sort of man.*	Un homme bon, *a kind man.*
BRAVE.	Un brave homme, *a worthy man.*	Un homme brave, *a brave man.*
CERTAIN.	Un certain fait, *a certain fact.*	Un fait certain, *a positive fact.*
CHER.	Mon cher enfant, *my dear child.*	Un livre cher, *an expensive book.*
COMMUN.	D'une commune voix, *unanimously.*	D'une voix commune, *with a vulgar voice.*
CRUEL.	Un cruel homme, *a disagreeable man.*	Un homme cruel, *a cruel man.*
DERNIER.	La dernière année de son règne, *the last year of his reign.*	L'année dernière, *last year.*
DIFFÉRENT.	Différentes opinions, *various opinions.*	Des opinions différentes, *different, contrary opinions.*
DIGNE.	Un digne homme, *a worthy man.*	Un homme digne, *a dignified man.*
DIVERS.	Divers motifs, *several motives.*	Des motifs divers, *different motives.*
FAMEUX.	Un fameux coquin, *an arrant rogue.*	Un coquin fameux, *a famous rogue.*
FAUX.	Un faux air (de), *a sort of likeness (to).*	Un air faux, *a deceitful look.*
	Une fausse clef, *a skeleton key.*	Une clef fausse, *a wrong key.*
	Une fausse corde, *an untuned string.*	Une corde fausse, *an untunable string.*
	Une fausse note, *a false note.*	Une note fausse, *a note out of tune.*
	Une fausse pièce, *a faithless man.*	Une pièce fausse, *a counterfeit coin.*
FIER.	Un fier homme, *a capital man.*	Un homme fier, *a proud man.*
FORT.	Une forte eau, *a large mass of water.*	Une eau-forte, *an aquafortis engraving.*
	Une forte femme, *a stout woman.*	Une femme forte, *a strong woman.*
FRANC.	Une franche défaite, *a mere pretext.*	Une femme franche, *a plain-spoken woman.*
	Un franc vaurien, *a regular scamp.*	Deux jours francs, *two whole days.*
FURIEUX.	Une furieuse bévue, *a huge blunder.*	Une bataille furieuse, *a furious battle.*

GALANT.	Un galant homme, *a well-bred man.*	Un homme galant, *a ladies' man.*
GRAND.	Un homme du grand air, *a man of fashion.*	Un homme à l'air grand, *a noble-looking man.*
	Le grand air, *the open air.*	
	Une grande dame, *a lady of rank.*	Une dame grande, *a tall lady.*
	Un grand homme, *a great man.*	Un homme grand, *a tall man.*
HAUT.	La haute mer, *the open sea.*	La mer est haute, { *the sea is rough.* / *it is high water.*
	Prendre le haut ton, *to carry it high.*	Le ton haut, *the high tone* (mus.).
	Un homme de haut ton, *a man of fashion.*	
HONNÊTE.	Un honnête homme, *an honest man.*	Un homme honnête, *a polite man.*
JEUNE.	Un jeune homme, *a young man.*	Un homme jeune, *a youthful man.*
	Le jeune Pline, *young Pliny.*	Pline le jeune, *Pliny the younger.*
MAIGRE.	Un maigre repas, *a sorry meal.*	Un repas maigre, *a fish-meal.*
MALHONNÊTE.	Un malhonnête homme, *a dishonest man.*	Un homme malhonnête, *a rude man.*
MAUVAIS.	Il a mauvais air, *he is ill-mannered.*	Il a l'air mauvais, *he looks ill-natured.*
MÉCHANT.	Un méchant homme, *a wicked man.*	Un homme méchant, *a mischievous man.*
	Une méchante satire, *a wretched satire.*	Une satire méchante, *a malicious satire.*
MÊME.	Le même honneur, *the same honour.*	L'honneur même, *honour itself.*
MORT.	Le mort bois, *worthless wood* (*brambles*, etc.).	Le bois mort, *dead wood.*
	En morte eau, *at low water.*	De l'eau morte, *stagnant water.*
NOUVEAU.	Un nouvel homme, *another man.*	Un homme nouveau, *an upstart.*
	Une nouvelle robe, *a different dress.*	Une robe nouvelle, *a new-fashioned dress.*[1]
PAUVRE.	Un pauvre écrivain, *a writer without talent.*	Un écrivain pauvre, *a needy writer.*
PETIT.	Un petit homme, *a short man.*	Un homme petit, *a mean man.*
	Les petites gens, *people without fortune.*	Les gens petits, *short people.*
PLAISANT.	Une plaisante histoire, *a ridiculous story.*	Une histoire plaisante, *an amusing story.*
PREMIER.	La première cause, *the first cause.*	La cause première (phil.), *God.*
	La première idée, *the first idea.*	L'idée première, *the fundamental idea.*

[1] *Notice* Une robe neuve, *a newly-made dress.*

PROPRE.	Sa propre robe, *her own dress.*	Sa robe propre, *her clean dress.*
	Les propres termes, *the very terms.*	Les termes propres, *the proper terms.*
SEUL.	Le seul honneur, *the only honour.*	L'honneur seul, *honour alone.*
SIMPLE.	Un simple air, *a plain song (without music).*	Un air simple, *a simple tune.*
	Un simple soldat, *a private.*	Un soldat simple, *a simple soldier.*
TRISTE.	Un triste homme, *a despicable man.*	Un homme triste, *a sad man.*
VÉRITABLE.	Une véritable histoire, } *a regular*	Une histoire véritable, } *a true tale.*
VRAI.	Un vrai conte, } *story.*	Un conte vrai, }

List of Verbs requiring no Preposition before an Infinitive.

Accourir, *to hasten.*	écouter, *to listen.*	prétendre, *to pretend, to intend.*
affirmer, *to affirm.*	entendre, *to hear, to mean.*	
aimer mieux, *to prefer.*	envoyer, *to send.*	se rappeler, *to remember.*
aller, *to go.*	espérer, *to hope.*	reconnaître, *to acknowledge.*
assurer, *to assure.*	faillir, *to be near, well nigh.*	regarder, *to look.*
avouer, *to confess.*	faire, *to make, to cause.*	retourner, *to return.*
compter, *to intend.*	falloir, *to be necessary.*	revenir, *to come back.*
confesser, *to confess.*	s'imaginer, *to fancy.*	savoir, *to know, to be able.*
courir, *to run.*	jurer, *to swear.*	sembler, *to seem.*
croire, *to believe.*	laisser, *to let, to allow.*	sentir, *to feel.*
daigner, *to deign.*	monter, *to go up.*	souhaiter, *to wish.*
déclarer, *to declare.*	nier, *to deny.*	soutenir, *to maintain.*
déposer, *to testify.*	oser, *to dare.*	témoigner, *to testify.*
descendre, *to descend, to go down.*	ouïr, *to hear.*	valoir mieux, *to be better.*
	paraître, *to appear.*	venir, *to come.*
désirer, *to wish.*	penser, *to think, to be near.*	voir, *to see.*
devoir, *to be to, to have to.*	pouvoir, *to be able.*	voler, *to fly.*
dire, *to say.*	préférer, *to prefer.*	vouloir, *to wish, to be willing.*

Notice that—

(1) **Aimer mieux** and **valoir mieux** require **de** before a second infinitive:

Il vaut mieux se taire que **de** parler ainsi. — *It is better to keep silent than to speak so.*

(2) **Descendre** requires **à** when it means *to stoop*:

Je ne descendrai pas **à** me justifier. — *I will not stoop to justify myself.*

(3) **Désirer, espérer, nier, préférer, se rappeler,** and **souhaiter** may be followed by **de**:

Il souhaite **de** vous voir réussir. — *He wishes to see you succeed.*

(4) **Dire** requires **de** when the infinitive has not the same subject as the finite verb:

Je lui ai dit **de** venir.	*I have told him to come.*

(5) **Faillir** is sometimes followed by **à** or **de**:

Il a failli (**de** *or* **à**) tomber.	*He nearly fell.*

(6) **Faire** is followed by **de** in the expression **ne faire que de**:

Il ne fait que **de** sortir.	*He has but just gone out.*

(7) **Jurer** requires **de** when it means *to swear to*:

Je jure **de** mourir pour mon pays.	*I swear* **to** *die for my country.*
But Je jure l'avoir vu.	*I swear I have seen it.*

(8) **Laisser** takes **à** when it means *to leave*, and **de** in the expressions **ne pas laisser de, ne pas laisser que de**:

Cela laisse **à** désirer.	*That is unsatisfactory.*
Cela ne laisse pas **d'**être embarrassant.	*That is nevertheless embarrassing.*

(9) **Penser** requires **à** when it means *to think of*:

Je pensais **à** le faire.	*I was thinking of doing it.*
But Je pensais le faire.	*I thought I would do it.*

(10) **Prétendre** requires **à** when it means *to aim at*:

Il prétend **à** régner.	*He aims at reigning.*

(11) **Venir** is followed by **à** in the sense of *to happen to*, and by **de** in the sense of **to have just**:

Le roi vint **à** mourir.	*The king happened to die.*
Il vient **de** partir.	*He has just gone.*

List of Verbs requiring the Preposition *à* before an Infinitive.

S'abaisser, *to stoop.*
s'abandonner, *to give oneself up.*
aboutir, *to end (in), to lead (to).*
s'accorder, *to agree (in).*
accoutumer (s'-), *to accustom.*
s'acharner, *to be bent (upon).*
admettre, *to admit.*
s'adonner, *to addict one's self.*
s'aguerrir, *to inure one's self.*
aider, *to help.*
aimer, *to like.*
amener, *to lead.*
s'amuser, *to amuse one's self.*
animer (s'-), *to excite.*
s'appliquer, *to apply one's self.*
apprendre, *to learn, to teach.*
apprêter (à rire), *to afford matter for laughter.*
s'apprêter, *to get ready.*
aspirer, *to aspire.*
assigner, *to summon.*
assujettir (s'-), *to subject.*
astreindre, *to compel.*
s'astreindre, *to bind one's self.*
s'attacher, *to be intent (on).*
s'attendre, *to expect.*
autoriser, *to authorise.*

[Continued on next page.

s'avilir, *to debase one's self (in).*
avoir, *to have.*
balancer, *to hesitate.*
se borner, *to limit one's self.*
chercher, *to seek.*
commencer, *to begin.*
se complaire, *to take pleasure (in).*
concourir, *to co-operate (in).*
condamner (se-), *to condemn.*
condescendre, *to condescend.*
consacrer (se-), *to devote.*
consentir, *to consent.*
consister, *to consist (in).*
conspirer, *to conspire, tend.*
consumer, *to consume.*
se consumer, *to exhaust one's self.*
continuer, *to continue.*
contraindre, *to constrain.*
contribuer, *to contribute.*
convier, *to invite.*
coûter, *to cost.*
décider, *to induce.*
se décider, *to resolve (upon).*
demander, *to ask.*
demeurer, *to remain.*
dépenser, *to spend (in).*
désapprendre, *to forget.*
destiner, *to destine.*
déterminer, *to persuade.*
se déterminer, *to resolve (upon).*
dévouer (se-), *to devote.*
disposer (se-), *to dispose.*
se divertir, *to amuse one's self (with).*
donner, *to give.*
dresser, *to train.*
s'égayer, *to divert one's self.*

s'égosiller, *to make one's throat sore (with).*
employer (s'-), *to employ.*
encourager, *to encourage.*
engager (s'-), *to engage.*
enhardir (s'-), *to embolden.*
s'ennuyer, *to tire one's self (in).*
enseigner, *to teach.*
s'entendre, *to know how.*
être, *to be.*
s'étudier, *to study.*
s'évertuer, *to strive.*
exceller, *to excel (in).*
exciter (s'-), *to excite.*
exercer (s'-), *to exercise (in).*
exhorter, *to exhort.*
exposer (s'-), *to expose.*
se fatiguer, *to tire one's self (in).*
forcer, *to compel.*
former, *to form.*
gagner, *to gain (by).*
habituer (s'-), *to accustom.*
haïr, *to hate.*
se hasarder, *to venture.*
hésiter, *to hesitate.*
inciter, *to incite.*
incliner, *to incline.*
instruire, *to instruct.*
s'intéresser, *to take an interest (in).*
inviter, *to invite.*
jouer, *to play (at).*
se lasser, *to tire one's self (in).*
manquer, *to fail.*
mettre, *to put.*
se mettre, *to set about.*
montrer, *to show how.*
obliger, *to oblige.*
s'obliger, *to bind one's self.*
s'obstiner, *to persist (in).*

occuper (s'-), *to employ.*
s'offrir, *to offer.*
s'opiniâtrer, *to persist (in).*
parvenir, *to succeed (in).*
passer, *to spend (in).*
pencher, *to incline.*
perdre, *to lose (in).*
persévérer, *to persevere (in).*
persister, *to persist (in).*
se plaire, *to delight (in).*
se plier, *to submit.*
porter, *to induce.*
pousser, *to excite.*
prendre plaisir, *to delight (in).*
se prendre, *to begin.*
préparer (se-), *to prepare.*
procéder, *to proceed.*
provoquer, *to provoke, to incite.*
recommencer, *to begin again.*
réduire, *to reduce.*
se réduire, *to confine one's self.*
se refuser, *to refuse.*
renoncer, *to renounce.*
répugner, *to be reluctant.*
se résigner, *to resign.*
se résoudre, *to resolve (upon).*
rester, *to remain.*
réussir, *to succeed (in).*
se risquer, *to risk.*
servir, *to serve.*
songer, *to think.*
se soumettre, *to submit.*
suffire, *to suffice.*
tarder, *to be long, to delay.*
tendre, *to tend.*
tenir, *to be anxious.*
travailler, *to work.*
trouver, *to find.*
viser, *to aim.*
se vouer, *to devote one's self,* etc.

Notice that—

(1) **Avoir accoutumé,** as a neuter verb, takes **de** :

Je n'ai point accoutumé **de** craindre personne.	*I am not in the habit of fearing any one.*

(2) **Aimer, commencer, consentir, continuer, contraindre, demander, s'engager, forcer, se hasarder, obliger, recommencer,** may take **de** instead of **à** :

Il continue **à** (or **de**) travailler.	*He continues to work.*

(3) **Contraindre, forcer, obliger,** generally take **de** when used in the passive :

Ils furent contraints **de** se retirer.	*They were compelled to retire.*

(4) **Coûter, répugner, servir, suffire, tarder,** take **de** when used impersonally :

Il me tarde **d'**avoir fini.	*I long to have finished.*

(5) **Décider, déterminer,** take **de** when they mean *to resolve upon* :

J'ai décidé **de** refuser.	*I have made up my mind to refuse.*

(6) **S'ennuyer, se fatiguer, se lasser,** take **de** when they mean *to be weary of* :

Je me fatigue **de** vous le répéter.	*I am getting weary of repeating it to you.*

(7) **Haïr** may take **de** instead of **à** when used negatively :

Il ne haïssait pas **à** (or **de**) s'entendre flatter.	*He did not dislike hearing himself flattered.*

(8) **Manquer** takes **de** instead of **à** when it means *to omit, to forget, to be wellnigh* :

Je ne manquerai pas **de** le faire.	*I will not fail (omit, forget) to do it.*
Il manqua **de** tomber.	*He was near falling.*

(9) **Obliger** takes **de** when it means *to do a favour* :

Obligez-moi **de** croire . . .	*Do me the favour to believe . . .*

(10) **Suffire** may take **pour** instead of **à** :

Cela suffit **à** (or **pour**) le convaincre.	*That sufficed to convince him.*

List of Verbs requiring the Preposition *de* before an Infinitive.

S'abstenir, *to abstain.*
accuser (s'-), *to accuse.*
achever, *to finish.*
affecter, *to affect.*
s'affliger, *to grieve.*
s'agir (impers.), *to be in question.*
ambitionner, *to be ambitious, to aspire.*
appartenir (impers.), *to belong.*
s'applaudir, *to congratulate one's self.*
appréhender, *to fear.*
arrêter, *to determine.*
avertir, *to warn.*
s'aviser, *to think, to presume.*
avoir (generally when followed by a noun with which it forms an idiomatic expression; as, avoir peur, *to be afraid*).
blâmer, *to blame.*
brûler, *to burn, to long.*
censurer, *to censure.*
cesser, *to cease.*
se chagriner, *to grieve.*
charger, *to charge.*
se charger, *to undertake.*
choisir, *to choose.*
commander, *to command.*
conjurer, *to beseech.*
conseiller, *to advise.*
consoler (se-), *to console.*
se contenter, *to be satisfied.*
convaincre, *to convict.*
convenir, *to agree.*
convenir (impers.), *to suit.*
craindre, *to fear.*
crier, *to cry.*
décourager (se-), *to discourage.*
dédaigner, *to disdain.*
défendre, *to forbid.*
se défendre, *to forbear, to deny, to excuse one's self.*
défier, *to defy.*
se défier, *to distrust.*
dégoûter, *to give a dislike.*
délibérer, *to deliberate.*
se dépêcher, *to make haste.*
désaccoutumer (se-), *to disaccustom.*
désespérer, *to despair.*
déshabituer (se-), *to disaccustom.*
se désister, *to desist.*
détester, *to detest.*
détourner, *to dissuade.*
différer, *to delay.*
dire, *to bid.*
discontinuer, *to discontinue.*
disconvenir, *to disown.*
se disculper, *to exculpate one's self.*
dispenser, *to dispense.*
dissuader, *to dissuade.*
se douter, *to suspect.*
écrire, *to write.*
s'efforcer, *to endeavour.*
s'effrayer, *to be afraid.*
empêcher, *to prevent.*
s'empresser, *to hasten.*
enjoindre, *to enjoin.*
s'enorgueillir, *to be proud.*
enrager, *to be in a rage.*
entreprendre, *to undertake.*
épargner, *to spare.*
essayer, *to try.*
s'étonner, *to be astonished.*
éviter, *to avoid.*
excuser (s'-), *to excuse.*
exempter, *to exempt.*
feindre, *to feign.*
féliciter (se-), *to congratulate.*
finir, *to finish.*
se flatter, *to flatter one's self.*
frémir, *to shudder.*
gager, *to wager.*
garder (se-), *to forbear.*
gémir, *to groan.*
gêner, *to inconvenience.*
se glorifier, *to glory.*
gronder, *to scold.*
hasarder, *to venture.*
se hâter, *to hasten.*
s'impatienter, *to grow impatient.*
importer (impers.), *to matter, to be important.*
imputer, *to impute.*
s'indigner, *to be indignant.*
s'ingérer, *to meddle, to presume.*
inspirer, *to inspire.*
interdire, *to interdict.*
jouir, *to enjoy.*
jugér bon, *to think proper.*
jurer, *to swear to.*
justifier, *to justify.*
louer, *to praise.*
mander, *to bid.*
méditer, *to meditate.*
se mêler, *to meddle.*
menacer, *to threaten.*
mériter, *to deserve.*
se moquer, *to laugh.*

mourir, *to die.*
négliger, *to neglect.*
notifier, *to notify.*
obtenir, *to obtain.*
offrir, *to offer.*
omettre, *to omit.*
ordonner, *to order.*
oublier, *to forget.*
pardonner, *to forgive.*
parier, *to bet.*
parler, *to speak.*
permettre (se-), *to permit.*
persuader, *to persuade.*
se piquer, *to pride one's self.*
plaindre, *to pity.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
prendre garde, } *to take care.*
prendre soin, }
prescrire, *to prescribe.*
presser, *to urge.*
se presser, *to hasten.*
présumer, *to presume.*
prier, *to beg.*
priver (se-), *to deprive.*
projeter, *to intend.*
promettre (se-), *to promise.*
proposer, *to propose.*
se proposer, *to intend.*
punir, *to punish.*
recommander, *to recommend.*
refuser, *to refuse.*
regretter, *to regret.*
se réjouir, *to rejoice.*
remercier, *to thank.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
reprendre, *to reprove.*
réprimander, *to reprimand.*
reprocher (se-), *to reproach.*
se ressouvenir, *to remember.*
rire (se-), *to laugh.*
risquer, *to risk.*
rougir, *to blush.*
scandaliser, *to scandalise.*
seoir (impers.), *to become.*
sommer, *to summon.*
se soucier, *to care.*
souffrir, *to suffer.*
soupçonner, *to suspect.*
sourire, *to smile.*
se souvenir, *to remember.*
suggérer, *to suggest.*
supplier, *to beseech.*
tâcher, *to try.*
tenter, *to attempt.*
trembler, *to tremble.*
se vanter, *to boast*, etc.

Notice that—

(1) **Différer, essayer, s'efforcer,** and **oublier** (especially when it means *to forget how to*) may take **à** instead of **de** :

Il avait presque oublié **à** parler. *He had almost forgotten how to speak.*

(2) **S'empresser** may take **à** instead of **de** when it means *to be eager to* :

Tous s'empressaient **à** lui plaire. *All were eager to please him.*

(3) **Prier** generally takes **à** when it means *to invite formally* :

Je les ai priés **à** dîner. *I have invited them to dinner.*

(4) **Refuser** takes **à** in a few expressions in which it means *to refuse to give* :

Il lui refusa **à** boire, **à** manger. *He refused to give him anything to drink, to eat.*

(5) **Souffrir** takes **à** in a physical sense :

Je souffre **à** me tenir debout. *I have a pain when I stand.*

Obs. For **prendre garde** with **à**, see § 353 (10), *Obs.* 2.

INDEX

[*The numbers refer to the paragraphs.*]

À, with names of countries, 10 (3), Exc. 2, Obs.; after nouns, 28; after adj. 47; after verbs, 214; before infin. 262, 269, 270; before pers. pron. 139; repetition of, 368; various meanings of, 371.
abstract nouns, def. art. with, 10 (1).
abuser, constr. 210.
accepter, constr. 212.
accompagné, de after, 215 (6).
accorder, subjunct. after, 242.
accusative, 211-213.
accuser réception de, App. p. 227.
à condition que, mood after, 240, Obs. 2.
acquitter, s', constr. 215, Obs.
actuellement and *actually*, 313.
adjectival clauses, indic. or subjunct. in, 237; subjunct. alone in, 245; infin. in, 258.
adjectival phrases, omission of art. in, 7 (5).
adjectives, repetition of, 3, Obs.; agreement of, 31-35; place of, 36-43; changing meaning according to place, 43, and App. pp. 232-234; complement of, 44-50 (gov. **à** 47, **de** 48, **en** 49, **envers** 50, and App. pp. 229-231); comparison of, 51-61; of dimension, 62-64; numeral, 65-68; possessive, 69-72; indefinite, 73-106.
admettre, constr. 212.
admirer, subjunct. after, 243.
adverbial clauses, indic. or subjunct. in, 238-240; subjunct. alone in, 246, 247; infin. in, 259.
adverbial phrases, omission of art. in, 7 (6); invers. after, 21, Exc.
adverbs, preceded by a prepos. 299; forming prepos. locutions, 300; with complement, 301, Exc.; place of, 303, 304; repetition of, 305; of manner, 306-312; of time, 313-322; of place, 323-328; of quantity, 329-338; of affirmation, 339, 340; of negation, 341-366.
affirmation, adv. of, 339, 340.
afin de, 259.
afin que, subjunct. after, 246 (1).
affliger, s', subjunct. after, 243.
age, how to express, 63, Obs. 2.
agreement of art. 1; of noun, 19; of adj. 31-35; of pron. **le**, 121; of poss. pron. 142; of relat. pron. 157; of verb, 198-203; of past partic. 288-298.
ailleurs, d'ailleurs, 323.
aimer, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
aimer mieux, constr. 271 (5).
ainsi, invers. after, 21, Exc. 1 (*c*).
ainsi que, agr. after, 32, Exc. 1; 200, Exc. 2.
air, avoir l', 31, Exc. 8, Obs.
aise, être bien, subjunct. after, 243.
ajouter foi à, App. p. 227.
alentour, 301.
aller, with **à** and disj. pers. pron. 139, Note; imperat. of, 232, Exc. 2 and 3; expressing progress of an action, 284, Obs. 2.
alors, 314, 315.
amarante, agr. of, 19, Exc. Obs. 1.
âme qui vive, negat. without **pas**, 353 (1).
à moins de, 259.
à moins que . . . ne, 246 (3), 362.
ancien, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
anterior, past, 226.
à part, 301, Exc. 2 [*a*].
à peine, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
apercevoir, s', constr. 215, Obs.
à plus forte raison, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
applaudir, constr. 210.
apposition, omission of art. in, 8.

appréhender, subjunct. after, 243 ; **ne** after, 355.
apprendre, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
approcher, constr. 215 (2).
approuvé, agr. of, 289, Exc. 2.
approuver, constr. 212 ; subjunct. after, 242.
après, 372; used adverb. 370; with past infin. 255, Obs. 2, 259.
après, d', 373.
après que, past anter. after, 226.
aquilin, 31, Obs. 1 (*c*).
arrive, il, indic. after, 244, Exc.
article, agr. of, 1; place of, 2; repetition of, 3-5 ; omission of, 6-8.
article, definite, gen. rule, 9 ; used without equiv. in English, 10 ; to translate English indef. 11 ; to translate English poss. adj. 12 ; to translate *what*, *that*, *every*, 13.
article, indefinite, 14, 15 ; partitive, 16-18.
assez, place of, 303, Obs. 1 ; foll. by **pour**, 273 ; idiom. uses of, 329.
assister, constr. 210.
à travers, 374.
attendant de, en, 259.
attendant que, en, subjunct. after, 246 (4).
attendre, constr. 212.
attendu, agr. of, 289, Exc. 2.
au cas que, subjunct. after, 246 (3).
aucun, 73-75.
aucunement, 343.
au-dessous de, au-dessus de, 389, 390.
au moins, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 ; invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
auparavant, 301.
auprès de, 388.
aussi, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 ; invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
aussi . . . que, 53.
aussitôt, 319 (1).
aussitôt que, past anter. after, 226 ; fut. after, 227.
autant, 53, Obs. 2, 230.
au travers de, 374.
autre, 76-81 ; negat. without **pas**, 351 (1) ; foll. by **ne**, 361.
autrui, 179.
avant and **devant**, 375.
avant de, 259.
avant-dernier, agr. of, 35 (2).
avant que, subjunct. after, 246 (4) ; with **ne**, 362, Obs.
avec, 376.
avis, il m'est, indic. after, 241 (1), Obs.
avoir, verbal phrases with, App. p. 227.
avoir, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
avoir affaire, constr. 210.
avoir l'air, 31, Exc. 8, Obs.
avoir besoin, subjunct. after, 242.
avoir envie, honte, peur, subjunct. after, 243.

Baisser pavillon, App. p. 227.
bas, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1.
beaucoup, 331.
belle, idiom. uses of, 31, Obs. 2 (*b*).
besoin, avoir, subjunct. after, 243.
bien, partit. art. after, 17, Exc. 2; idiom. uses of, 307.
bien-aimé, agr. of, 35 (2).
bien que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
bientôt, 319 (2).
blâmer, constr. 215 (8); subjunct. after, 242; **de** and infin. after, 271 (2).
bleu foncé, invar. 33, Exc. 2.
body, parts of the, def. art. with, 11, 12.
bon, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1 ; diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
bon, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
bouger, negat. without **pas**, 351 (2).
bot, 31, Obs. 1 (*c*).
brave, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
brèche-dent, invar. 35 (3)
but, various ways of rendering, 400.
by, rendered by **de** after compar. and superl. 60 ; by **sur** in compar. dimensions ; by **de** after some passive verbs, 215 (6).

Ça, 153.
çà, 327, Obs. 2.
cacher, se, constr. 210.
cardinal adj. 65-68.
cas que, au or **en**, subjunct. after, 246 (3).
ce, demonst. pron. 146-151 ; agr. of **être** after, 201-203.
ceci, 152.
cela, 152-154.
celui, 155.
celui-ci, celui-là, 156.
ce n'est pas que, 151 (4).

cent, 65, Exc. 2.
ce qui, ce que, 163-165.
certain, 82.
cesser, negat. without **pas**, 351 (1).
c'est que, 151 (3).
chacun, 180, 181.
chaque, 83.
châtain clair, invar. 33, Exc. 2.
cher, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
chercher, constr. 212; **à** and infin. after, 269; verbal phrases with, App. p. 227.
chèvre-pied, plur. of, 35 (3).
ci, 324, 325.
ci-inclus, ci-joint, agr. of, 289, Exc. 3.
clair-semé, agr. of, 34.
class-names, def. art. with, 10 (1).
collective nouns, agr. with, 199, 297.
colour, nouns used adj. to express, 19, Exc. 2; compound adj. expressing, 33, Exc. 2.
combien, place of adj. after, 42, Exc. 1; various uses of, 333.
commander, mood required after, 236 (3); **de** and infin. after, 271 (2).
comme, place of adj. after, 42, Exc. 1.
comme and **comment**, 310, 311.
comment, invers. after, 21, Exc. 1 (*c*).
commun, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
comparative of equality, 53; of superiority and inferiority, 54-57.
compâtir, constr. 214, Obs.
complement of nouns, 25-29; of adj. 44-50.
compound adj., agr. of, 33-35.
comprendre, indic. or subjunct. after, 235.
compris, non, y, agr. of, 289, Exc. 2.
condition que, à, mood required after, 240, Obs. 2.
conditional, 228-231.
conjunctions, gov. indic. or subjunct. 238-240; subjunct. alone, 246, 247.
conjunctions of time, past anter. after, 226; fut. after, 227; condit. after, 228 (2), Obs.; subjunct. after, 246 (4).
conjunctions, co-ordinate, 394-401; subordinate, 402-413.
conjunctive personal pronouns, 108-135.
conjurer, subjunct. after, 242.
conseiller, subjunct. after, 242.
consentir, subjunct. after, 242.
considérer, mood required after, 234, Obs. 3.
contester, subjunct. after, 241 (1); foll. by **ne**, 357.
conter fleurettes, App. p. 227.
contre, 378.
convenir, constr. 210; **il convient**, subjunct. after, 244.
correlative comparisons, 56.
countries, names of, def. art. with, 10.
couper bras et jambes, App. p. 227.
courir, with pers. pron. 139, note; used transit. 211 (2); past partic. of, 291, Obs. 2.
court-vêtu, agr. of, 34.
coûte que coûte, 248 (2).
coûter, past partic. of, 291, Obs. 3.
craindre, subjunct. after, 243; **ne** after 355.
crainte de, de, 259.
crainte que . . . ne, de, 246, 362.
cramoisi, agr. of, 19, Exc. Obs. 2.
créer, omission of art. after, 8 (2).
crier, verbal phrases with, App. p. 227.
croire, constr. 210; **on croirait que**, indic. or subjunct. after, 236 (1).
cruel, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.

Dans and **en**, 379.
d'après, 373.
dative, ethic, 116; verbs gov. 214.
davantage and **plus**, 334.
de, omission of art. after, 7, 10 (3), Exc. 3; used instead of part. art. 17; nouns with, 29; adj. with, 48; verbs with, 215; used to translate *than*, 57; to translate *by* after compar. and superl. 60; to translate *in* after superl. 61; to denote dimension, 62, 63; after **quelque chose**, 189, **quelqu'un**, 190, **quoi**, 176 (2), **rien**, 197; before infin. 271; repetition of, 368; various meanings of, 381, 382.
de crainte de, 259.
de crainte que . . . ne, 246, 362.
dedans and **dans**, 301.
de façon à, 259.
de façon que, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
défendre, subjunct. after, 242.
défier, se, constr. 215, Obs.
defin. article. *See* article.
dehors and **hors**, 301.
déjeuner, constr. 215, Obs.

de ma vie, negat. without **pas**, 353 (1).
demander, constr. 210; subjunct. after, 242.
de manière à, 259.
de manière que, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
démettre, se, constr. 215, Obs.
demi, agr. of, 31, Exc. 2.
demonst. pronouns, 146-156.
dépendre, constr. 215, Obs.
depuis, depuis quand, depuis que, pres. with, 218; imperf. with, 220.
depuis que and **puisque**, 402.
dernier, subjunct. after, 237 (3); diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
désapprouver, subjunct. after, 242.
descendre, used transit. 211 (2).
désespérer, ne after, 357.
désirer, constr. 212; subjunct. after, 243.
dès que, past anter. after, 226.
dessous, 140, 301.
dessus, 301.
deux, moins de, agr. with, 199 (2).
deuxième, 67, Obs. 2.
devant and **avant**, 375.
devenir, omission of art. after, 8; **à** with infin. after, 262.
devoir, use of condit. of, 231 (2); infin. after, 255, Obs. 1, 264 (3).
différent, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
digne, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232; **être**, subjunct. after, 242.
dimension, adj. of, 62-64.
dîner, constr. 215, Obs.
dire, indic. or subjunct. after, 234, Exc. 3, 235, 236.
direct object, place of, 34; verbs gov. 211-213.
disconvenir, constr. 215, Obs.; subjunct. after, 241 (1); **ne** after, 357.
disjunctive pers. pronouns, 136-141.
dispos, invar. 31, Obs. 1 (*b*).
disputer, ne after, 357.
dissimuler, mood required after, 234, Obs. 2; **ne** after, 358.
divers, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
dommage, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
donc, 314, Obs.
donner, à and infin. after, 269 (1); verbal phrases with, App. p. 227.
dont, art. after, 10; uses of, 167-169.
d'où, compared with **dont**, 169.
douter, constr. 215, Obs.; mood required after, 234, Obs. 2, 241 (1); **ne** after, 357.
droit, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1.
dru, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1.
dû, before the noun, 38 (9), Exc. 2; agr. of, 293, Obs. 1 (*b*).
du moins, redund. pers. pron. after, 21; invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
duquel, def. art. after, 10; used instead of **dont**, 167, Exc.
durant, 367, Exc., 383.
du tout, 347, Obs. 1.

Each other, how rendered, 79.
écarlate, agr. of, 19, Exc. Obs. 1.
échouer, used transit. 211.
écouter, constr. 212; infin. after, 261.
elle, explet. use of, 119.
empêcher, subjunct. after, 242; **ne** after 356.
en, *pron.* def. art. with, instead of poss. adj. 71; place of, 112; uses of, 128-131; past partic. after, 296.
en, *prepos.* omission of art. after, 7, 10 (3), Exc.; adj. gov. 49; pres. partic. after, 284; various meanings of, 379, 380.
en attendant que, subjunct. after, 246 (4).
encore, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5; idiom. uses of, 316.
encore que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
enjoindre, subjunct. after, 242.
enseigner, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
ensuit, il s', indic. after, 244, Exc.
entendre, indic. or subjunct. after, 235; infin. after, 256, Obs., 261; verbal phrases with, App. p. 227.
entendu, agr. of, 289, Exc. 2.
entre, 384.
enumerations, omission of art. in, 9.
en vain, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
envers, 391; adj. requiring, 50.
envoyer followed by infin., place of pers. pron. with, 113, Exc.
envoyer chercher, constr. 212.
épais, épaisseur, 62, 63.
espèce, omission of art. after, 7.
espérer, constr. 212; indic. after, 243, Exc. 1.

essentiel, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
est-ce que, 151.
et, 394, 395.
étonner, s', subjunct. after, 243.
être, omission of art. after, 8; agr. of, 198, Obs. 1, 201-203; pres. of, instead of past, 219 (1), [*b*]; omission of, 256, Obs.; **à** and infin. after, 262, 270; **c'est** with infin. 264 (2).
éviter, subjunct. after, 242; **ne** after, 356, Obs. 3.
excepté, agr. of, 289, Exc. 2.
exiger, subjunct. after, 242.

Fâché, être, subjunct. after, 243.
façon à, de, 259.
façon que, de, 238.
faire, omission of art. after, 8; place of pers. pron. with, 113; omission of reflex. pron. after, 135; pres. of, instead of past, 219 (1), [*c*]; infin. after, 261, 264 (2, 3); past. partic. of, 293, Obs. 2; verbal phrases with, App. pp. 227, 228.
falloir. *See* **faut**.
fameux, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
fat, 31, Obs. 1 (*c*).
fausser compagnie à, App. p. 228.
faut, il, subjunct. after, 244; infin. after, 264 (2); **il s'en, ne** after, 359.
faux, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
ferme, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1.
feu, 2, 31, Exc. 4.
feuille-morte, invar. 35 (3).
few, a few, how rendered, 91, Obs. 1.
fier, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
force, agr. after, 199, Obs. (*c*).
fort, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
fournir, constr. 212.
frais, agr. of, 31, Exc. 1, Obs.
franc, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
franc de port, agr. of, 31, Exc. 2.
furieux, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 232.
fût-ce, 202, Exc. Obs.
future, 227.

Galant, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 233.
garde, n'avoir, negat. without **pas**, 352 (1); **prendre**, indic. or subjunct. after, 235; **ne** after, 353 (10).
garder, ne after, 353 (10).
genitive, verbs gov. 215.
genre, omission of art. after, 7.
geographical names, art. with, 10 (3).
gerund, 284.
goutte, negat. without **pas**, 353 (3).
grand, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 233.
grand' for **grande**, 31, Exc. 6.
grognon, 31, Obs. 1 (*b*).
guère, 344.

Haut, 62, 63; used adverb. 31, Exc. 1; diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 233.
haut la main, 31, Exc. 5.
hauteur, 62, 63.
heureux, être, subjunct. after, 243.
holy days, art. with, 10.
honnête, diff. mean. according to place, App. p. 233.
hors, dehors, 301.

Ici, 326.
ignorer, indic. or subj. after, 234, Obs. 2.
il, 119, 120.
il est, c'est, 148 (1), Obs., (2).
il y a . . . que, pres. after, 218; imperf. after, 220; **ne** after, 353 (7).
imperative, 232.
imperfect indic. 220, 221, 224, 229, Exc., Obs.
imperfect subjunct. 250, Exc. 1, 251 (1).
impersonal verbs, agr. of, 198, Obs. 2; subjunct. or indic. after, 244; past partic. of, 290 Obs., 291 Obs. 1.
importe, il, subjunct. after, 244.
importer, constr. 214, Obs.; negat. without **pas**, 351 (2), 353 (11).
imposer silence à, App. p. 228.
impossible, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
indefin. adj.. 73-106.
indefin. art. *See* article.
indefin., past, 223, 224.
indefin. pron. 179-197.
independent use of noun, 30; of subj. 248.
indicative, 216-227, 234-238.
indigner, s', subjunct. after, 243.
indirect object, place of, 24; with **à**, 214; with **de**, 215.
indispensable, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
inferiority, comparative of, 54-57.

infinité, une, agr. after, 199, Exc. 3.
infinitive, functions of, 252-255; used in French, but not in English, 256-260; active, used to translate English pass. verb, 261, 262; used in English but not in French, 263; without prepos. 264; preceded by prepos. 265-272.
inquiéter, s', subjunct. after, 243.
insulter, constr. 210.
interdire, subjunct. after, 242.
interjeter appel, App. p. 228.
interrogative pron. 172-178.
interrogative sentences, order in, 22, 23.
intransitive verbs used transitively, 211 (2).
inverted construction, 21, 109, Exc.
ivre-mort, agr. of, 33.

Jamais, omission of art. after, 14; with or without **ne**, 345.
jeter feu et flamme, App. p. 228.
jeune, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
jouer, constr. 210.
juger à propos, subjunct. after, 242.
jusqu' à ce que, 240, 403.
jusque, 385.
juste, used adverb. 31, Exc. 1.

L', past partic. preceded by the pron. 295.
là, 327.
lâcher pied, prise, App. p. 228.
laisser, infin. after, 261, 264 (3).
la plupart, followed by art. 17, Exc. 2, Obs.; agr. with, 199, Exc. 1.
large, largeur, 62, 63.
le, la, les, art. *See* article.
le, pron., in second term of comparison, 52.
le, la, les, pron., 121-124.
lequel, relat. 170, 171; interrog. 177, 178.
leur, poss. adj. 70, 71; pers. pron. 126, 127; poss. pron. 142-144.
lever boutique, App. p. 228.
loin que, subjunct. after, 246 (5).
l'on, 185.
long, longueur, 62, 63.
lorsque, 404, 405; fut. after, 227, Exc. 1; past anter. after, 226.
lui, conj. pron. 126, 127; disjunct. 136-139.
l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, 80.
l'un l'autre, 79.

Madame, mademoiselle, followed by art. 2; before **votre**, 72.
maigre, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
maint, 84.
mais, 400.
mal, idiom. uses of, 308.
malgré que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
malhonnête, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
mal parler, parler mal, 304, Exc. 3, Obs. 2.
manière à, de, 259.
manière que, de, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
manner, adverbs of, 306-312.
manquer, constr. 210.
maudit, 38 (9), Exc. 2.
mauvais, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
measure, nouns of, with def. art. 11.
méchant, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
médire, constr. 215, Obs.
méfier, se, constr. 215, Obs.
meilleur, ne after, 360; **le meilleur**, indic. or subjunct. after, 237 (3).
mêler, se, constr. 215, Obs.
même, 85-87.
mériter, subjunct. after, 242.
mettre, verbal phrases with, App. p. 228.
mettre en doute, subjunct. after, 241 (1).
mien, le, 142-145.
mieux, idiom. uses of, 309; **ne** after, 360.
mil, mille, 66.
moi, conj. pron. 110, Exc. Obs. 1, 112, Exc., 116; disjunct. 136-139.
moindre, moins, ne after, 360.
moins, idiom. uses of, 335, 366.
moins, au, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
moins de deux, agr. after, 199 (2).
moins de, à, 259.
moins que . . . ne, à, 246 (3), 362.
moitié, la, agr. after, 199, Exc. 2.
mon, 69.
monseigneur, monsieur, followed by art. 2; before **votre**, 72.
montrer, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
moods, use of, 216-298.
mordoré, agr. of, 19, Exc. Obs. 2.
mort, invar. in **mort-né**, 33, Exc.; different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.

mot, negat. without **pas**, 353 (3).
motion, verbs of, with infin. 267, Obs.
mountain peaks, art. with, 10.

Ne, use of, 341, 349-362.
nécessaire, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
ne fût-ce que, 151.
negation, adverbs of, 341-366.
negat. sent., indic. or subjunct. after, in substant. clauses, 234; in adj. clauses, 237.
n'est-ce pas, 151.
ni, use of, 396-399; omission of art. after, 7; agr. after, 200, Exc. (*d*).
nier, subjunct. after, 241 (1); **ne** after, 357 (3).
ni l'un ni l'autre, 80.
noisette, invar. 19, Exc. 2.
nombre, agr. after, 199, Obs. (*c*).
nombre, le plus grand, un grand, agr. after, 199, Exc. 3.
nommer, omission of art. after, 8.
non, 363-365.
nonobstant que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
non pas que, non que, subjunct. after, 246 (5).
non-seulement, 312.
notre, 69, 70.
nôtre, le, 142-144.
nouer alliance, amitié, App. p. 228.
nouns, agr. of, 19; place of, 20-24; gov. of, 25-29; independent use of, 30; gov. of verbs with, 204-215.
nourrir, se, constr. 215, Obs.
nous, special use of, 117.
nouveau, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
nouveau-né, agr. of, 34, 35.
nouveau venu, agr. of, 35.
now rendered by **alors**, 315.
nu, agr. of, 31, Exc. 3.
nul, 88.
number of noun complement of another noun, 25.
numeral adjectives, 65-68.

Object, place of, 24; direct, 211-213; indirect, 214, 215.
obvier, constr. 214.
on, l'on, 182-185.
one another, how rendered, 79.
optative sentences, invers. in, 21, Exc. 2 (*b*); subjunct. in, 248.
ordinal numbers, replaced by cardinal, 68; indic. or subjunct. in adj. clauses after, 237 (3).
ordonner, subjunct. after, 242.
oser, infin. after, 264 (3); negat. without **pas**, 351 (2).
ou, omission of art. after, 3, Exc. 2; 5, Exc. 1; agreement of adj. after, 32, Obs. 2; agreement of verb, 200, Exc. (*d*).
où, use of, 328; **d'où** and **dont**, 169.
oublier, indic. after, 234, Obs. 3.
oui and **si**, 339, 340.
ouï, agreement of, 289, Exc. 2.

Paille, invar. 19, Exc. 2.
par, 386.
paraît, il, indic. after, 241 (1).
paraître, omission of art. after, 8; infin. after, 262 (2), 264 (2).
par ce que and **parce que**, 408.
par-dessous, 300, 389.
par-dessus, 300, 390.
pardonner, constr. 210.
parenthetical clauses, invers. in, 21, Exc. 3.
parler mal, mal parler, 304, Exc. 3, Obs. 2.
parler musique, etc. App. p. 228.
parmi, 384.
partant and **pourtant**, 401.
participle, past, 288-298; present, 274-287.
participle used adj., place of, 38 (9).
partie, la plus grande, une grande, agreement after, 199, Exc. 3.
partitive article, 16, 17.
parts of the body, def. art. with, 11, 12.
pas, without **ne**. 341, Exc., 347; compared with **point**, 348; omitted, 351-353.
passé, agreement of, 289, Exc. 2.
passive, rendered by **on**, 184; by reflex. pron. 134.
past anterior, 226.
past definite, 222, 224.
past indefinite, 223, 224.
past participle, 288-298.
past subjunctive, 250 (2), 251, Exc. 2.
pauvre, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
payer, constr. 212.
pendant, 383.
pendant que and **tandis que**, 409.
perdre connaissance, courage, App. p. 228.
permettre, subjunct. after, 242.

personal pronouns, 107-141 ; used to translate English poss. adj. 12 (2), and English poss. pron. 143.
personne, 186-188.
petit, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
peu, 336, 366.
peu, le, agreement with, 199, Obs. 6, 297, Obs.
peuple, agreement with, 199 (1).
peur de, de, 259.
peur que . . . ne, de, 246, 362.
peut, il se, subjunct. after, 244.
peut-être, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2) ; invers. after, 109, Exc. 5 ; **que** after, 302.
pire, pis, ne after, 360.
pis, idiom. uses of, 309.
place of art. 2 ; of nouns, 20-24 ; of adj. 36-43 ; of conj. pers. pron. 108-113 ; of adverbs, 303, 304 ; of prepos. 367.
place, adverbs of, 323-328.
plaisant, different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
plein, invar. 31, Exc. 5.
plier bagage, App. p. 228.
plupart, la, followed by art. 17, Exc. 2 ; agreement with, 199, Exc. 1.
pluperfect indic. 225, 226, Exc. ; subjunct. 250, Exc. 2, 251 (2).
plus, compared with **davantage**, 334 ; with or without **ne** = *no longer*, 346.
plus d'un, agreement with, 199 (2).
plusieurs, 89.
plût au ciel, subjunct. after, 248 (2).
plutôt and **plus tôt**, 319 (3).
plutôt que de, 271 (5).
point without **ne**, 341, Exc., 347 ; compared with **pas**, 348 ; omitted, 351-353.
ponceau, invar. 19, Exc. 2.
porter, verbal phrases with, App. p. 228.
possessive adj. 69-72 ; pron. 142-245.
possible, invar. 31, Exc. 7 ; **il est**, subjunct. after, 244.
pour, with infin. 255, Obs. 2, 259, 272, 273 ; various uses of, 387.
pour peu que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
pourpre, agreement of, 19, Exc. Obs. 1.
pour que, subjunct. after, 246 (1).
pourquoi, place of subject in questions introduced by, 23 (2).
pourtant and **partant**, 401.
pourvu que, subjunct. after, 246 (3).
pouvoir, constr. 231 (2) ; with infin, 264 (3) ; negat. without **pas**, 351 (2).
précédé de, 215 (6).
préférer, infin. after, 264 (3).
premier, 67, Obs. 2, 68, Exc. 1 ; indic. or subjunct. after, 237 (3) ; different meanings according to place, App. p. 233.
premier-né, agreement of, 33.
prendre, constr. 214 (3) ; verbal phrases with, App. p. 228.
prendre garde, indic. or subjunct. after, 235, 353 (10).
prepositions, 367-393.
près de, 388.
present indic. 218, 219 ; subjunct. 250 (1), 251, Exc. 1 ; partic. 274-287.
présider, constr. 214.
prétendre, constr. 210 ; indic. or subjunct. after, 235.
prétendu, 38, Exc. 2.
prêter serment, App. p. 228.
preterite, 222, 224.
prévenir, subjunct. after, 242 ; **ne** after, 356, Obs. 3.
prier, subjunct. after, 242.
probable, il est, indic. after, 241, Obs.
proche de, 388, Obs.
profiter, constr. 215. Obs.
profond, profondeur, 62, 63.
promettre, de and infin. after, 271 (2).
pronouns, conjunct. pers. 108-135 (used redund. 21) ; disjunct. 136-141 ; posses. 142-145 ; demonst. 146-156 ; relat. 157-171 ; interrog. 172-178 ; indef. 179-197.
proper names with art. 10.
propos, il est à, subjunct. after, 244.
propre, different meanings according to place, App. p. 234.
proverbs, omission of art. in, 9.
provinces, names of, with art. 10.
puisque and **depuis que**, 402.
punir, constr. 215 (8).

Quand, past anter. after, 226 ; fut. after, 227 ; condit. after, 229 (3).
quand and **lorsque**, 404.
quand and **quant à**, 407.
quand même, 229 (3).
quantité, agr. after, 199, Obs. (*c*).
quantity, names of, def. art. with, 11 (1) ; **de** after, 17 (2).
quantity, adverbs of, 329-338 ; agr. after, 199 (2).

quart, le, agr. with, 199, Exc. 2.
que, *relat.* *See* relat. pronouns.
que, *interrog.* *See* interrog. pronouns.
que, *conjunct.* condit. with, 229 (3); standing for other conjunct. 239; after **heureusement, peut-être**, etc. 302; before **oui, si, non**, 339, 364 (1); other uses of, 411-413.
que ne=*why . . . not, would that*, 353 (5).
quel, omission of indef. art. after, 14; use of, 178.
quelconque, 90.
quelque, 96, 245.
quelque, 191, 192.
quelque chose, quelque chose que, 189.
quelque . . . qui or **que**, 93-95, 245.
quelqu'un, 190.
qu'est-ce que, 174.
qu'est-ce qui, 175.
qui, relat. 157-160; interrog. 172, 173.
quiconque, 191, 192, 194, Obs. (1).
qui est-ce qui, 172.
qui que, qui que ce soit qui or **que**, 193.
qui que ce soit, 194, Obs. 2; negat. without **pas**, 353 (1).
quint, 68, Exc. 2.
quoi, relat. 166; interrog. 176.
quoi que, 96, 194, 245, 410.
quoi que ce soit, 194, Obs. 2; negat. without **pas**, 353 (1).
quoique, subjunct. after, 246 (2).

Rebrousser chemin, App. p. 228.
recouvrer connaissance, App. p. 228.
réfléchir, indic. after, 234, Obs. 3.
reflex. pronouns, 107, Obs., 134, 135, 141.
reflex. verbs, past partic. of, 298.
refuser, subjunct. after, 242; **de** and infin. after, 271 (2).
refuser obéissance, App. p. 228.
regarder, constr. 212.
regretter, subjunct. after, 243.
réjouir, se, subjunct. after, 243.
relative clauses, invers. in, 21, Exc. 1 (*b*).
relative pron. 157-171.
remédier, constr. 214.
remuer ciel et terre, App. p. 228.
rencontrer, constr., 212.
rendre, verbal phrases with, App. pp. 228, 229.
renoncer, constr. 214.
renouer amitié, . . . connaissance, App. p. 229.
repaître, se, constr. 215, Obs.
repetition of art. 3-5; of pers. pron. 114, 115; of adverbs, 305; of prepos. 368, 369.
répondre, constr. 210.
requérir, subjunct. after, 242.
ressembler, constr. 214.
rester, à and infin. after, 262.
résulte, il, indic. after, 244, Exc.
révoquer en doute, subjunct. after, 241 (1).
rien, 195-197.
rire, se, constr. 215, Obs.
rococo, invar. 31, Obs. 1 (*a*).
rose, agr. of, 19, Exc.
royaux for **royales**, 31, end of Exc.

Sans, infin. after, 259.
sans que, subjunct. after, 246 (3), 366.
satisfaire, constr. 210.
savoir, negat. without **pas**, 351 (3), 3 3 (6); infin. after, 264 (3); **je ne sache pas, je ne sache personne, je ne sache rien, que je sache, pas que je sache**, 248, Obs.; **je ne saürais**, 231 (5).
savoir gré, App. p. 229.
se, 134, 135.
second, 67, Obs. 2.
semble, il, indic. or subjunct. after, 236 (2).
sembler, omission of art. after, 8; infin. after, 264.
sentir, infin. after, 256 (Obs.).
sequence of tenses, 249-251.
sera-ce, 203, Exc., Obs.
servir, constr. 210.
seul, le, indic. or subjunct. in adj. clauses after, 237 (3); different meanings according to place, App. p. 234.
seulement, 312.
should, how rendered, 231.
si, adv. of affirm. 339, 340.
si and **aussi**, 53; **si** instead of **tel**, 92 (2) Obs.
si, with pres. instead of fut. 219 (2); with imperf. indic. 220 (8); with pluperf. subjunct. 240, Obs. 1.
si bien que, si . . . que, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
si ce n'est, 151, 202, Exc. 3.

si . . . ne=*unless*, 352 (3).
si peu que, si tant est que, subjunct. after, 246 (2).
sied, il, subjunct. after, 244.
sien, le, 142-145.
simple, different meanings according to place, App. p. 234.
sitôt, 319 (4).
soi, 141.
soit que, subjunct. after, 246 (3).
son, sa, ses, 69, 71.
songer, indic. after, 234, Obs. 3.
sonner mot, negat. without **pas**, 353 (3).
sorte, omission of art. after, 7; **de la**, 13 (2).
sorte que, de or **en**, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
souffler mot, negat. without **pas**, 353 (3).
souhaiter, constr. 212; subjunct. after, 243.
sous, 389.
souscrire, constr. 210.
souvenir, se, constr. 215, Obs.
sterling, invar. 31, Obs. 1 (*a*).
subject, place of, 21-23; agr. of verb with, 198-200.
subjunctive, 233-251.
subordinate conjunctions, 402-413.
substantival clauses, indic. or subjunct. in, 234-236; subjunct. alone in, 241-244; infin. in, 257.
suffit que, il, indic. or subjunct. after, 236, Obs.
suite, de, tout de, 322.
suivi de, 215 (6).
superiority, compar. of, 54-57.
superlative, 58-61; indic. or subjunct. in adj. clauses after, 237 (3).
supplier, subjunct. after, 242.
supposé, agreement of, 289, Exc. 2.
supposé que, subjunct. after, 246 (3).
supposer, indic. or subjunct. after, 235.
sur, 390; = *by* in comparative dimensions, 64.
surpris, être, subjunct. after, 243.

Tandis que, 409.
tant, place of adj. after, 42, Exc. 1; comp. with **autant**, 53; idiom. uses of, 330.
tant que, indic. or subjunct. after, 238.
tantôt, 314 (5).
tard, 317.
te, 110, Exc., Obs. 1, 116, 118.
tel, 97-100.
témoin, invar. 19, Exc. 1.
temps, il est, subjunct. after, 244.
tenir, verbal phrases with, App. p. 229.
tenses of indicat. 217-227; of subjunct. 249-251; of infin. 255.
than = **que de**, 55; = **de**, 57.
tien, le, 142-145.
tient, il, ne after, 359.
tiers, le, agreement with, 199, Exc. 2.
title, words denoting, art. with, 10 (2).
titles of books, omission of art. in, 7 (8).
time, adverbs of, 313-323.
toi, conj. pron. 110, Exc., Obs. 1; disjunct. pron. 136-139.
ton, ta, tes, 69, 71.
tôt, 318, 319.
toujours, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5; idiom. uses of, 320.
tourner, verbal phrases with, App. p. 229.
tout, before art., 2; before names of towns, 31, Exc. 8; various uses of, 101-105.
tout à coup, tout d'un coup, 321.
tout de suite, de suite, 322.
toutefois, toutes les fois, 401.
tout-puissant, agreement of, 34, Exc.
tout . . . que, 106.
towns, art. with a few names of, 10 (2), Obs.
travers, à, 374.
travers de, au, 374.
trembler, subjunct. after, 243; **ne** after, 355.
très, 337.
triompher, constr. 215, Obs.
triste, different meanings according to place, App. p. 234.
tromper, se, constr. 215, Obs.
trop, pour after, 273; idiom. uses of, 338.
trotte-menu, invar. 35 (3).
trouver, à and infin. after, 269 (1).
trouver bon, subjunct. after, 242.
tu, 118.

Un, unième, 65, Exc. 1, 67, Obs. 2.
un, plus d', agreement with, 199 (2).
un chacun, 180, Obs. 2.
un et l'autre, l', l'un ou l'autre, 80.
un l'autre, l', 79.
unique, indic. or subjunct. in adj. clauses after, 237 (3).
until, various ways of rendering, 403.
user, constr. 210.

Va, 232, Exc. 2.
vaille que vaille, 248 (2).
vain, en, redund. pers. pron. after, 21 (2); invers. after, 109, Exc. 5.
valoir autant, mieux, subjunct. after, 244; infin. after, 264 (2); **que de** and infin. after, 271 (5).
valu, agreement of, 291, Obs. 3.
veiller, constr. 210.
venir, pres. of, instead of past, 219 (1), [c]; constr. 267.
verbal adj. and pres. partic. 279-283.
verbal phrases without art., App. pp. 227-229.
verbs, 198-298.
verbs, lists of, requiring no prepos. before infin. App. pp. 234, 235; requiring **à** before infin. App. pp. 235-237; requiring **de** before infin. App. pp. 238, 239.
véritable, different meanings according to place, App. p. 234.
vers, 391.
vingt, 65, Exc. 2.
vivre, used transit. 211; constr. 215, Obs.
vocative, def. art. with nouns in, 10 (7).
voici, 392; **voici . . . que**, pres. after, 218.
voilà, 393; **voilà . . . que**, pres. after, 218; imperfect after, 220.
voir, infin. after, 256, Obs. 261.
votre, 69, 70, 72.
vôtre, le, 142-145.
vouloir, subjunct. after, 243; infin. after, 264 (3); **je voudrais bien**, 231 (4).
voyons, 232, Exc. 2, 3.
vrai, different meanings according to place, App. p. 234; **il est**, 148 (2), Exc.
vu, agreement of, 289.

Weight, names of, def. art. with, 11.
whatever, how rendered, 90, 93, 94, 96, 194.
when, various ways of rendering, 404-406.
whoever, various ways of rendering, 191-193.
will, not rendered by fut. 227, Obs. 2.
would, various ways of rendering, 231.

Y, place of, 112; various uses of, 128, 129, 132, 133.
y compris, agreement of, 289, Exc. 2.

BINDING SECT. JUN 28 1968

51069
ler, Eugène ..... LaF.Cr
h grammar: syntax. P3917n

NAME OF BORROWER.

Library
C. Morgan - Grad.
L. Oak, stud.
) (G.R.)
Brunes 237 Sa28